Google

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

THE

ESSENTIALS

OF

LATIN GRAMMAR.

BY

F. A. BLACKBURN.

Nobis prima sit virtus perspicuitas, propria verba, rectus ordo; ... nihil
neque desit neque superfluat. — *Quint. Inst.* viii. 2, 22.

BOSTON:

PUBLISHED BY GINN, HEATH, & CO.

1883.

PREFACE.

THIS book is the outgrowth of several years' experience in teaching Latin to beginners. Portions of it were drawn up some years ago for the use of my own classes; the success that has followed the use of them has led to the completion of the lacking portions and the publication of the whole.

The objects kept in view in compiling the book were two: without omitting essentials, to make a book small enough to be mastered by a beginner, and to arrange the principles of grammar contained in it as systematically as possible, thus making them easy to learn and easy to keep. The first object I have tried to secure by studied conciseness of statement and by the omission of all that Latin has in common with English, e.g., definitions of the parts of speech, kinds of sentences, subject, object, etc. ; rules for the use of adverbs, conjunctions, and the like. The object of these omissions, however, was not brevity alone, but rather simplicity. I have assumed that the book will be put into the hands of pupils who have already studied English Grammar, and I believe that loss of time is only a part of the harm of requiring a pupil to relearn a grammatical definition or principle couched in new words. The book will not be found suitable, therefore, for pupils who have not mastered the elements of grammar, unless the teacher shall supplement it with the needed definitions.

The second point aimed at is partly a matter of grammatical system, partly of typography. Whether my classification of the facts and principles of the Latin tongue is any help to the pupil in learning them and keeping them, is a question for the teacher who may use the

book. The arrangement of these facts and principles on the page, however, will commend itself, I hope, to all. The coarser print contains those portions of the grammar of the language, which, in my judgment, should be absolutely mastered; the smallest amount to which memorizing can be limited. The notes contain illustrations, explanations, and those limitations of grammatical principles which are the outgrowth of usage, and which should be gradually learned by daily reference in the course of reading a Latin author. Much that is in the notes should be memorized; how much, is a question left to the judgment of the teacher, and the answer will depend on circumstances: the amount of time at the disposal of the class, the age and character of the pupils, the requirements of the college they have in view, etc. The duplicate numbering serves to connect the notes to the statements they illustrate or explain, and is simple enough, I hope, to save the vexation and loss of time incurred in trying to find a reference in a book systematically sub-divided and classified. The numbering answers the same purpose as paging: convenience of reference. A bracketed reference refers to a note; such a reference, given orally, may be called simply "*note*," *e.g.* [142] may be read "note 142."

It is not claimed, of course, that so small a book contains a complete exposition of the principles of the Latin tongue, or a complete history of the growth of the forms and usage of Latin speech, and the book is not intended for those who pursue the study of the language so far. Such should provide themselves with larger and fuller treatises. It is intended for that class of pupils who study Latin in school and college for the training it gives in clearness of thought and exactness of speech, but whose tastes or plans of life and work do not lead them to the higher and more attractive study of the life and growth of the language. I have, therefore, omitted discussions of the origin and growth of forms and idioms, or of the development of syntactical usages, as well as all illustrations drawn from comparative grammar. I have tried to include, however, all the grammatical information needed for a high school or for the early years of a college;

to the point, in fact, where the better colleges now give the pupil the option of continuing classical studies, or substituting other branches more to his taste. I have tried, moreover, to so arrange the facts and usages of Latin speech, that the pupil who carries his studies beyond the limit of the book, shall not be obliged to unlearn, but only to supplement, what he has already mastered.

It is proper to add that I put forth no claim to original research, my object being to make a school-book. If the plan and arrangement do not justify its publication, there is nothing else in it to do so. I have not tried, moreover, in seeking for the best and clearest arrangement, to avoid what has been already used by others. I have freely taken from every source, whatever, in the way of expression or classification, seemed good for my purpose. The teacher who is familiar with the various Latin grammars issued within the last twenty years, will find much taken directly from them; more than I can acknowledge in detail. On questions of fact and usage, I have depended almost entirely on Roby's Latin Grammar, and have drawn freely on his citations from Latin authors, for illustrative examples. His full collections of illustrative words and sentences have saved a great amount of labor that would have been needed to find appropriate illustrations.

I shall be grateful for criticism from any source, especially for corrections or suggestions from teachers who may have occasion to test the value of the book by actual use with classes.

<div style="text-align: right">F. A. BLACKBURN.</div>

SAN FRANCISCO, CAL., *Feb.* 17, 1883.

CONTENTS.

——◦◦——

PART I. — SOUNDS.

PART II. — FORMS.

x   CONTENTS.

PART V. — THE LAWS OF LATIN VERSE.

ESSENTIALS OF LATIN GRAMMAR.

PART I. — SOUNDS.

———✦✦✦———

1. Alphabet and Pronunciation.

The Latin alphabet has no **w**; otherwise it is like the English. | **1**

The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u.** They are sounded, when long, like the same vowels in the English words, *father, they, pique, ore, rude.* When short, they have the same sound, but more shortly uttered; nearly like the same vowels in *half, them, pick, obey, full.* | **2**

---

[1] **K** is found in Old Latin, but is rare in the later language, being replaced by **c.** **Q** is used for c before **v.** **I** was used for both **i** and **j,** and **u** for both **u** and **v;** but they are often distinguished in modern print, except that **u** is used for v after **q, g,** and **s.** (For the sake of exactness, they are distinguished in this book, **j** and **v** being always consonants, **i** and **u** vowels.)

Y and **z** are, strictly speaking, not Latin letters, but were borrowed from the Greek. They are found only in Greek words.

[2] Long vowels are marked **ā, ē, ī, ō, ū**; short, **ă, ĕ, ĭ, ŏ, ŭ.** Sometimes in manuscripts and inscriptions long vowels are indicated by writing them double. For long **ī, ei** is written in such cases (not **ii**).

EUPHONIC CHANGES OF VOWELS.

(*a*) Before final consonants, except **s,** long vowels are often shortened.

(*b*) Before **ns** and **nf** short vowels are lengthened.

(*c*) The short vowels are often "weakened," sometimes from a shifting of the accent, often without any apparent reason. The tendency in vowel-weakening is from "open" to "close." (See 3.) Thus a weakens to o and **u,** or to e and **i;** o weakens to **u,** e to **i.** Less often o weakens to e, u to i.

(*d*) The same weakening sometimes takes place in long vowels and diphthongs, but rarely.

(*e*) This tendency is checked and modified by various causes, a common one being the character of the following sound. Thus the open vowels (see 3) are favorites before two consonants, the close ones before single mutes; the open vowels before liquids and spirants, the close ones before nasals and **s.**

3   **A, e, o,** are *open* vowels; **i, u,** *close* vowels.

4   The diphthongs are made up of an open vowel-sound, followed by a close one. Each sound is uttered, but the two are run into one syllable in pronunciation.

5   The diphthongs are **ae, oe, ei, au, eu. Ae** is sounded like English *ay* (= *yes*); **oe** like *oi* in *toil;* **au** like *ou* in *loud;* **ei** as in *eight;* **eu** as in *feud*.

6   The consonants are sounded as in English, except that

7   **C** and **g** are always "hard," as in *cave, give.*

8   **J** sounds like *y* in *young.*

9   **T** sounds like *t* in *tongue.*

10   **S** sounds like *s* in *sin.*

11   **V** sounds like *w* in *win.*

---

[3] So named from the fact that the organs of speech are more open, or less open in uttering them. A is more open than e or o; the latter are, therefore, sometimes called "medial" vowels.

[4] In Old Latin is found the complete schedule of diphthongs, **ai, ei, oi, au, eu, ou.** In the later language **ai** becomes **ae; ei** usually becomes **ē** or **ī; oi** becomes **oe; ou** becomes **ū.** In some cases this weakening tendency has gone still further, weakening **ae** and **oe** also to **ē** and **ū.** The simple vowels which thus replace the older diphthongs then become subject to the same weakening tendency as single vowels.

[6] **H** is sounded as in English, but seems to have originally had a stronger sound, as it stands in place of an older guttural mute. Before **s** and **t** it changes or reverts to **c.**

M and **s** in Old Latin seem to have been but slightly sounded, and, when final, are often dropped.

Y and **z** of Greek words are generally sounded as in English, but it is supposed that **y** had the sound of French **u.**

The compounds **ch, th, ph,** are also found in Greek words. It is customary to sound them as in English *chasm, thin, phase,* although it is believed that the Romans sounded them in such a way as to give each letter its own sound; *i.e.,* as **c, t,** and **p,** followed by an **h**-sound.

The consonants are classified as follows : —   **12**

	Mutes.		Semi-vowels.			
	Breathed.	Voiced.	Nasal.	Liquid.	Spirant.	Sibilant.
Guttural . . .					h	
Linguo-palatal .	c (k, q)	g	n		j	
Linguo-dental .	t	d	n	l, r		s
Labio-dental . . .					f	
Labial	p	b	m		v	

X (called a double consonant) is a short way of writing *cs*.   **13**

[12] The name " voiced " is given to those sounds, the utterance of which is attended by a vibration of the vocal chords, thus making " voice "; the others, consisting of mere expulsion of breath, are called " breathed." Of the semi-vowels, **f** and **s** are breathed; the others are voice-letters, as are also all the vowels. The names "guttural," etc., refer to the organs used in uttering the sounds.

Qv and **gv** are treated as single consonants by the Latins, like single **c** and **g.** In many words the spelling varies between qv and c.

EUPHONIC CHANGES OF CONSONANTS.

(*a*) The sounds of **j** and **v** are so much like those of **i** and **u** that they are not only represented by the same letters, but, in poetry, are sometimes interchanged. Thus abiete becomes abjete; Gajus becomes Gaius; cui becomes cvi; silvae becomes siluae, etc. **V** regularly becomes u when brought before a consonant; sometimes qv becomes cu, but usually c.

(*b*) Doubled consonants at the end of a word are not found in Latin, but one is dropped. Often, also, in the middle of a word, one consonant is written where the derivation or formation would require two.

(*c*) Between two vowels s usually changes to r, and h and v are often dropped. **J** sometimes drops before **i,** and s sometimes changes to r in other positions than between vowels.

Consonant sounds are often modified when brought together in inflection or word-formation. Usually the preceding sound adapts itself more or less fully to the following. Thus :

(*d*) Before **s,** t and d become s. [ss thus formed is often changed to s. See (*b*) above.]

2. Quantity and Accent.

A syllable is long

14   (*a*) When it contains a long vowel or a diphthong.

15   (*b*) When its vowel, naturally short, is followed
by two consonants.

(*e*) Before a liquid, **n** is often changed to that liquid.

(*f*) In the prepositions **ab, ad, ob, sub, com, in,** this tendency goes much further, and the final sound of these words is assimilated to various sounds. (Assimilation of a preceding to a following sound also occurs in many other cases, which cannot be enumerated or classified in an elementary work.)

In cases (*d*), (*e*), and (*f*), there is entire assimilation of the preceding sound to the following one. In the following, partial assimilation takes place.

(*g*) Before a breath-consonant, the voice-mutes change to the corresponding breath-mutes. But assimilation often takes place, especially of the final mutes of prepositions, and **dt** and **tt** often change to **st, ss,** or **s. G, h, gv,** and **qv** change to **c** before a following **s,** and make **x,** *i.e.,* **cs. Bs** is generally written, but is always pronounced as **ps.**

(*h*) Before a mute the nasals become of the same character as the mute, **m** before labials, **n** before palatals and dentals. (**N** has two sounds, as in English; that of a palatal nasal (Eng. *sing*) before palatal mutes, and that of a dental nasal (Eng. *sin*) elsewhere.) **M** before **s** is changed to **n** or assimilated, but in some cases a parasitical **p** is inserted between **m** and **s;** *e.g.,* **hiemps** (for **hiems**), **sumpsi** (for **sumsi**), etc.

(*i*) In combinations of consonants difficult to utter, one is often dropped.

(The changes given here are not always made in writing, and it is not easy to decide how fully they were made in speaking. Perhaps it would be the wisest course for a beginner to pronounce the words as he finds them written.)

[14] Whether any particular vowel is long or short, must often be learned by consulting a lexicon, but vowels formed by contraction are long.

[15] A mute or **f** followed by **l** or **r** does not make a long syllable, but a common one. See 18. **X** and Greek **z** are two consonants, and **qv, gv** are single consonants. See [12]. To make a long syllable, one of the consonants must be in the same word with the preceding short vowel; a

A syllable is short

   (*a*) When it contains a short vowel. **16**

   (*b*) When its vowel, naturally long, is followed by **17**
      another vowel.

A syllable is common

   [*i.e.*, long or short at the option of the writer]

   (*a*) When its vowel, naturally short, is followed **18**
      by a mute or **f** with **l** or **r**.

---

final short vowel seldom makes a long syllable with two consonants of the following word. **Ch, th, ph** also are single consonants in Greek, and do not make a long syllable, though two consonants are used in Latin to represent them.

[17] An interposed **h** has no effect, and the rule applies to diphthongs as well as to single vowels. But in a few cases a vowel remains long or common, though followed by another vowel; viz.: —

(*a*) The genitive singular endings, āī, ĕī, īus, and the dative singular pronoun ĕī.

(*b*) The syllable fī in the verb fīo, except before -ĕr.

(*c*) Proper names in -āīŭs, -ēīŭs [poetical forms for -ājus, -ējŭs. See [12] (*a*)].

(*d*) ēheu, dīŭs, Dĭānă, ŏhe, Rhēa.

(*e*) Many Greek words, which usually keep their own quantity.

[18] The following combinations occur: **pr, br, cr, gr, tr, dr, fr; pl, cl, fl**. But both consonants must be in the same word with the preceding vowel; in different words (or in different parts of a compound) they make a long syllable. In Greek words, a mute followed by a nasal may make a short syllable with a preceding short vowel.

(The vowels of 15, 17, and 18 are often called long, short, or common *by position*. The expression, though convenient, is inexact as regards long and common syllables; for the syllable, not the vowel, is long or common. Such vowels should have their short sound; but a *long* vowel before two consonants (*e.g.*, before **ns** or **nf**) should, of course, have its long sound. In many cases, however, there is little or no evidence to show the natural quantity of the vowel; but the pupil is more likely to be right in sounding it short.)

19
20

The accent in Latin is

    (*a*) In words of two syllables, on the first syllable.

    (*b*) In words of more than two syllables, on the
        penult, if that syllable is long; otherwise,
        on the *antepenult*.

[19] The rules for the accent of Latin words are given by the Latin grammarians, who add also the following statements : —

(*a*) Prepositions, when standing directly before their nouns, or before an adjective or genitive limiting their nouns, have no accent, but are pronounced as one word with the following. In other positions they are accented, with the exception of **cum** when it is attached enclitically to the ablative of pronoun forms.

(*b*) The enclitic particles **-ne, -ve, -ce, -met, -pte, -dum** (also **-qve** when it means *and*, and **cum, inde** and **qvando** when attached to a preceding word) have no accent, but cause the accent to fall on the last syllable of the word to which they are attached ; *e.g.*, **itáqve,** *and thus ;* **éxinde,** *thenceforth ;* **écqvando, manédum,** etc.

(*c*) The accent may stand on the last syllable, or on a short penult, if a syllable has been lost ; *e.g.*, **vidén** (for **vidésne**), **illíc** (for **illíce**), **nostrás** (for **nostrátis**), **Vergíli** (for **Vergílii**), etc.

It is customary also, in words of several syllables, to put a secondary accent on the second or third syllable before the accented syllable.

[20] *Penult*, last syllable but one ; *antepenult*, last but two.

PART II. — FORMS.

Inflection.

Inflection is a change in the form of a word to denote some modification of its meaning or to show its relation to other words. Nouns, adjectives, pronouns and verbs are inflected in Latin. | **21**

Inflection in Latin, as in English, consists either in a change in the vowel of the word or in the addition of syllables; far more often the latter. Sometimes both methods are used. | **22**

Nouns have inflections to denote *number* and *case*. | **23**

Adjectives have inflections to denote *gender*, *number* and *case*. | **24**

Pronouns, when used substantively, have the inflections of nouns; when used adjectively, those of adjectives. | **25**

Verbs have inflections to denote *tense, mood, person, number* and *voice*. | **26**

Stem and Suffixes; Theme and Endings.

Inflection, in Latin, usually consists in adding certain syllables to the ground-form or basis of the inflected word. This ground-form or basis is called a *stem*, and the added syllables are called *suffixes*. | **27**

---

[21] *E.g.*, **servus**, slave; **servi**, slave's; **pastor**, shepherd; **pastores**, shepherds; **ama-s**, love-st; **ama-t**, love-s; **ama-vit**, love-d; etc.

The inflection of nouns, adjectives and pronouns is often called *declension*; that of verbs, *conjugation*.

28   When the stem ends in a vowel and the suffix begins with a vowel, the resulting contraction often obscures both stem-ending and suffix. For convenience of memorizing we therefore divide inflected words not only into stem and suffix but also into *theme* and *ending*.

29   The *theme* is that part of the word which remains unchanged in inflection. The *endings* are the letters or syllables added to the theme to make the various forms of the word.

Forms of Nouns and Adjectives.

GENDER.

30   There are three genders: *masculine, feminine, neuter*.

31   Gender, in Latin, is fixed either by the meaning or by the form. When fixed by the meaning, it is called *natural* gender; by the form, *grammatical*.

Rules of natural gender:—

32
33   (*a*) { Names of *male* beings / Names of *rivers* and *mountains* } are masculine.

34
35
36   (*b*) { Names of *female* beings / Names of *trees* and *plants* / Names of *countries, towns* and *islands* } are feminine.

37
38   (*c*) { *Indeclinable* nouns / *Phrases* or *clauses* used as nouns } are neuter.

39
40   (*d*) { Names that may be used of *either* sex / Some names of *beasts, birds, fishes* and *insects* } are common.

[29] The theme is always the same as the stem with its final vowel removed, and the endings consequently contain the final vowel of the stem and the suffixes, both often obscured by contraction. If the stem ends in a consonant, the stem and theme are the same, and the endings are the simple suffixes.

[31] The rules of grammatical gender will be given with the various declensions.

PERSON, NUMBER, AND CASE.

In *person* and *number* the Latin is like the English. **41**

There are five cases in common use; viz.: *nom-* **42**
inative, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *ablative*. Two
other cases, a *locative* and a *vocative*, are found in
a few words.

The nominative corresponds to the English nom- **43**
inative, being the case of the subject.

The genitive corresponds to the English possessive. **44**

The dative corresponds to the English indirect **45**
objective.

The accusative corresponds to the English direct **46**
objective.

The vocative corresponds to the English nominative **47**
in direct address.

The ablative and locative have no corresponding **48**
cases in English.

---

[33] **Hadria,** the *Adriatic*, is masculine, like names of rivers.
  The gender of *rivers, trees, countries*, etc., is the result of the simplicity
of primitive thought and conception, which gave life and feeling to inani-
mate objects. In many of these, however, the gender is fixed by the form,
and they come under the rules of grammatical gender. In most words,
also, there is no contradiction of form and meaning.

[37] Strictly speaking, the neuters of 37 and 38 fix their gender neither
by meaning nor by form, but they are put here for convenience. Words
quoted only for their form, without regard to meaning, come under the
head of indeclinable nouns; *e.g.*, **pater dixi,** *I said "pater"*; **pater est
dissyllabum,** *"pater" is dissyllabic.*

[39] Common; *i.e.*, sometimes *masculine*, sometimes *feminine*.

[40] But in most of these sex is not thought of, and they are either
masculine or take grammatical gender.
  Words borrowed from the Greek keep the gender they have in that
language.

49   The nominative and vocative are sometimes called *direct* cases, the others *oblique*. The oblique cases are often rendered into English by prepositions. The genitive is most often rendered by *of;* the dative, by *to* or *for;* the locative, by *at* or *in;* the ablative, by *from, by, in* or *with.*

The Declensions.

50   Nouns and adjectives are inflected by adding to the stem the proper case-suffixes. As these suffixes differ in certain cases and are often obscured in form by contraction with the final vowel of the stem, we have six forms of declension, as the stem ends in a consonant or in one of the vowels, **a, e, i, o, u.**

51   These six forms fall naturally into two groups; viz.:
          A. Stems in an open vowel (**a, e, o**).
          B. Stems in a consonant or a close vowel (**i, u**).

[49] The details of the use of the cases must be learned from the Syntax. Only enough is given here to enable the pupil to master elementary exercises.

[51] These groups are distinguished by different case-suffixes in certain cases; most clearly in the genitive, where A has sg. -**i**, pl. -**rŭm;** B, sg. -**is**, pl. -**ŭm.**

Nouns and adjectives are usually classified into declensions according to the ending of the genitive singular; and lexicons give, therefore, not the stem, but the nominative and genitive singular. That the pupil may be able to refer each word to its proper declension, the usual method of classification is here added.

First Declension, gen. sg. ending -**ae** = a-stems.
Second   "   "   "   "   -**i** = o-stems.
Third   "   "   "   "   -**is** = consonant and i-stems.
Fourth   "   "   "   "   -**ūs** = u-stems.
Fifth   "   "   "   "   -**ēi** = e-stems.

The ending of the genitive singular, therefore, distinguishes all vowel-stems except those in -**i**. Rules for distinguishing i-stems from consonant-

THE *A*-DECLENSION.   STEMS ENDING IN -*A*.

The theme of any **a**-stem may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular, **-ae**. The stem is found by adding **a** to the theme. | **52**

The final **a** of the stem combines with the case-suffixes to make the following case-endings, by adding which to the theme any **a**-stem may be declined: — | **53**

Sg. N.	-ă	*Pl.* N.	-ae	*E.g.,* mens ă	mens ae
G.	-ae	G.	-ārŭm	mens ae	mens ārŭm
D.	-ae	D.	-īs	mens ae	mens īs
Ac.	-ăm	Ac.	-ās	mens ăm	mens ās
Ab.	-ā	Ab.	-īs	mens ā	mens īs

54

The locative singular of a-stems has the ending -ae. | **55**

The gender of a-stems is feminine. | **56**

stems, by the forms of the nominative and genitive singular, will be found under the i-declension.

[54] The uncontracted ending -āī is sometimes found in the genitive singular; also -um for ārŭm in the genitive plural.

Familia, in combination with **pater, mater, filius,** or **filia,** sometimes has the ending -ās in the genitive singular. The same ending is found in a few other words in old Latin.

Dea and **filia** usually form the dative and ablative plural with the ending -ābŭs; a few others rarely.

In poetry, words borrowed from the Greek often keep Greek endings in the singular. The following are found: nom. -ē, -ās, -ēs; gen. -ēs; acc. -ăn, -ēn; abl. -ē. But the regular Latin endings are common.

Various old endings are found in inscriptions and old Latin; viz.: gen. sg. -aes; dat. sg. -ai (diphthong?); abl. sg. -ād (the original abl. ending); nom. pl. -as; dat. and abl. pl. -eis (another spelling of -īs. See [2]). In a few instances stems in -ia contract -iis in the dat. and abl. pl. to -īs.

[56] The rules of grammatical gender given with the declensions apply only to such nouns as do not come under the rules of natural gender, 32–40.

THE *E*-DECLENSION.   STEMS IN -*E*.

57   The theme of any e-stem may be found by dropping the genitive singular ending, -ēī. The stem is found by adding **e** to the theme.

The case-endings are: —

Sg.		*Pl.*		*E.g.*,	
N.	-ĕs	N.	-ĕs	di ĕs	di ēs
G.	-ēī	G.	-ĕrŭm	di ēī	di ĕrŭm
D.	-ēī	D.	-ĕbŭs	di ēī	di ĕbŭs
Ac.	-ĕm	Ac.	-ĕs	di ĕm	di ĕs
Ab.	-ĕ	Ab.	-ĕbŭs	di ĕ	di ĕbŭs

58

59   Stems in -e are feminine,

60   But **dies** is usually masc.; **meridies,** always so.

THE *O*-DECLENSION.   STEMS IN -*O*.

61   The theme of any o-stem may be found by dropping the genitive singular ending, -ī. The stem is found by adding **o** to the theme.

The case-endings are: —

FOR MASCULINES.

Sg.		*Pl.*		*E.g.*,	
N.	-ŭs	N.	-ī	hort ŭs	hort ī
G.	-ī	G.	-ŏrŭm	hort ī	hort ŏrŭm
D.	-ō	D.	-īs	hort ō	hort īs
Ac.	-ŭm	Ac.	-ōs	hort ŭm	hort ōs
Ab.	-ō	Ab.	-īs	hort ō	hort īs

62

---

[58] The ending of the genitive and dative singular is commonly -ĕī when the theme ends in a consonant; viz.: in **fides, plebes, res, spes.**

Old or unusual endings are found; viz.: gen. sg. -ēs, -ē, -ī; dat. sg. -ē, -ī. Stems in -e lack the plural except **dies** and **res,** and a few found in the nom. and acc. pl.; viz.: **acies, effigies, facies, series, species, spes;** with **eluvies** (nom.) and **glacies** (acc.). Other forms are cited by grammarians, but not found in literature.

A locative **diē** is found in old Latin, and in certain (so-called) adverbs of time: **postridiē, pridiē,** etc.

FOR NEUTERS.

Sg.			Pl.			E.g.,		
N.	-ŭm		N.	-ă		dōn ŭm	don ă	
G.	-ī		G.	-ōrŭm		don ī	don ōrŭm	
D.	-ō		D.	-īs		don ō	don īs	**63**
Ac.	-ŭm		Ac.	-ă		don ŭm	don ă	
Ab.	-ō		Ab.	-īs		don ō	don īs	

Masculine o-stems have a vocative singular with the ending -ĕ. | **64**

The locative singular of o-stems has the ending -ī. | **65**

Most masculine stems in -ĕro drop the endings of the nominative and vocative singular, and many of them syncopate ĕ in all the other cases. | **66**

Stems in -io contract -iĕ of the vocative singular to ī, often also -iī of the genitive singular to ī. | **67**

Deus has no vocative singular. In the plural, | **68**

---

[62] The older endings -ŏs, -ŏm, are sometimes found for -ŭs, -ŭm, especially after v; also -um (or, after v, -om) for -ōrum.

Old endings, found in inscriptions, etc., are gen. sg. -oe (?), -ei (see [2]); dat. sg. -oi; abl. sg. -ōd; nom. pl. -ēs, -ē, -oe; also -ei (see [2]); dat. and abl. pl. -oes, -ōbus (in duo and ambo, see [72]).

Nouns borrowed from the Greek sometimes keep Greek endings. The following are found: nom. sg. masc. -ŏs; neut. -ŏn; gen. sg. -ō; acc. sg. -ŏn, -ō; nom. pl. masc. -oe; gen. pl. -ōn. Many Greek words are confused in their forms, taking, in certain authors, or in certain cases, the endings of o-stems; at other times, or in other cases, the endings of consonant-stems.

[66] Thus (from the stem puĕro) puer, puĕri, puĕro, etc.; (from the stem agĕro) ager, agri, agro, etc. Vir (stem vīro) drops the nom. and voc. sg. endings. In old Latin, however, these endings are sometimes kept.

[67] The voc. sg. of **Tullius,** for example, is **Tulli.** The accent in these shortened forms remains unchanged; e.g., **Domíti** (gen. or voc.); **impéri** (gen.). See [19], (c). Other cases of stems in -io sometimes contract iï to ī. Stems in -ājo, -ējo, when j changes to i [see [12] (a)], suffer a similar contraction.

[68] Some editors print **dīi** and **dīis** also.

besides the regular forms, it has also nominative **dī,** dative and ablative **dīs.**

69 Stems in **-o** with nominative singular ending **-ŭm** are neuter; others are masculine.

ADJECTIVE-STEMS IN -A AND -O.

70 Adjective-stems in **-a** and **-o** are declined like noun-stems of like form. (The feminine is an a-stem; the masculine and neuter, o-stems.)

71 A few adjectives have in all genders **-īŭs** for genitive singular ending, and **-ī** for dative singular.

72 **Duo** and **ambo** have special irregularities.

[69] But **carbăsus, humus,** and **vannus** are feminine; **alvus** and **colus** usually so. **Domus** (see [115]) is feminine.
For **pelăgus, virus, vulgus,** neuter, see [115].

[70] Adjective stems in **-lo** are regular, and are not shortened in the genitive and vocative singular.

[71] Viz., **alius, nullus, solus, totus, ullus, unus, alter, uter,** neuter. In poetry **-īŭs** is found, and, rarely, the regular endings.
Alius has an ending **-ŭd** for **-ŭm** in the neut. sg. nom. and acc., and contracts **-ilus** of the gen. sg. to **-īŭs.** (An older stem **ali** is found in compounds and derivatives, and in the rare forms of the nom. sg. **alis, alid.** See under the I-declension, 94 ff.)
Satur drops the nom. sg. masc. ending (like stems in **-ĕro**).

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

altŭs	altă	altŭm	totŭs	totă	totŭm
altī	altae	altī	totīus	totīus	totīus
altō	altae	altō	totī	totī	totī
altŭm	altăm	altŭm	totŭm	totăm	totŭm
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
tenĕr	tenĕră	tenĕrŭm	altĕr	altĕră	altĕrŭm
tenĕrī	tenĕrae	tenĕrī	alterīus	alterīus	alterīus
tenĕrō	tenĕrae	tenĕrō	altĕrī	altĕrī	altĕrī
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

THE CONSONANT-DECLENSION. STEMS IN A CONSONANT.

The theme of any consonant-stem may be found | **73**
by dropping the genitive singular ending, **-ĭs.** The
stem is the same as the theme.

The case-endings are: —

FOR MASCULINES AND FEMININES.

Sg. N. -**s**	*Pl.* N. -**ēs**	*E.g.*, dux (= duc **s**)	duc **ēs**	
G. -**ĭs**	G. -**ŭm**	dŭc **ĭs**	duc **ŭm**	
D. -**ī**	D. -**ĭbŭs**	duc **ī**	duc **ĭbŭs**	**74**
Ac. -**ĕm**	Ac. -**ēs**	duc **ĕm**	duc **ēs**	
Ab. -**ĕ**	Ab. -**ĭbŭs**	duc **ĕ**	duc **ĭbŭs**	

FOR NEUTERS.

Sg. N. —	*Pl.* N. -**ă**	*E.g.*, căpŭt	capĭt **ă**	
G. -**ĭs**	G. -**ŭm**	capĭt **ĭs**	capĭt **ŭm**	
D. -**ī**	D. -**ĭbŭs**	capĭt **ī**	capĭt **ĭbŭs**	**75**
Ac. —	Ac. -**ă**	capŭt	capĭt **ă**	
Ab. -**ĕ**	Ab. -**ĭbŭs**	capĭt **ĕ**	capĭt **ĭbŭs**	

ātĕr	ātră	ātrŭm	ŭtĕr	ŭtră	ŭtrŭm
atrī	atrae	atrī	utrīŭs	utrīŭs	utrīŭs
atrō	atrae	atrō	utrī	utrī	utrī
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

[72] duŏ	duae	duŏ			
duŏrum	duārum	duŏrum	ambŏ	ambae	ambŏ
duŏbŭs	duābŭs	duŏbŭs	ambōrŭm	ambārŭm	ambōrŭm
duŏs, duŏ	duās	duŏ	etc.	etc.	etc.
duŏbŭs	duābŭs	duŏbŭs			

[74] EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

[(*m*), (*f*), (*n*), and (*c*) show the gender.]

princeps (*c*)	consŭl (*m*)	hiems (*f*) [78]	gĕnŭs (*n*)	mĕl (*n*) [12] (*b*)
princĭpĭs	consŭlĭs	hiĕmĭs	genĕrĭs	mellĭs
princĭpī	consŭlī	hiĕmī	genĕrī	mellī
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

mīlĕs (*m*)	actŏr (*m*)	leō (*m*) 79	corpŭs (*n*)	fār (*n*) [12] (*b*)
milĭtĭs	actōrĭs	leōnĭs	corpŏrĭs	farrĭs
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

76   The last vowel of the nominative singular is often weakened in other cases when a syllable is added. See [2] (*c*). But in s-stems the stronger vowel is retained before **r**, though weakened before **s** in the nominative singular.

77   The locative singular of consonant-stems ends in -ĭ.

78   Masculine and feminine semivowel-stems drop the ending of the nominative singular.

79   Final **n** of a stem falls after o in the nominative singular.

pĕcŭs (*f*)	ĕbŭr (*n*)	hŏmŏ̄ (*c*) 79	mōs (*m*)
pecŭdĭs	ebŏrĭs	homĭnĭs	mōrĭs
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
sĭlex (*c*)	aggĕr (*m*)	nōmĕn (*n*)	tellūs (*f*)
silĭcĭs	aggĕrĭs	nomĭnĭs	tellūrĭs .
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
rex (*m*)	pătĕr (*m*) 80	cărŏ̄ (*f*) [115]	aequŏr (*n*)
rēgĭs	patrĭs	carnĭs	aequŏrĭs
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

In Greek words the Greek endings are sometimes kept. The following are found; viz.: gen. sg. -ŏs ; dat. sg. -ĭ; acc. sg. -ă ; nom. pl. -ĕs ; gen. pl. -ōn; dat. pl. -sĭ; acc. pl. -ăs ; nom. and acc. pl. neut. -ē (contracted from -ĕă). Greek stems in -ăt sometimes take a dat. and abl. pl. ending -ĭs like o-stems, though this is not a Greek ending in consonant-stems. See [62].

Old case-endings of consonant-stems are gen. sg. -us, -es; dat. sg. -e; abl. sg. -ed, -ĭd, -ĭ; dat. and abl. pl. -ebus.

[76] S-stems (except **vas,** see [115]) regularly become r-stems when a case-suffix is added. See [12] (*c*). Sometimes the final s of the nom. and acc. sg. becomes **r,** thus making them r-stems throughout. This change seems to have taken place in **jecur** and **robur,** which show the weaker vowel in the nominative, though the stronger ŏ appears in the other cases; and perhaps **ebur** and **femur,** which show the same peculiarity, may be explained in the same way.

[78] Except **hiem** (the only stem in -**m**), nom. **hiems** [or **hiemps.** See [12] (*h*)].

[79] Not always, however, in nouns borrowed from the Greek.

A few stems in -ĕr syncopate ĕ, except in the nominative singular. (Compare stems in -ĕro, 66.)	**80**
A few cases occur where consonant-stems take the endings of i-stems. Such forms are irregular, a result of the confusion caused by the close likeness of the two declensions.	**81**
Most mute-stems are feminine,	**82**
But { stems in -ĭc with nom. in -ex " -ĭt " " -ĕs } are masculine.	**83**
Stems in -ōn are masculine,	**84**
But abstracts in -iōn are feminine.	**85**
Stems in -ĭn with nominative in -o are feminine.	**86**
Stems in -ĭn with nominative in -ĕn are neuter.	**87**
Stems in -l are masculine.	**88**
Stems in -r and -s are neuter,	**89**
But stems in -ōr and -ōs are masculine.	**90**

[80] Viz.: **pater, mater, frater, accipiter.**

[81] Viz.: an abl. sg ending -ī, or gen. pl. -ium. The latter is not unusual in stems in -tāt, which seem to have once been i-stems.

The following exceptions to the rules of gender are added for completeness, the more usual words being printed in larger type. **Hiems** (the only stem in -m) is feminine.

[82] **grex, paries, pes,** calix, fornix, are masculine.
    lapis, adeps, forceps, larix, varix, are common.
    caput, cor, are neuter.

[83] **silex,** cortex, forfex, imbrex, obex, rumex, are common.

[86] **ordo,** cardo, turbo, are masculine.
    cupido, margo, are common.

[87] **pecten** is masculine; (**sangvis,** see [115], is masculine).

[88] **fel** and **mel** are neuter (also **sal** sometimes in singular).

[89] **agger, carcer,** asser, later, vesper, vomer, are masculine.
    arbos, tellus, are feminine; **cinis, pulvis,** common; **cucumis,** masculine.

[90] **os** is neuter.

CONSONANT-STEM ADJECTIVES.

91 Adjectives with consonant-stems are declined like noun-stems of like form, but most of them take -ī as well as -ĕ for the ablative singular ending,—a result of their likeness to i-stems. They comprise:—

92 (a) Adjectives in the comparative degree.

93 (b) Imparisyllabic adjectives with themes ending in a *short* syllable.

[92] Comparatives are thus declined:—

Sg. M. and F.	N.	Pl. M. and F.	N.	Sg. N.	Pl. M. and F.	N.
altiŏr	altiŭs	altiores	altiora	plūs	plures	plura
altiōris		altiorum		(plūris)	plurium	
altiori		altioribus			pluribus	
altiorem altius		altiores	altiora	plus	plures	plura
altiore(ī)		altioribus		(plure)	pluribus	

Plus is defective in the sg., and the forms **plurls** and **plure** are rare. In the gen. pl. it takes the ending -**ium** of i-stems. Its compound com-**plūres** (only plural) has in old Latin **complur-ia** as well as the regular **complūra**.

[93] Parisyllabic, having the same number of syllables in all cases of the singular. Those a- and o-stem adjectives which have become impari-syllabic by the loss of the nominative singular ending (*i.e.*, stems in **ĕro** and **satur**) are, of course, not included.

The adjectives included in (b) are few, and their meanings usually cause them to be used only of persons. They have no separate form in the singular for the neuter gender, but when necessary use the masc. and fem. form of the nom. as nom. and acc. neuter sg. They are declined as follows:—

Sg. M. and F.	N.	Pl. M. and F.	N.	Sg. M. and F.	N.	Pl. M. and F.	N.
divĕs		divites	[divita]	pauper		pauperes	paupera
divĭtis		divitum		paupĕris		pauperum	
diviti		divitibus		pauperi		pauperibus	
divitem dives		divites	[divita]	pauperem pauper		pauperes	paupera
divite		divitibus		paupere		pauperibus	

As exceptions to (b), must be set down a few i-stems; viz.: **par** and **celer,** which drop the nom. sg. ending (see [102]); also **hebes, teres,**

THE *I*-DECLENSION.   STEMS IN *I.*

The theme of any i-stem may be found by dropping the genitive singular ending, -ĭs. The stem is found by adding i to the theme. | **94**

The following classes contain all the i-stems in common use; viz. : — | **95**

---

praecox, and compounds of -plex (except supplex). See [108]. A few adjective compounds of noun-stems have themes ending in a *long* syllable, but are declined, of course, like the nouns from which they are made; *e.g.*, discŏlor, discŏlōrĭs, etc. Only a few forms of such are found, and it has not seemed necessary to add a third class to contain them.

[94] I-stems have become much confused with consonant-stems through their close likeness in declension, and have been changed into consonant-stems in certain cases by the loss of ĭ. They cannot, therefore, be distinguished by the ending of the gen. sg. as other vowel-stems can, since the ĭ is always lost in that case.

A comparison of ĭ-stem nouns with more primitive forms in Latin or kindred languages, shows that the ĭ has arisen in many cases from an older ·a, e, o, or u, by weakening. Some ĭ-stems show the older e in certain cases. In other words, the ĭ is not found in kindred words in other languages, and seems to be added in Latin.

The ĭ is kept or lost as follows : —

In Class I., kept in nom. sg. (sometimes as e) ; also in some words in acc. and abl. sg.; lost in gen. sg., and usually in abl. sg. The form of the dat. sg. would be the same whether ĭ be kept or lost, and the acc. sg. ending -em may be considered an older form for -ĭm (like -ēs for -ĭs in the nom. sg.), or a consonant-stem ending after ĭ is lost.

In Class II., kept in the abl. sg.; also in a few words (as e) in the nom. and acc. sg.; lost in gen. sg., usually in nom. and acc. sg. The dative may be either, as in Class I.

In Class III., lost throughout the singular.

In the plural of all three classes, ĭ may be kept throughout; but it is usually lost in the nom. and often in the acc. of masc. and fem. nouns.

Occasionally, however, ĭ is kept in cases where it is usually lost, or lost in cases where it is usually kept. This occurs more often in poetry for metrical convenience.

96 I. Parisyllabic nouns in -es and -is.

97 II. Neuters in -e, and neuters with themes in -āl or -ār.

98 III. Nouns with themes ending in an impure mute. These, however, are i-stems only in the plural, having lost i in the singular.

99 The case-endings of i-stems of Class I. (masculine and feminine) are : —

Sg. N.	-ĕs	-ĭs	*Pl.* N.	-ĕs (-ĭs)	
G.	-ĭs	-ĭs	G.	-ĭŭm	
D.	-ī	-ī	D.	-ĭbŭs	
Ac.	-ĕm	-ĭm, -ĕm	Ac.	-īs, -ĕs	
Ab.	-ĕ	-ī, -ĕ	Ab.	-ĭbŭs	

E.g., N.	nūbĕs	nubĕs	turrĭs	turrĕs
G.	nubĭs	nubĭŭm	turrĭs	turrĭŭm
D.	nubī	nubĭbŭs	turrī	turrĭbŭs
Ac.	nubĕm	nubīs (ĕs)	turrĭm (ĕm)	turrīs (ĕs)
Ab.	nubĕ	nubĭbŭs	turrī (ĕ)	turrĭbŭs

[96] Of Class I., **canis** and **juvĕnis** lose i and become consonant-stems in the plural ; **sedes** and **vates** usually ; occasionally, also, a few others.

[98] Impure mute ; *i.e.*, a mute preceded by a consonant. Of course nouns of this kind are not included if the gen. sg. ending shows them to be a-, o-, or u-stems.

Cor, though an i-stem in compounds, loses i in the plural also, and becomes a consonant-stem throughout. Many other monosyllables, especially those with a long stem-syllable, give evidence of having once been i-stems, and though the i is usually lost, it sometimes appears, especially in the abl. sg. or gen. pl. The Latin writers and grammarians were evidently uncertain as to the proper form in these words. All such words are put by the classification here given in the consonant declension, where the preponderance of evidence places them ; but a list is subjoined, containing those words in which a pupil may occasionally meet with i-stem forms ; viz. : —

cos, dos, faex, fraus, glis, lis, lux, mas, mus, pax.

as, nix, plebs, scrobs, trabs, have a greater claim to be classed as i-stems ; the older forms, **assis, ningvis, plebes, scrobis, trabes,** show that they once belonged to Class I.

The case-endings of **i**-stems of Class II. (neut.) are: **100**

	Sg. N.	-ĕ or —	*Pl.* N.	-iă
	G.	-ĭs	G.	-iŭm
	D.	-ī	D.	-ĭbŭs
	Ac.	-ĕ or —	Ac.	-iă
	Ab.	-ī (ĕ)	Ab.	-ĭbŭs

E.g., N.	marĕ	mariă	ănĭmăl	animāliă
G.	marĭs	mariŭm	animālĭs	animāliŭm
D.	marī	marĭbŭs	animālī	animālĭbŭs
Ac.	marĕ	mariă	animăl	animāliă
Ab.	marī	marĭbŭs	animālī	animālĭbŭs

I-stems of Class III. have in the plural the same   **101** endings as those of Classes I. and II., but the endings of consonant-stems in the singular. (See 74 and 75.)

[99] As acc. sg. ending, **-ĭm** is found in
     Arărĭm, Lĭgĕrĭm, puppĭm, sitĭm, Tĭbĕrĭm, vĭm.
     amussim, burim, cucŭmim, praesēpim (?), ravim, tussim.
As acc. sg. ending, both **-ĭm** and **-ĕm** are found in
     febrĭm, messĭm, navĭm, turrĭm (or **febrem,** etc.).
     cravim, cratim, lentim, pelvim, restim, sementim, secūrim (or
       cravem, etc.).
As abl. sg. ending, **-ī** is found in
     sitī, vī.
     Aprīli, cucŭmi, Qvintīli, ravi, rumi, secūri, Sextīli, tussi.
As abl. sg. ending, both **-ī** and **-ĕ** are found in
     aedīlī, amnī, anguī, Arărī, avī, cīvī, classī, collī, febrī,
       fīnī, ĭgnī, ĭmbrī, Lĭgĕrī, navī, orbī, puppī, turrī (or
       aīdīle, amne, etc.).
     axi, corbi, fusti, pelvi, posti, sodāli, strigĭli, ungvi (or
       axe, etc.).
   The nom. pl. ending **-īs** (or **-eīs,** see [2]) is rare; in the acc. pl., modern editions usually give one ending in all words to the exclusion of the other. Which one is given is a matter of indifference as a question of grammar.

   [100] The abl. sg. ending **-ĕ** is rare, except in names of towns.

   [101] In Class III., only **partĭm** shows the **i** kept in the acc. sg., and **partī, lactī, sortī,** in the abl. sg. As an adverb, the form **partim** is

102   A few stems in -**ĕri** drop the ending of the nominative singular, and syncopate **ĕ** in all other cases. (Compare stems in -**ĕro, 66,** and -**ĕr, 80.**)

103   I-stems of Class I. with themes in **n** or **s** are masculine; other i-stems of Class I. are feminine.

104   I-stems of Class II. are neuter.

105   In Class III. polysyllables are masculine; monosyllables are feminine.

ADJECTIVES WITH STEMS IN *I*.

106   Adjectives with i-stems are declined like nounstems of like form, but those of Class I. have only -**ī,** the regular ending, in the ablative singular; those of Class III. have both -**ī** and -**ĕ.**

common; the other forms are very rare, the i being regularly lost in the singular of Class III.

[102] Viz.: **imber, linter, uter, venter,** and a few adjectives in the masculine. **Arar, Liger,** and the adjective **par** drop the nom. sg. ending (also **celer** in the masculine), but do not syncopate.

[103] The exceptions in Class I. are:—

(Theme in a mute)	**orbis;** fascis, ungvis; antes, fustis, postis, sentis, vectis; *masculine.*
	corbis, scrobis, torqvis; *common.*
(Theme in a liquid)	**collis, imber;** caulis, follis, buris, torris, uter, venter; *masculine.*
	callis, linter; *common.*
(Theme in a nasal)	**finis,** clunis; *common;* cucŭmis, *masculine.*
(Theme in -s)	**classis, messis,** tussis; *feminine.*

[105] The exceptions in Class III. are:—

> **dens, fons, mons, pons;** *masculine;* **cohors,** *feminine;* **lac,** *neuter.*

[106] Adjective-stems in -**ĕri** (except **celer**) generally syncopate **ĕ** in all forms, except in the nom. sg. masc., and drop the ending of that case, thus gaining different forms for masc. and fem. nom. sg. This differen-

To Classes I. and II. belong

    Parisyllabic adjectives in -ĭs (M. and F.), -ĕ (N.). | **107**

To Class III. belong

    Imparisyllabic adjectives, with themes ending in | **108**

        a *long* syllable.

---

tiation of form is not strictly observed, however; **acer**, for example, is *fem.* as well as *masc.* in old Latin, and **acris** *masc.* as well as *fem.*

There is, in general, a stronger tendency toward ĭ-stem forms in the adjective than in the noun. This is shown not only in ĭ-stem adjectives, which retain the ĭ more often than nouns, but also in consonant-stem adjectives, which often take ī as the ending of the abl. sg. In spite of this tendency, however, the acc. sg. of adjectives has regularly the consonant-stem ending -ĕm.

[108] To Class III. belong also the numeral multiplicatives in -plex (*e.g.*, **duplex,** *two-fold;* **qvintŭplex,** *five-fold;* etc.), and the adjectives **hebes, teres, par, praecox.** See [93]. The comparative **plus** is peculiar. See [92].

Adjectives of Class III. have no separate form for the neuter singular, but use the nom. masc. as nom. and acc. sg. neut. To this class belong tribal names in -ātes and -ites, and a few other words of like formation, generally found only in the plural, and used substantively (*e.g.*, **Arpinātes, optimātes,** etc.), and verbal derivatives in -trix (commonly used as feminine nouns of agency) when used as adjectives (*e.g.*, **victrix**).

Adjectives with ĭ-stems are declined as follows: —

M. and F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
lĕvĭs	lĕvĕ	ācĕr	ācrĭs	ācrĕ	pār		ămans	
levĭs		ācris	acris	acris	părĭs		amantis	
levī		acri	acri	acri	pari		amanti	
levĕm	levĕ	acrem	acrem	acre	parem	par	amantem	amans
levī		etc.	etc.	etc.	pari(e)		amante(i)	
levēs	leviă	cĕlĕr	cĕlĕrĭs	cĕlĕrĕ	pares	paria	amantes	amantia
levĭum		celĕrĭs	celeris	celeris	parium		amantium	
levĭbŭs		celeri	celeri	celeri	paribus		amantibus	
levīs(ēs) leviă		celerem	celerem	celere	parīs(es) paria		amantes(īs) amantia	
levĭbŭs		etc.	etc.	etc.	paribus		amantibus	

A few compounds of consonant noun-stems have themes ending in a long syllable, but are consonant-stems of course, and may be regarded as exceptions. See [93]. Adjectives in the comparative degree are also consonant-stems. See [92] and [93].

THE *U*-DECLENSION.   STEMS IN -*U*.

109   The theme of any **u**-stem may be found by dropping the genitive singular ending, -**ūs.** The stem is found by adding -**u** to the theme.

The case-endings are : —

FOR MASCULINES.

				E.g.,		
Sg. N.	-ŭs	*Pl.* N.	-ūs		curr ŭs	curr ūs
G.	-ūs	G.	-uŭm		curr ūs	curr uŭm
D.	-uĭ (ū)	D.	-ŭbŭs, ĭbŭs		curr uĭ	curr ĭbŭs
Ac.	-ŭm	Ac.	-ŭs		curr ŭm	curr ūs
Ab.	-ū	Ab.	-ŭbŭs, ĭbŭs		curr ū	curr ĭbŭs

110

FOR NEUTERS.

				E.g.,		
Sg. N.	-ū	*Pl.* N.	-uă		corn ū	corn uă
G.	-ūs	G.	-uŭm		corn ūs	corn uŭm
D.	-ū	D.	-ŭbŭs, -ĭbŭs		corn ū	corn ĭbŭs
Ac.	-ū	Ac.	-uă		corn ū	corn uă
Ab.	-ū	Ab.	-ŭbŭs, -ĭbŭs		corn ū	corn ĭbŭs

111

---

[110] The gen. sg. sometimes has the uncontracted ending -uĭs, the gen. pl. (rarely) the contracted ending -um.

The contracted ending -ū of the dat. sg. is regular in neuters ; rare in masculines.

The fuller ending -ŭbŭs of the dat. and abl. pl. is found in **acus, arcus, partus, tribus ;** usually in **artus, lacus, specus ;** sometimes in **portus, veru.**

An ending -ī occurs a few times in the gen. sg., apparently from con-fusion with o-stems from the same root. O-stem forms occur occasionally in other cases also, and many names of plants and trees are confused in their inflection, having both o-stem and u-stem forms.

Old forms in inscriptions, etc., show the ending of gen. sg. -uos. For -ū and -ūs, -uu and -uus are sometimes written to show the length of the ū. See [2].

A locative **domuī** occurs rarely ; no other u-stems form a locative.

Monosyllabic stems in -u retain the suffixes un- contracted with the stem-vowel, and are therefore declined like consonant-stems.	**112**
U-stems with nominative singular ending -ŭs are masculine; the others are neuter.	**113**

Irregular Declension.

Nouns and adjectives are irregular in declension —	
(*a*) From the retention of old endings.	**114**
(*b*) From variation of the stem.	**115**

[112] Viz.: **grūs, sūs,** and **lues** (when it drops ĭ) ; with the irregular stems **bū, Jū.** But **sūs** has **sūbus** and **sŭbus** as well as **suĭbus.**

The stems **bū** and **Jū** stand for the older diphthongal stems, **bou-, Jou-.** The diphthong changes u to v before a vowel (see [12] (*a*)), and passes into **ō** or **ū** before a consonant. The forms are : —

bŏs	bŏves	Jūpĭter (Juppiter)
bŏvĭs	bŏvum, boum (see [12] (*c*))	Jŏvĭs
bŏvĭ	bōbus, būbus	Jŏvĭ
bŏvem	bŏves	Jŏvem
bŏve	bōbus, būbus	Jŏve

The nom. **Jupĭter** (old form Jupater) is a compound of **pater.** Some- times the second part is declined Jupĭtĕrĭs, etc.

[113] **Domus, ĭdus, manus, trĭbus,** colus, qvinqvātrus, and portĭcus are feminine.

Acus, arcus, penus, and specus are common.

[114] The irregularities under (*a*) have been already mentioned with the endings of the various declensions.

[115] The following are irregular from variation of stem : —

balneum (st. **balneo-**) ; pl. usually **balneae,** etc. (st. **balnea-**).

caro (st. **carŏn-**) ; all other cases from a syncopated stem **carn-** (**carnĭs, carnĭ,** etc.).

domus (st. **domu-**) ; a stem **domo-** is found also in all cases except the nom., dat., and abl. pl., and is more common in the loc. and abl. sg., where the u-stem forms are old.

epŭlum (st. **epŭlo-**) ; pl. **epulae,** etc. (st. **epula-**).

| **116** | (*c*) From variation of gender. |
| **117** | (*d*) From lack of certain cases. |

fames	(st. fame-) ; but gen. sg. usually **famis** (st. fam-).
femur	(st. femŏr-) ; except in nom. and acc. sg., a stem **femĭn-** is equally common.
iter	(st. itĕr-) ; except in nom. and acc. sg., a stem **itĭnĕr-** is used.
jugĕrum	(st. jugĕro-) ; pl. **jugĕra,** etc. (st. jugĕr-).
jecur	(st. jecŏr-) ; except in nom. and acc. sg., a stem **jocĭnĕr-** or **jocĭnŏr-** is equally common.
pelăgus	(st. pelăgus-) ; only nom. and acc. sg. and nom. and acc. pl. in Greek form **pelăgē** (contracted from **pelageă**) ; other cases from a stem **pelăgo-**.
sangvis	(st. sangvi-) ; only nom. sg. Other forms from a stem **sangvĭn-**.
senex	(st. senec-) ; only nom. sg. Other forms from a stem **sen-**.
supellex	(st. supellect-) ; only nom. sg. Other forms from a stem **supellectĭli-**.
virus	(st. virus-) ; only nom. and acc. sg. Other forms from a stem **viro-**.
vas	(st. vas-) ; pl. **vasa,** etc. (st. vaso-). In this noun s does not suffer the usual change to **r.**
vesper	(st. vespĕro-) ; but abl. sg. **vespĕre** (st. vespĕr-).
vulgus	(st. vulgus-) ; only nom. and acc. sg. All other forms from a masc. stem **vulgo-,** which is found also in nom. and acc. sg.
vis	(st. vi-) ; pl. **vires,** etc. (st. viri-).

The only adjectives irregular from variation of stem (except **senex** above, which is usually used as a noun) are the adjective compounds of **caput,** which form the nom. sg. from a syncopated stem ; *e.g.,* **praeceps** (st. praecept-) ; but other cases from a stem **praecipĭt-** ; **praecipĭtis,** etc.

[116] Nouns in which variation of stem has caused variation of gender are included in [115]. Aside from such, variation of gender causes irregularity of declension in the following : —

caelum	(st. caelo-), neut. ; pl. (found only once), **caelos,** masc.
carbăsus	(st. carbăso-), fem. ; pl. neut. **carbăsa,** etc.
frenum	(st. freno-), neut. ; pl. neut. **frena,** etc., or masc. **freni,** etc.
jocus	(st. joco-), masc. ; pl. neut. **joca,** etc., or masc. **joci,** etc.
locus	(st. loco-), masc. ; pl. neut. **loca,** etc., or masc. **loci,** etc.
rastrum	(st. rastro-), neut. ; pl. neut. **rastra,** etc., or masc. **rastri,** etc.

[117] Nouns that lack some of their forms are called defective. There are many such in Latin, some of which lack the plural or the singular on account of their meaning ; in others, the lack of certain forms seems to be

Numeral Adjectives.

The cardinal numerals, from *one* to *ten*, with **118** **centum** and **mille,** are primitive words; the others are formed from these. **Unus, duo, tres,** and the

---

purely accidental. A few neuters have only the nom. and acc. sg., and are called indeclinable.

It has not seemed necessary to add any list of defective nouns. Such a list would be of no practical value to the learner, and would be a very large one if it should contain all the nouns, except those all of whose forms are found in Latin writers. The lexicon must be consulted for such information.

[118] For the declension of **unus,** see 71; of **duo,** [72]. **Tres** is a regular **i-**stem. **Mille** is a regular **i-**stem, but is indeclinable in the singular. The hundreds are regular **a-** and **o-**stems. All cardinals except **unus,** of course, lack the singular, as do all the distributives. See the list below.

The combination of units, *tens* and *hundreds* to form the intermediate numbers is made as in English.

A list of numeral adjectives is added for reference. The corresponding numeral adverbs are also given : —

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	NUMERAL ADVS.
1 unus, -a, -um, *one ;*	primus,-a, -um,*first ;*	singŭli, -ae, -a, *one by one ;*	semel, *once.*
2 duo, -ae, -o, *two ;*	alter, -a, -um secundus, -a, -um	bīni, -ae, -a, *two by two ;*	bis, *twice.*
3 tres, tria	tertius, -a, -um	terni *or* trini, etc.	ter, *thrice.*
4 qvattuor	qvartus, -a, -um	qvaterni	qvater,*four times.*
5 qvinqve	qvintus, etc.	qvīni	qvinqviens, etc.
6 sex	sextus	sēni	sexiens
7 septem	septĭmus	septēni	septiens
8 octo	octāvus	octōni	octiens
9 novem	nonus	novēni	noviens
10 decem	decĭmus	dēni	deciens
11 undĕcim	undecĭmus	undēni	undeciens
12 duodĕcim	duodecĭmus	duodēni	duodeciens
13 tredĕcim	tertius decĭmus	terni dēni	terdeciens
14 qvattuordĕcim	qvartus decĭmus	qvaterni dēni	qvaterdeciens
15 qvindĕcim	etc.	etc.	qvindeciens
16 sedĕcim			etc.
17 septemdĕcim			
18 octodĕcim			
19 novemdĕcim			

hundreds except **centum,** are declined; also **mille,** when used as a noun. The other cardinals are indeclinable.

	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	NUMERAL ADVS.
20	viginti	vicensĭmus	vicēni	viciens
21	viginti unus *or*	primus et vicensĭmus *or*	vicēni singŭli	semel et viciens
	unus et viginti	unus et vicensĭmus		
22	viginti duo *or*	etc.	vicēni bini	bis et viciens
	duo et viginti		etc.	etc.
	etc.			
30	triginta	tricensĭmus	tricēni	triciens
40	qvadraginta	qvadragensĭmus	qvadragēni	qvadragiens
50	qvinqvaginta	qvinqvagensĭmus	qvinqvagēni	qvinqvagiens
60	sexaginta	sexagensĭmus	sexagēni	sexagiens
70	septuaginta	septuagensĭmus	septuagēni	septuagiens
80	octoginta	octogensĭmus	octogēni	octogiens
90	nonaginta	nonagensĭmus	nonagēni	nonagiens
100	centum	centensĭmus	centēni	centiens
101	centum et unus	centensĭmus primus	centēni singŭli	centiens semel
200	ducenti, -ae, -a	ducentensĭmus	ducēni	ducentiens
300	trecenti	trecentensĭmus	trecēni	trecentiens
400	qvadringenti	etc.	etc.	etc.
500	qvingenti			
600	sescenti			
700	septingenti			
800	octingenti			
900	nongenti			
1000	mille			
2000	duo millia			
3000	tria millia			
	etc.			

For 18, 19, 28, 29, etc., *substractive* forms (**duodeviginti, undetriginta,** etc.) are more common than the regular forms. So also, **duodevincensĭmus, duodevicēni,** etc.

In the later language, the endings **-ensĭmus** and **-iens** drop n and become ‑**ēsĭmus, -iēs.**

The distributives, besides their regular meaning, *two by two, in twos,* etc., are also used with nouns plural in form but singular in meaning. Thus **castra,** *forts,* is the Latin word for a *camp.* **Bina castra** means *two camps* (lit. *forts by twos, two sets of forts*). They are also used in expressing multiplication; *e.g.,* **bis dena viginti sunt,** *twice ten is twenty.*

Comparison of Adjectives.

The stem of the comparative degree is formed by adding -ios to the theme of the positive. This suffix becomes -ĭŭs in the nominative and accusative singular neuter; -ĭōr elsewhere. (For the declension of the comparative, see [92].) **119**

The stem of the superlative is formed by adding -issĭmo-, -issĭma- to the theme of the positive. **120**

Stems in -ĕr-, -ĕro-, -ĕri-, add -rĭmo- to the theme for the superlative, and a few in -ĭli- add -lĭmo-. **121**

Compounds of -dĭcus, -fĭcus, and -vŏlus add the suffixes of comparison to a theme in -dĭcent-, -fĭcent-, -vŏlent-. **122**

Many adjectives are not compared. If a comparative or superlative of such is needed, it is formed by prefixing **magis** (*more*); **maxĭme** (*most*). **123**

[119] Comparison is not inflection, but derivation; but is placed here for convenience.

[121] These stems, if syncopated in the positive, are also syncopated in the comparative, but not in the superlative. **Matūrus** sometimes adds -rĭmo- for the superlative.

Those which add -lĭmo are **facĭlis, difficĭlis, simĭlis, dissimĭlis, gracĭlis, humĭlis.**

[122] The themes in -nt are participles in formation.

[123] The following have special irregularities: —

bonus	melior	optĭmus	infĕrus	inferior	infĭmus, imus
malus	pejor	pessĭmus	postĕrus	posterior	postrēmus, postŭmus
magnus	major	maxĭmus	supĕrus	superior	suprēmus, summus
multus	plus (neut.)	plurĭmus		citerior	citĭmus
parvus	minor	minĭmus		interior	intĭmus
senex	senior			prior	prīmus
juvĕnis	junior			propior	proxĭmus
extĕrus	exterior	extrēmus, *or* extĭmus	vetus	ulterior	ultĭmus
					veterrĭmus

Many adjectives lack the comparative or superlative. The lacking superlative of **senex** is supplied by the phrase **maxĭmus natu;** that of **juvĕnis** by **minĭmus natu.**

Forms of Pronouns.

124   The personal pronouns are **ĕgo, tu, sui.** They are peculiar in declension, partly from variation of stem, partly from the retention of older endings lost in the ordinary noun-declension.

They are thus declined : —

EGO (St. **egon-, me-, nŏ-**).

Sg.	N. **ĕgŏ**	*Pl.*	**nŏs**
	G. **(meī)**		**(nostrŭm, nostrī)**
	D. **mihĭ, mī**		**nŏbĭs**
	Ac. **mē**		**nŏs**
	Ab. **mē**		**nŏbĭs**

125

	TU (St. **te-, vŏ-**).				**SUI** (St. **se-**).		
Sg.	N. **tū**	*Pl.* **vŏs**		*Sg.* —		*Pl.* —	
	G. **(tuī)**	**(vestrŭm, vestrī)**		**(suī)**		**(suī)**	
	D. **tĭbĭ**	**vŏbĭs**		**sĭbĭ**		**sĭbĭ**	
	Ac. **tē**	**vŏs**		**sē, sēsē**		**sē, sēsē**	
	Ab. **tē**	**vŏbĭs**		**sē, sēsē**		**sē, sēsē**	

126   The possessive pronouns **meŭs, tuŭs, suŭs, nostĕr, vestĕr,** are derived from the personal pronouns. They are regular **a-** and **o-**stem adjectives, except that **meŭs** forms its vocative singular masculine, **mī,** from an older form **miŭs.**

---

[125] **Sui** is often called the reflexive pronoun, because it refers to the subject of the sentence. For a personal pronoun not referring to the subject, a demonstrative (**is, ille, iste**) is used.

The gen. sg. of **ego** and **tu** was **mis, tis.** These forms were lost, and the gen. forms of all the personal pronouns in both numbers are borrowed from the possessives.

The personal pronouns are sometimes emphasized by appending **-met, -te,** or **-pte.** So also, at times, the possessives : **egomet, nosmet, tute, suipte, suopte,** etc.

Med, ted, sed, are old forms for **me, te, se** (acc. and abl.). The doubled form **sese** is common ; **tete** for **te** occurs in old Latin ; also **vostrum** for **vestrum,** and **sibe** or **sibei** for **sibi.**

The demonstrative pronouns have the declension **127**
of adjectives, but take the pronominal suffix -**d** in
the nominative and accusative singular neuter, and
the pronominal endings -**ĭus**, -**ī**, in the genitive and
dative singular of all genders. Certain cases of some
of them are regularly emphasized by appending a
demonstrative or intensive syllable (**ĭ, cĕ** or **c**).

The demonstratives are **ĭs, istĕ, illĕ, ipsĕ, hĭc,** **128**
īdem.

Is (stem **ĭ**-, usually lengthened to **ĭo**-, **eo**-) is thus **129**
declined : —

Sg.				Pl.			
N.	**ĭs**	**eă**	**ĭd**	N.	**eī, iī**	**eae**	**eă**
G.	**ĕjŭs**	**ĕjŭs**	**ĕjŭs**	G.	**eōrŭm**	**eārŭm**	**eōrŭm**
D.	**ĕī**	**ĕī**	**ĕī**	D.	**eīs, iīs**	**eīs, iīs**	**eīs, iīs**
Ac.	**eŭm**	**eăm**	**ĭd**	Ac.	**eōs**	**eās**	**eă**
Ab.	**eō**	**eā**	**eō**	Ab.	**eīs, iīs**	**eīs, iīs**	**eīs, iīs**

[127] A few instances are found of the regular adj. endings in the gen.
and dat. sg.

The forms strengthened by -**ĭ** are those which end in -**ă** ; viz.: nom. sg.
fem., and nom. and acc. pl. neut. **ă** + **ĭ** contracts to **ae.** This strengthen-
ing is found in **hĭc** ; sometimes in **ĭlle** and **ĭste.** (It occurs also in the
relative pronoun. See 138.)

Ce is used to strengthen all the cases, but drops e except after s. It is
used in **hĭc** ; sometimes in **ĭlle** and **ĭste.** In the older language various
forms occur with an appended -**ce** or -**c.**

[128] A demonstrative stem, **so-, sa-,** is said to have been used by
Ennius in the forms **sum, sam, sas.**

For **ĭlle** an older spelling, **olle,** is found in poetry.

[129] From the stem **ĭ-** are formed **ĭs, ĭd** ; also the old forms **em** (or
ĭm) = **eum,** and **ĭbus** = **eĭs.** The rest is formed from the longer stem.
Ei and **eĭs** are sometimes contracted into monosyllables ; **eae** (dat. sg. fem.)
and **eābus** (abl. pl. fem.) are found in Cato, and inscriptions show various
forms with **eĭ** written for **ĭ** (according to [2]), and the nom. pl. forms
eĭs, eeĭs, ieĭs.

130   **Istĕ** (stem **isto-**) is thus declined : —

Sg.N.	istĕ	istă	istŭd	Pl. istī	istae	istă
G.	istīŭs	istīŭs	istīŭs	istōrŭm	istărŭm	istōrŭm
D.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Ac.	istŭm	istăm	istŭd	istōs	istās	istă
Ab.	istō	istă	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

131   **Illĕ** is declined like **istĕ.**

132   **Ipsĕ** is declined like **istĕ,** but has **ipsŭm** in the nominative and accusative neuter singular.

133   **Hīc** (stem **hi-** or **ho-**) is strengthened by both **-i** and **-ce,** but the latter is not usual except in certain cases.

134   The usual forms are : —

Sg.N.	hĭc	haec	hŏc	Pl. hī	hae	haec
G.	hūjŭs	hūjŭs	hūjŭs	hōrŭm	hārŭm	hōrŭm
D.	huīc	huīc	huīc	hīs	hīs	hīs
Ac.	hunc	hanc	hŏc	hōs	hās	haec
Ab.	hŏc	hāc	hŏc	hīs	hīs	hīs

[130] A nom. sg. masc. **istŭs** is found once.

[132] For **ipse, ipsŭs** is found. **Ipse** is compounded of **is** and **-pse,** and a few forms occur in which the first part is declined while the second remains unchanged; viz.: **eăpse, eumpse, eampse, eōpse, eāpse.**

[133] The stem **hi-** is found in **hic,** and in the old forms **hisce** (= **hī**) and **hībus** (= **hīs**). **Huīc** is often monosyllabic (**hvīc**).

[134] Other forms of **hic,** chiefly old or poetical, are:—

Sg. N.	hice		hoce	Pl. N.	hisce	haec	haice
G.	{ hoiusce { hujusce	hoiusce hujusce	hoiusce hujusce	G.	{ horunce { horunc	harunce harunc	
D.	hoice	hoice	hoice	D.	{ hibus { hisce	hibus hisce	hibus hisce
Ac.		hance		Ac.	hosce	hasce	haice
Ab.		hāce		Ab.	{ hibus { hisce	hibus hisce	hibus hisce

Illĕ and **istĕ** are sometimes strengthened by **-i** and **-ce** in the same way as **hĭc**.   **135**

Idĕm is formed by appending **-dĕm** to the various forms of **is**. The forms **is** and **id** drop **-s** and **-d**.   **136**

Idĕm is thus declined: —   **137**

Sg.N.	īdem	eădem	ĭdem	Pl.	eīdem	eaedem	eădem
G.	ējusdem	ējusdem	ējusdem		eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem		eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
Ac.	eundem	eandem	ĭdem		eōsdem	eāsdem	eădem
Ab.	eōdem	eădem	eōdem		eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

The relative pronoun (stem **qvi-** or **qvo-**) has the strengthening **-i.** See [127]. It is thus declined: —   **138**

Sg.N.	qvī	qvae	qvŏd	Pl.	qvī	qvae	qvae
G.	cūjŭs	cūjŭs	cūjŭs		qvōrŭm	qvārŭm	qvōrŭm
D.	cui	cui	cui		qvĭbŭs	qvĭbŭs	qvĭbŭs
Ac.	qvĕm	qvăm	qvŏd		qvōs	qvās	qvae
Ab.	qvō	qvā	qvō		qvĭbŭs	qvĭbŭs	qvĭbŭs

The same pronoun is also used as an interrogative pronoun, but when used substantively has **qvĭs, qvĭd** in the nominative singular for **qvī, qvŏd.**   **139**

---

[135] The forms thus produced are: —

Sg. N.	illĭc	illaec	illoc, illuc	Pl. N.	illĭc	illaec	illaec
G.	illiusce	illiusce	illiusce	G.			
D.	illĭc	illĭc	illĭc	D.	illisce	illisce	illisce
Ac.	illunc	illanc	illoc, illuc	Ac.	illosce	illasce	illaec
Ab.	illoc	illac	illoc	Ab.	illisce	illisce	illisce

So also **istĭc, istaec, istoc,** etc.

[138] From the stem **qvi-** is formed also an abl. sg. **qvī,** and the old nom. pl. **qves.** From the stem **qvo-** is formed also a dat. and abl. pl. **qvīs.** For **cujus, cui,** an older spelling, **qvojus, qvoi** (or **qvojei**), is found. **Cui** is often monosyllabic (**cvi**).

[139] A few cases of **qvī, qvod** used substantively occur, and **qvis, qvĭd,** are not rarely used adjectively; **qvis** and **qvem** are sometimes

140 The same pronoun is also used as an indefinite pronoun. When so used, it has the same forms as when used interrogatively, but usually does not take the strengthening -i.

141 Various indefinite pronouns compounded of **quĭs** or **qvī** occur, all of which have the same declension; but those in which **qvĭs** or **qvī** forms the second part usually do not take the strengthening -i.

Forms of the Verb.

142 The Latin verb has the following forms:—

143   (*a*) Three tenses for incomplete action: *present, imperfect, future.*

144   (*b*) Three tenses for completed action: *perfect, pluperfect, future perfect.*

---

feminine. **Qvīnam** or **qvīsnam** is a more emphatic interrogative; it has the same forms, with **-nam** appended.

From the stem qvo- is formed a possessive interrogative, **cūjus, a, um** (= *whose*). It is antiquated, and only a few forms occur; viz.: **cujā, cujum, cujam, cujā, cujae.**

[140] **Qvī** or **qvīs** is indefinite after **sī, nisi, ne, num,** rarely elsewhere.

[141] A list is added for reference:—

alĭqvī or alĭqvis	alĭqva	alĭqvod or alĭqvid	*some, any-.*
ecqvī or ecqvis	ecqva, ecqvae	ecqvod or ecqvid	*any?*
qvidam	qvaedam	qvoddam	*a, a certain.*
qvicunqve	qvaecunqve	qvodcunqve	*whatever.*
qvilĭbet	qvaelĭbet	qvodlĭbet	*which you like, any.*
qvivis	qvaevis	qvodvis	*which you will, any.*

So **qviviscunque,** etc.   { *whichever you will, any.*

qvisqvis (once qvĭqvī). Only a few forms are found.			*whosoever.*
qvisqvam		qvidqvam, qvicqvam	*any at all.*
qvispiam	qvaepiam	qvidpiam	*any.*
qvisqve	qvaeqve	qvodqve or qvidqve	*every.*

So **unusqvisqve,** etc.   *every single one.*

It should be noticed that **ecqvis,** being at the same time interrogative and indefinite, forms **ecqvă** and **ecqvae,** without the i and with it.

The present tense has three moods: *indicative, sub-* | **145**
junctive, imperative.

The imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect have two | **146**
moods: *indicative, subjunctive.*

The future and future perfect have one mood: | **147**
indicative.

These forms are often called, collectively, the | **148**
"*finite verb*." Beside these, certain derivative noun-
and adjective-forms are usually treated in connection
with the verb; viz.: —

    (*a*) Three verbal nouns called *infinitives.* | **149**
    (*b*) A verbal noun called the *gerund.* | **150**
    (*c*) A verbal noun called the *supine.* | **151**
    (*d*) Four verbal adjectives called *participles.* | **152**

Of the finite verb only the incomplete tenses form | **153**
a passive voice. For the passive of the complete
tenses the Latin, like the English, uses the verb "*be*"
with a passive participle.

The passive voice of the incomplete tenses was | **154**
originally reflexive in its formation and meaning, and

---

[149] Viz.: a present active infinitive, a present passive infinitive, a perfect active infinitive. The infinitives are indeclinable nouns.

[150] The gerund is a neuter o-stem used only in the oblique cases of the singular.

[151] The supine is a u-stem used only in the acc. and abl. sg.

[152] Viz.: a present active participle, a present passive participle, a future active participle, and a perfect passive participle. The first is an i-stem of Class III.; the others are regular a- and o-stems.

[154] The name "deponent" was given to these verbs by the old gram-
marians, because they were supposed to have "*laid off*" their active form.
In many of them the reflexive force can be seen; *e.g.*, **fruor,** *I enjoy*
(*myself*); **vescor,** *I eat* (*feed myself*); **cingor,** *I bind on* (*myself*), etc. That

the reflexive use still remains in some verbs; *e.g.*, **vertor,** *I turn* [*myself*]. Many verbs thus used have lost the active form entirely, and use only the passive. They are usually translated into English by active forms, and are called "*deponent*" verbs.

Verb-Stems.

155 Verb-stems, like noun-stems, may end in **a, e, i, o, u,** or a consonant. Of stems in -**o** only a few forms are found.

156 In most verbs two or three forms of the stem are found, — the verb-stem proper (*simple stem*), a modification of it used in the incomplete tenses (*present stem*), and another modification of it used in the complete tenses (*perfect stem*).

157 In many verbs the present stem is the same as the

---

they are not true passives, is shown by the fact that many of them are transitive and govern a direct object. In many of them it is not easy to see the reflexive meaning, possibly because the original meaning is not known, and they are apparently equivalent to active forms.

Deponent verbs form the gerund, supine, and participles of the active as well as the passive voice, and their passive participles are sometimes passive in meaning. In the tenses for completed action, though these are not reflexive in formation, the meaning follows that of the incomplete tenses, and these forms also are usually rendered into English by the active voice.

[155] Open vowel-stems, as in nouns, differ in certain points from close vowel and consonant-stems, but the division is not sufficiently marked to make the grouping of any importance.

The only o-stems are no-sc-o (and its compounds), fŏ-rem, etc. (imp. subj.) and fŏ-re (pres. inf.), and a few participles which have become adjectives in use.

[157] The modifications mentioned here, especially *nasalizing*, are sometimes by analogy carried also into the perfect-stem or simple-stem forms.

simple stem. When not so, it is formed from the
simple stem, —

 (*a*) By reduplication.   **158**
 (*b*) By lengthening the stem-vowel. **159**
 (*c*) By adding or inserting a nasal. **160**
 (*d*) By adding -sc, -esc, or -isc. **161**
 (*e*) By adding -a, -e, or -i.   **162**

The perfect stem is rarely like the simple stem. **163**
Usually it is formed from the simple stem, —

[158] Reduplication consists in repeating before the stem its initial
consonant-sound with the following vowel, often with a weakening of the
latter. Stems ending in a vowel lose the final vowel when reduplicated,
and become consonant-stems.

Reduplication is found in the present stem in four cases; viz.: **bĭb-o**
(**ba-**), **gĭgn-o** (for *gigĕn-o*, **gĕn-**), **ser-o** (for *ses-o*, **sa-**), and **sĭst-o** (**sta-**).
Sĭsto is peculiar in repeating only the initial **s** and the vowel (not **st**).

[159] *E.g.*, **dūc-o** (**dŭc-**), **dīc-o** (**dĭc-**).

[160] *E.g.*, **sĭn-o** (**sĭ-**), **pung-o** (**pŭg-**), **fĭnd-o** (**fĭd-**).

[161] *E.g.*, **ac-esc-o** (**ac-**), **no-sc-o** (**no-**), **revĭv-isc-o** (**revĭv-**). When
sc is added after a consonant, there is usually some obscurity of formation
from euphonic loss.

Verbs which form the present stem in this way usually mean *to become*
(so and so), *to begin to be* (so and so). They are often called, therefore,
inceptive or *inchoative* verbs.

[162] A few present stems end in **ll**, which seems to have arisen from
li; viz.: **cell-o**, **pell-o**, **toll-o**, also **sall-o** or **salio** (*to salt*). But **salĭ-o**
(*to leap*) and **sepelĭ-o** do not change.

[163] Possibly all cases of likeness of form between the perfect stem
and the simple stem are the result of loss. Stems in a close vowel often
drop the **v** of the perfect stem; those in -**u** show the **v** only in old Latin.
Others have lost a reduplication syllable, and possibly the stem-vowel is
lengthened in others, where the syllable is long by position, and the real
quantity of the vowel therefore not clear.

164	(*a*) By reduplication.
165	(*b*) By lengthening the stem-vowel.
166	(*c*) By adding **-s.**
167	(*d*) By adding **-u** or **-v.**

The " principal parts " of a verb are : —

| 168 | ACTIVE | The pres. ind. act., 1st sg. ⎫
The pres. inf. act. ⎭ which show the *present* stem.
The perf. ind. act., 1st sg., which shows the *perfect* stem.
The supine, which shows the *simple* stem. |
| 169 | PASSIVE | The pres. ind. pass., 1st sg. ⎫
The pres. inf. pass. ⎭ which show the *present* stem.
The perf. pass. participle, which shows the *simple* stem. |

[164] In the perfect stem **ă** is regularly weakened to **ĕ** in the reduplication syllable, and to **ĕ** or **ĭ** in the stem syllable. **Bĭb-ĭ** (**ba-**) seems to owe its form to the presenť **bĭb-o ;** possibly **stĭt-ĭ** has been affected in the same way by **sĭst-o.**

The stems which begin with two consonants (**scĭd-, sta-, spond-**) drop the initial s of the stem, after the reduplication syllable (making **scĭ-cĭd-ĭ, ste-t-ĭ, spo-pond-ĭ**). For the loss of the final vowel of **ba-, da-,** and **sta-** in **bĭb-ĭ, ded-ĭ, stet ĭ** or **stĭt-ĭ,** see [158].

The reduplication of the perfect stem is usually dropped when the verb is compounded with a preposition. A few stems only retain it.

[165] *E.g.* **lēg-ĭ** (**lĕg-**); **pāv-ĭ** (**păv-**). The stem-vowel **ă** becomes **ē** when lengthened to form the perfect stem, except when followed by v (viz.: in **cāv-ĭ, fāv-ĭ, lāv-ĭ, pāv-ĭ**) or b (in **scāb-ĭ**). Thus, **ēg-ĭ** (**ăg-**), **pēg-ĭ** (**păg-**), etc.

[167] **U** is added after consonants, v after vowels, and the preceding vowel is regularly made long before the added -v.

[168] *E.g.*, **am-o, amā-re, amāv-ĭ, amā-tum,** passive, **am-or, amā-rĭ, amā-tus.** These are the forms usually given in grammars and lexicons, and are based on a classification of verbs according to the ending of the pres. inf. as follows : —

First conjugation ; inf. endings **-ārĕ, -ārī,** = a-stems.
Second   "   "   "   **-ērĕ, -ērī,** = e-stems.
Third   "   "   "   **-ĕrĕ, -ĭ,** = cons. u- and short ĭ-stems.
Fourth   "   "   "   **-īrĕ, -īrī,** = long ĭ-stems.

In most verbs the pres. inf. would be enough to identify the present stem, but short ĭ-stems lose the ĭ and become consonant-stems in this form. The pres. ind. is therefore added to identify such.

Verbal Suffixes.

The suffixes of the finite verb contain two elements, one of which shows the mood and tense (*mood-and-tense sign*), the other the person and number (*person-and-number suffix*).	**170**
The mood-and-tense signs are added to the stem as follows: —	**171**
Pres. ind., *none;* pres. imp., *none;* pres subj., ĭ in a-stems, ā elsewhere.	**172**
Imp. ind., ĕbā or ēbā; imp. subj., ĕrē.	**173**
Fut. ind., ĕb in open vowel-stems, ā and ē elsewhere.	**174**
Perf. ind. (ēs or ĭs? See 188); perf. subj., ĕrĭ.	**175**
Plup. ind., ĕrā; plup. subj., ĭssē.	**176**
Fut. perf. ind., ĕr.	**177**

[170] The names "tense-and-mood sign," "person-and-number suffix," are used for convenience, without implying any theory of their origin, simply because they show to the eye or ear the tense and mood, person and number, and, incidentally, the voice of the verb. Grammarians are agreed that the suffixes of person and number are stunted forms of personal pronouns; and most of the signs of tense and mood are generally thought to be derived from the verbs "*be*" (stems -es, -fu) and "*go*" (stem -ĭ).

[171] Mood-and-tense signs are added, of course, to the present stem in the incomplete tenses, and to the perfect stem in the complete tenses.

[172] In the pres. subj. ĭ contracts with a preceding a to ē.

[173] The imp. ind. sign is -ēbā after a consonant or u, and almost always after ĭ. ĕbā is used after open vowels, also in old Latin after ĭ, but in both ĕbā and ĕb the initial vowel is always absorbed. (See [178]).

[174] The fut. ind. sign ā is found in the first sg.; ē in the other forms. In old Latin, stems in ĭ sometimes form the future with the sign ĕb.

[175] The perf. subj. sign is often -ĕrĭ, a result of confusion with the fut. perf. ind. which closely resembles it in form and use.

178   By adding the tense-and-mood signs to the stem, there is formed a stem or base for each tense. To this tense-base are added the suffixes of person and number, as follows:—

Indicative and subjunctive.

179   ACT. 1. -ŏm   2. -ĭs   3. -ĭt   1. -ĭmŭs   2. -ĭtĭs   3. -ŭnt
180   PASS. 1. -ŏr   2. -ĕrĭs   3. -ĭtŭr   1. -ĭmŭr   2. -ĭmĭnĭ   3. -ŭntŭr

---

[178] The initial short vowel of the mood-and-tense signs is regularly absorbed by a preceding open vowel; *e.g.*, amā-bām (= ama-ĕ́ba-m), monē-re-m (= mone-ĕre-m), etc. A preceding ĭ either absorbs it, *e.g.*, audī-re-m (st. audĭ-), or drops before it, leaving a consonant-stem, *e.g.*, cap-ĕre-m (st. capĭ-). The signs ĕbā, ĕb, ĕre-, therefore, appear in the forms bā, b, rē after stems ending in a, e, or ĭ. In the complete tenses the stem ends in a, e, or ĭ only when v is dropped. In such cases the initial vowel of the sign is regularly absorbed by a or e, very rarely by ĭ. See [215]. The long vowels ā, ē, ī are not absorbed, but ī contracts with a preceding a to ē, as stated in [172]. The loss of ĕ of the imp. subj. sign is a characteristic of certain irregular verbs. (See [220]).

The suffixes appear in the form given here after u or a consonant. After a, e, ĭ, the initial vowel of the suffix is absorbed, making the preceding a, e, or ĭ long. But o remains unabsorbed after stem-vowels, and itself absorbs the preceding a; and u remains unabsorbed after the stem-vowel ĭ.

The initial vowel of the person-and-number suffixes, strictly speaking, is not a part of them. Its origin is a matter of dispute; some regard it as a simple insertion to attach the suffixes to the tense base (*connecting vowel*); others as an addition to the stem to fit it for the reception of the suffixes (*modal vowel* or *thematic vowel*). Its omission is one peculiarity of certain irregular verbs. (See [220]).

[179] m of -ŏm falls when ŏ is unabsorbed. -ŭm for -ŏm is found in sum. -ŭmus, an older form of -ĭmus, is found in sŭmus, qvaesŭmus, volŭmus. -ĭnt for -ŭnt is found in the fut. perf., evidently by confusion with the perf. subj. -ĭs, -ĭmŭs, -ĭtĭs, due, no doubt, to the same cause, are not unusual in the fut. perf. for -ĭs, -ĭmŭs, -ĭtĭs.

[180] -ĕrĕ for ĕrĭs is not unusual in poetry; rare in prose.

Imperative.

    Act.   2. -ĕ, -ĭtō   3. -ĭtō   2. -ĭtĕ, -ĭtōtĕ 3. -untō   **181**

    Pass. 2. -ĕrĕ, -ĭtŏr 3. -ĭtŏr   2. -ĭmĭnī   3. -untŏr   **182**

The suffixes of the non-finite forms are: —

  (*a*) From the present stem.

    Act. Pres. inf., -ĕrĕ; pres. part., -entĭ; gerund, -endo. **183**

    Pass. Pres. inf., -ĕrī; pres. part., -endo. **184**

  (*b*) From the perfect stem.

    Act. Perf. inf. (-sĕ ? see below, 190). **185**

  (*c*) From the simple stem.

    Act. Fut. part., -tūro- (-sūro-); supine, -tu- (-su-). **186**

    Pass. Perf. part., -to- (-so-). **187**

The perfect indicative active and perfect infinitive **188**
active have peculiar endings not easily resolved into
sign and suffix.   They are: —

    Perf. act. ind., -ī, -istī, -ĭt; -ĭmŭs, -ĭstĭs, -ērunt. **189**

    Perf. act. inf., -issĕ. **190**

[181] The imperative forms in -tō, -tōte, -ntō ; -tŏr, -ntŏr are some-
times called future imperative. They are antiquated forms, retained in
poetry and legal phraseology, rare elsewhere.

[183] For -endo, -undo is found ; also for -entĭ, -untĭ in one verb (eo,
"*go*").

[184] For -ĕrī, -ī is found in consonant and u-stems. An older suffix
-ĕrĭĕr (in consonant and u-stems, -ĭĕr), is found in old Latin.

[186] -ĭtūro-, -ĭtu-, -ĭto-, are found in some cases. This may have been
the form after vowel-stems, the ĭ disappearing by absorption. -sūro-, -su,
-so, are euphonic changes of -tūro, -tu, -to, used after certain letters.
(See [209]).

[188] The perf. act. ind. and inf. seem to have -is or -es as mood-and-
tense sign, and to add the suffixes directly to the tense-base without the
suffix-vowel. But some forms are quite irregular, and the second sg. ind.
shows a suffix -tĭ, not found elsewhere in the Latin verb.

[189] For -ērunt, -ērĕ is found, also rarely -ĕrunt.

The Conjugations.

191   There are five forms of conjugation for the incomplete tenses, according to the form of the stem. They are: —

> 1st. Stems in -**a.**
> 2d. Stems in -**e.**
> 3d. Stems in a consonant or in -**u.**
> 4th. Stems in short -**ĭ.**
> 5th. Stems in long -**ī.**

In the complete tenses there is but one form for all verbs.

192   The theme of the incomplete tenses is found by dropping the ending of the present infinitive.

193   The incomplete tenses are inflected by adding to the theme the following endings: —

---

[191] The final **u** of verb-stems does not contract with the vowel of the suffix, and there is therefore no difference between u-stems and consonant-stems in their inflection. Compare monosyllabic noun u-stems, 112. These different forms of inflection, like the different declensions, are simply variations resulting from contraction of stem-ending and suffix-vowel. The stems in short -ĭ and long -ī are so called for convenience of distinction, since the ĭ appears as short in one and long in the other. But it seems probable that the final vowel of all verb-stems is properly short, and that its length in the incomplete tenses is the result of absorbing the suffix-vowel. The usual arrangement of conjugations (see [168]) places short ĭ-stems with consonant and u-stems. As in ĭ-stem nouns, the ĭ of these verb-stems is lost in certain forms, leaving a consonant-stem.

˛ Only one form of conjugation is found in the complete tenses, because the perfect stem always ends in **u** or a consonant, and consequently no variation of form from contraction takes place. The few cases in which the perfect stem is made to end in **a, e,** or ĭ by the loss of **v** are too rare to make a difference of conjugation.

A-STEMS.

	Present Active.				Present Passive.			
	Indic.	Subj.	Imper.	Non-finite.	Indic.	Subj.	Imper.	Non-finite.
Sg.				Inf. ārĕ				
1	ŏ	ĕm			ŏr	ĕr		Inf. ārī
2	ās	ēs	ā, ātŏ		āris	ēris	ārĕ, ātŏr	
3	ăt	ĕt	ātŏ	Part. anti-	ātŭr	ētŭr	ātŏr	
Pl.								Part. ando-
1	āmŭs	ēmŭs		Ger. ando-	āmŭr	ēmŭr		
2	ātĭs	ētĭs	ātĕ, ātŏtĕ		āmĭnī	ēmĭnī	āmĭnī	
3	ant	ent	antŏ		antŭr	entŭr	antŏr	

194

	Imperf. Active.		Imperf. Passive.		Fut. Act.	Fut. Pas.
	Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Indic.
Sg.						
1	ābăm	ārĕm	ābăr	ārĕr	ābŏ	ābŏr
2	ābās	ārēs	ābārĭs	ārēris	ābĭs	ābĕris
3	ābăt	ārĕt	ābātŭr	ārētŭr	ābit	ābĭtŭr
Pl.						
1	ābāmŭs	ārēmŭs	ābāmŭr	ārēmŭr	ābĭmŭs	ābĭmŭr
2	ābātĭs	ārētĭs	ābāmĭnī	ārēmĭnī	ābĭtĭs	ābĭmĭnī
3	ābant	ārent	ābantŭr	ārentŭr	ābunt	ābuntŭr

195

EXAMPLE FOR PRACTICE.

Stem, ăma-; theme, ăm-.

[194] ACTIVE	amŏ	amĕm		amārĕ
	amās	amēs	amā, amātŏ	amāns, -ntĭs, etc.
	amăt	amĕt	amātŏ	am andī, etc.
	etc.	etc.	etc.	

PASSIVE	amŏr	amĕr		amārī
	amārĭs	amērĭs	amārĕ, amātŏr	am andŭs, ă, ŭm
	amātŭr	amētŭr	amātŏr	
	etc.	etc.	etc.	

[195] ACTIVE	amābăm	amārĕm		amābŏ
	amābās	amārēs		amābĭs
	amābăt	amārĕt		amābĭt
	etc.	etc.		etc.

PASSIVE	amābăr	amārĕr		amābŏr
	amābārĭs	amārērĭs		amābĕrĭs
	amābātŭr	amārētŭr		amābĭtŭr
	etc.	etc.		etc.

E-STEMS.

		Present Active.				Present Passive.			
		Indic.	Subj.	Imper.	Non-finite.	Indic.	Subj.	Imper.	Non-finite.
Sg.					Inf. ērĕ				Inf. ērī
196 1		eŏ̆	eăm			eŏr	eăr		
2		ēs	eās	ē, ētŏ̆		ēris	eāris	ērĕ, ētŏr	
3		ĕt	eăt	ētŏ̆	Part.	ētŭr	eātŭr	ētŏr	Part.
Pl.					enti-				endo-
1		ēmŭs	eāmŭs			ēmŭr	eāmŭr		
2		ētis	eātis	ētĕ, ētŏ̆tĕ	Ger.	ēmĭnī	eāmĭnī	ēmĭnī	
3		ent	eant	entŏ̆	endo-	entŭr	eantŭr	entŏr	

		Imperf. Active.		Imperf. Passive.		Fut. Act.	Fut. Pas.
		Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Indic.
Sg.							
197 1		ēbăm	ērĕm	ēbăr	ērĕr	ēbŏ̆	ēbŏr
2		ēbās	ērēs	ēbāris	ērēris	ēbis	ēbĕris
3		ēbăt	ērĕt	ēbātŭr	ērētŭr	ēbit	ēbĭtŭr
Pl.							
1		ēbāmŭs	ērēmŭs	ēbāmŭr	ērēmŭr	ēbĭmŭs	ēbĭmŭr
2		ēbātis	ērētis	ēbāmĭnī	ērēmĭnī	ēbĭtis	ēbĭmĭnī
3		ēbant	ērent	ēbantŭr	ērentŭr	ēbunt	ēbuntŭr

EXAMPLE FOR PRACTICE.
Stem, mŏne-; theme, mŏn-.

[196] ACTIVE	mŏn eŏ̆	mon eăm		mon ērĕ
	mon ēs	mon eās	mon ē, mon ētŏ̆	mon ēns, -ntĭs, etc.
	mon ĕt	mon eăt	mon ētŏ̆	mon endĭ, etc.
	etc.	etc.	etc.	

PASSIVE	mon eŏr	mon eăr		mon ērī
	mon ēris	mon eāris	mon ērĕ, mon ētŏr	
	mon ētŭr	mon eātŭr	mon ētŏr	mon endŭs, ă, ŭm
	etc.	etc.	etc.	

[197] ACTIVE	mon ēbăm	mon ērĕm		mon ēbŏ̆
	mon ēbās	mon ērēs		mon ēbis
	mon ēbăt	mon ērĕt		mon ēbit
	etc.	etc.		etc.

PASSIVE	mon ēbăr	mon ērĕr		mon ēbŏr
	mon ēbāris	mon ērēris		mon ēbĕris
	mon ēbātŭr	mon ērētŭr		mon ēbĭtŭr
	etc.	etc.		etc.

CONSONANT-STEMS AND U-STEMS.

		Present Active.				Present Passive.		
	Indic.	Subj.	Imper.	Non-finite.	Indic.	Subj.	Imper.	Non-finite.
Sg.				Inf.				
1	ŏ	ăm		ĕrĕ	ŏr	ăr		Inf.
2	ĭs	ās	ĕ, ĭtŏ		ĕrĭs	ārĭs	ĕrĕ, ĭtŏr	ī
3	ĭt	ăt	ĭtŏ	Part.	ĭtŭr	ātŭr	ĭtŏr	
Pl.				entĭ-				Part.
1	ĭmŭs	āmŭs			ĭmŭr	āmŭr		endo-
2	ĭtĭs	ātĭs	ĭtĕ, ĭtŏtĕ	Ger.	ĭmĭnī	āmĭnī	ĭmĭnī	
3	unt	ant	untŏ	endo-	untŭr	antŭr	untŏr	

198

	Imperf. Active.		Imperf. Passive.		Fut. Act.	Fut. Pas.
	Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Indic.
Sg.						
1	ēbăm	ĕrĕm	ēbăr	ĕrĕr	ăm	ăr
2	ēbās	ĕrēs	ēbārĭs	ĕrērĭs	ēs	ērĭs
3	ēbăt	ĕrĕt	ēbātŭr	ĕrētŭr	ĕt	ētŭr
Pl.						
1	ēbāmŭs	ĕrēmŭs	ēbāmŭr	ĕrēmŭr	ēmŭs	ēmŭr
2	ēbātĭs	ĕrētĭs	ēbāmĭnī	ĕrēmĭnī	ētĭs	ēmĭnī
3	ēbant	ĕrent	ēbantŭr	ĕrentŭr	ent	entŭr

199

EXAMPLE FOR PRACTICE.

Stem, **rĕg-**; theme, **rĕg-**.

[193] ACTIVE { reg ŏ   reg ăm   reg ĕrĕ
                reg ĭs   reg ās   reg ĕ, reg ĭtŏ   reg ēns, -ntĭs, etc.
                etc.   etc.   etc.   reg endĭ, etc.

        PASSIVE { reg ŏr   reg ăr
                 reg ĕrĭs   reg ārĭs   reg ĕrĕ, reg ĭtŏr   reg ī
                 etc.   etc.   etc.   reg endŭs, ă, ŭm

[199] ACTIVE { reg ēbăm   reg ĕrĕm   reg ăm
                reg ēbās   reg ĕrēs   reg ēs
                etc.   etc.   etc.

        PASSIVE { reg ēbăr   reg ĕrĕr   reg ăr
                 reg ēbārĭs   reg ĕrērĭs   reg ĕrĭs
                 etc.   etc.   etc.

Stems in **-u** have the same endings as consonant-stems, the vowel being unabsorbed. *E.g.*, from the stem **trĭbu-** we have—

ACTIVE.   trĭbu ŏ, etc.   tribu ăm, etc.   tribu ĕ, etc.   tribu ĕrĕ, tribu ēns, tribu endĭ.
PASSIVE.   tribu ŏr, etc.   tribu ăr, etc.   tribu ĕrĕ, etc.   tribu ī, tribu endŭs, ă, ŭm.
ACTIVE.   tribu ēbăm, etc.   tribu ĕrĕm, etc.   tribu ăm, etc.
PASSIVE.   tribu ēbăr, etc.   tribu ĕrĕr, etc.   tribu ăr, etc.

200 There are two forms of inflection of verb-stems in -ĭ. In one, ĭ is short and falls before a short syllable, leaving a consonant-stem; in the other, ĭ absorbs the vowel of a following short syllable, and is long. In both, ĭ stands before long syllables.

SHORT *I*-STEMS.

		Present Active.				Present Passive.			
		Indic.	Subj.	Imper.	Non-finite.	Indic.	Subj.	Imper.	Non-finite.
201	*Sg.* 1	iŏ	iăm		Inf. ĕrĕ	iŏr	iăr		
	2	ĭs	iās	ĕ, ĭtŏ		ĕrĭs	iārĭs	ĕrĕ, ĭtŏr	Inf. ī
	3	ĭt	iăt	ĭtŏ	Part. ientĭ-	ĭtŭr	iātŭr	ĭtŏr	Part. iendŏ-
	Pl. 1	ĭmŭs	iāmŭs		Ger. iendŏ-	ĭmŭr	iāmŭr		
	2	ĭtĭs	iātĭs	ĭtĕ, ĭtōtĕ		ĭmĭnī	iāmĭnī	ĭmĭnī	
	3	iunt	iant	iuntŏ		iuntŭr	iantŭr	iuntŏr	

		Imperf. Active.		Imperf. Passive.		Fut. Act.	Fut. Pas.
		Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Indic.
202	*Sg.* 1	iēbăm	ĕrĕm	iēbăr	ĕrĕr	iăm	iăr
	2	iēbăs	ĕrēs	iēbārĭs	ĕrērĭs	iēs	iērĭs
	3	iēbăt	ĕrĕt	iēbātŭr	ĕrētŭr	iĕt	iētŭr
	Pl. 1	iēbāmŭs	ĕrēmŭs	iēbāmŭr	ĕrēmŭr	iēmŭs	iēmŭr
	2	iēbātĭs	ĕrētĭs	iēbāmĭnī	ĕrēmĭnī	iētĭs	iēmĭnī
	3	iēbant	ĕrent	iēbantŭr	ĕrentŭr	ient	ientŭr

[200] The ĭ before the long vowel remains, though the vowel be shortened before final **m, t, r,** see [12] (*a*), and falls in the pres. inf. pass. where the proper ending -**ĕrī** has been shortened to -**ĭ**.

EXAMPLE FOR PRACTICE. Stem, **căpĭ**- or **căp**- (by dropping ĭ); theme, **căp**-.

[201] ACTIVE
{ cap iŏ — cap iăm
{ cap ĭs — cap iās — cap ĕ, cap ĭtŏ — cap ĕrĕ
{ cap ĭt — cap iăt — cap ĭtŏ — cap iēns, -ntĭs, etc.
{ etc. — etc. — etc. — cap iendī, etc.

PASSIVE
{ cap iŏr — cap iăr
{ cap ĕrĭs — cap iārĭs — cap ĕrĕ, cap ĭtŏr — cap ī
{ cap ĭtŭr — cap iātŭr — cap ĭtŏr — cap iendŭs, ă, ŭm
{ etc. — etc. — etc.

LONG I-STEMS.

	Present Active.				Present Passive.			
	Indic.	Subj.	Imper.	Non-finite.	Indic.	Subj.	Imper.	Non-finite.
Sg.								
1	iŏ	iăm		Inf. īrĕ	iŏr	iăr		Inf. īrī
2	īs	iās	ī, ītŏ		īris	iāris	īrĕ, ītŏr	
3	it	iăt	ītŏ	Part. ienti-	ītŭr	iātŭr	ītŏr	Part. iendo-
Pl.								
1	īmŭs	iāmŭs			īmŭr	iāmŭr		
2	ītis	iātis	ītĕ, ītōtĕ	Ger. iendo-	īminī	iāminī	īminī	
3	iunt	iant	iuntŏ		iuntŭr	iantŭr	iuntŏr	

203

	Imperf. Active.		Imperf. Passive.		Fut. Act.	Fut. Pas.
	Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Indic.
Sg.						
1	iēbăm	īrĕm	iēbăr	īrĕr	iăm	iăr
2	iēbās	īrēs	iēbāris	īrēris	iēs	iēris
3	iēbăt	īrĕt	iēbātŭr	īrētŭr	iĕt	iētŭr
Pl.						
1	iēbāmŭs	īrēmŭs	iēbāmŭr	īrēmŭr	iēmŭs	iēmŭr
2	iēbātis	īrētis	iēbāminī	īrēminī	iētis	iēminī
3	iēbant	īrent	iēbantŭr	īrentŭr	ient	ientŭr

204

[202] ACTIVE { cap iēbăm   cap ĕrĕm   cap iăm
      cap iēbās   cap ĕrēs   cap iēs
      etc.   etc.   etc.

    PASSIVE { cap iēbăr   cap ĕrĕr   cap iăr
      cap iēbāris   cap ĕrēris   cap iēris
      etc.   etc.   etc.

EXAMPLE FOR PRACTICE. Stem, audi-; theme, aud-.

[203] ACTIVE { aud iŏ   aud iăm
      aud īs   aud iās   aud ī, aud ītŏ   aud īrĕ
      aud ĭt   aud iăt   aud ītŏ   aud iēns, -ntĭs, etc.
      etc.   etc.   etc.   aud iendī, etc.

    PASSIVE { aud iŏr   aud iăr
      aud īris   aud iāris   aud īre, aud ītŏr   aud īrī
      aud ītŭr   aud iātŭr   aud ītŏr   aud iendŭs, ă, ŭm
      etc.   etc.   etc.

[204] ACTIVE { aud iēbăm   aud īrĕm   aud iăm
      aud iēbās   aud īrēs   aud iēs
      aud iēbăt   aud īrĕt   aud iĕt
      etc.   etc.   etc.

    PASSIVE { aud iēbăr   aud īrĕr   aud iăr
      aud iēbāris   aud īrēris   aud iēris
      aud iēbātŭr   aud īrētur   aud iētŭr
      etc.   etc.   etc.

205   The theme of the complete tenses is found by dropping the ending of the perfect indicative active, first person singular.

The endings are the same for all verbs; viz.: —

206

		Perfect Active.			Pluperfect Active.		Fut. Perf. Active.
		Indic.	Subj.	Non-finite.	Indic.	Subj.	Indic.
Sg.	1	ī	ĕrĭm		ĕrăm	issĕm	ĕrŏ
	2	istī	ĕrĭs		ĕrās	issēs	ĕrĭs
	3	ĭt	ĕrĭt	Inf.	ĕrăt	issĕt	ĕrĭt
Pl.	1	ĭmŭs	ĕrĭmŭs	issĕ	ĕrāmŭs	issēmŭs	ĕrĭmŭs
	2	istĭs	ĕrĭtĭs		ĕrātĭs	issētĭs	ĕrĭtĭs
	3	ērunt	ĕrint		ĕrant	issent	ĕrint

207   The lacking complete tenses of the passive voice are supplied, as in English, by the perfect passive participle and the verb "be."

[206] The theme of the complete tenses ends in u or a consonant, and the vowel of the endings therefore remains unabsorbed, except when brought after a vowel by the loss of v. See [215].

<div align="center">EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.</div>

Stem	ămāv-	ămāvī	amavĕrĭm		amavĕrăm	amavissĕm	amavĕrŏ
		amavistī	amavĕrĭs	amavissĕ	amavĕrās	amavissēs	amavĕrĭs
		etc.	etc.		etc.	etc.	etc.
"	mŏnu-	mŏnuī	monuĕrĭm	monuissĕ	monuĕrăm	monuissĕm	monuĕrŏ
		etc.	etc.		etc.	etc.	etc.
"	rex-	rexī	rexĕrĭm	rexissĕ	rexĕrăm	rexissĕm	rexĕrŏ
		etc.	etc.		etc.	etc.	· etc.
"	trĭbu-	trĭbuī	tribuĕrĭm	tribuissĕ	tribuĕrăm	tribuissĕm	tribuĕrŏ
		etc.	etc.		etc.	etc.	etc.
"	cĕp-	cĕpī	cepĕrĭm	cepissĕ	cepĕrăm	cepissĕm	cepĕrŏ
		etc.	etc.		etc.	etc.	etc.
"	audīv-	audīvī	audivĕrĭm	audivissĕ	audivĕrăm	audivissĕm	audivĕrŏ
		etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

For the variation between ĭ and ī in the perf. subj. and fut. perf. ind., see [175] and [179].

The theme of the verb-forms from the simple stem **208** may be found by dropping the ending of the supine or of the perfect passive participle.

The endings of the forms from the simple stem are : —

	Supine.	Future Active Participle.	Perf. Pass. Participle.
A-stems . . .	ătu-	ātūro-	āto-
E-stems . . .	ētu-	ētūro-	ēto-
I-stems	ītu-	ītūro-	īto-
O-stems . . .	ŏtu-	ŏtūro-	ŏto-
U-stems . . .	ūtu-	ūtūro-	ūto-
Consonant-stems {	tu- (su-), or ĭtu-	tūro- (sūro-), or ĭtūro-	to- (so-), or ĭto-

209

[209] The endings -ĭtu-, -ĭtūro-, -ĭto-, though less common in consonant-stems, seem to be the usual form of the suffixes in vowel-stems, — the long vowel being due to the absorption of the ĭ of the suffix. In a few cases, however, vowel-stems show a short vowel in these endings, which may be explained by assuming that the suffix is appended directly to the stem without the vowel, as in most consonant stems. These cases number in all twelve ; viz. : **dătus, rătus, sătus, stătus ; cĭtus, ĭtus, lĭtus, qvĭtus, sĭtus ; -clŭtus, fŭturus, rŭtus.**

Su-, sūro-, so-, are euphonic changes of **tu-, tūro-, to-**. They are used after stems ending in a dental-mute (except **tend-,** which has forms with both **t** and **s,** apparently by confusion with its kindred stem **tĕn-**) and after a few others, especially stems ending in two consonants with which an added **t** could not easily be pronounced. See [12]. The real form of the stem is often obscured before these suffixes by euphonic change.

ILLUSTRATIONS.

Stem				
Stem	ăma-	amātŭm, amātŭ	amātūrŭs, ă, ŭm	amātŭs, ă, ŭm
"	dēle-	delētum, delētu	delētūrus, a, um	delētus, a, um
"	audi-	audītum, audītu	audītūrus, a, um	audītus, a, um
"	no-	nōtum, nōtu	nōtūrus, a, um	nōtus, a, um
"	trĭbu-	trĭbūtum, trĭbūtu	trĭbūtūrus, a, um	trĭbūtus, a, um
"	căp-	captum, captu	captūrus, a, um	captus, a, um
"	hăb-	habĭtum, habĭtu	habĭtūrus, a, um	habĭtus, a, um
"	lŭd-	lŭsum, lŭsŭ	lŭsūrus, a, um	lŭsus, a, um

210　The participles with the verb "be" are often used as in English with the force of finite verb-forms.

211　The present active participle is thus used only when it has become an adjective or noun in force and meaning.

212　The future active participle with the verb "be" makes the "first" or "active" periphrastic conjugation, and expresses an intended or destined action.

213　The present passive participle with the verb "be" makes the "second" or "passive" periphrastic conjugation, and expresses duty or necessity.

214　The perfect passive participle with the verb "be" supplies the lacking complete tenses of the passive voice.

---

[210] For the inflection of the verb "be," see [221].

[212] *E.g.*,

audĭtūrŭs sŭm, *I am going to hear; expect to hear; intend to hear,* etc.

audĭtūrŭs ĕrăm, *I was going to hear; expected to hear; intended to hear,* etc.

This form supplies the lacking subjunctive and infinitive of the future tense, when such forms are needed for precision.

[213] **audĭendŭs sŭm,** *I must be heard; ought to be heard,* etc.

　　　audĭendŭs ĕrăm, *I had to be heard; deserved to be heard,* etc.

[214]

Perf. pass. ind.		Perf. pass. subj.	
amătŭs	sŭm	amătŭs	sĭm
"	ĕs	"	sĭs
"	est	"	sĭt
amatī	sŭmŭs	amatī	sĭmŭs
"	estĭs	"	sĭtĭs
"	sunt	"	sint
Plup. pass. ind.		Plup. pass. subj.	
amătŭs	ĕrăm	amătŭs	essĕm
"	erăs	"	essĕs
"	erăt	"	essĕt
amatī	erāmŭs	amatī	essēmŭs
"	erātĭs	"	essētĭs
"	erant	"	essent
Fut. pf. pass. ind.			
amătŭs	erŏ		
"	erĭs		
"	erĭt	Perf. pass. inf.	amătŭs essĕ
amatī	erĭmŭs		
"	erĭtĭs		
"	erunt		

Irregular Verb-Forms.

The **v** used to form the perfect stem is sometimes dropped between vowels. See [12] (*c*). **215**

The ending of the imperative active second singular is dropped in the verbs **dīco, dūco, făcio,** thus making **dīc, dūc, făc.** **216**

Instead of the incomplete tenses of **sǔm** the complete tenses are sometimes used to make the perf., plup. and fut. perf. passive, with little or no difference of meaning; *e.g.,* amatus fui = amatus sum; amatus fueram = amatus eram, etc. In all these periphrastic conjugations the participle is an adjective limiting the subject of the verb "be," and takes the same gender, number and case. See 255.

[215] An open vowel before **v** absorbs the following vowel after **v** falls; a close vowel does so rarely. Thus **amāvistī** becomes **ămāstī; flēvistī** becomes **flēstī; nōvĕram** becomes **nōram,** etc. But **audīvĕram** becomes **audiĕram,** etc.

A similar shortening in perfects formed with -s is rarer, — **scrīpstī** for **scrīpsistī; dīxe** for **dīxisse,** etc.

[216] The same loss of the imperative ending takes place also in the verbs **sǔm, ĕdo, fĕro, vŏlo,** but is part of a peculiar irregularity. (See 220.) In old Latin, and in compounds of **facio,** the regular forms are found.

Other irregularities are rarer, and belong generally to the older language or to poetry. A list is given for reference : —

(*a*) In stems in -ĭ the imperf. and fut. ind. are sometimes formed with the signs **ĕbā** and **ĕb;** regularly so in eo, "go." See [227].

(*b*) An old fut. (or fut. perf. ?) formed with the sign -s (or -ss), a subj. with the sign -sī (or -ssī), and an infin. with the ending -sere (or -ssere), are found in old writers.

(*c*) An old imper. pass. sg. ending -mĭno (corresponding to the pl. ending -mĭnī) is also found, and the active ending -to seems sometimes to have a passive sense.

(*d*) For the suffix -erĕ = -erĭs, see [180].

(*e*) For the perf. ind. act. ending -ērĕ = ērunt, see [189].

(*f*) For the ending -undī, etc., in the gerund, and -undus, -a, -um, in the pres. pass. part., see [183].

217	The verbs **sŭm, ĕdo, fĕro, vŏlo, do, eo, queo, fīo,** and their compounds, have special irregularities in the incomplete tenses, chiefly in: —
218	(*a*) Variation of the stem.
219	(*b*) Use of mood-and-tense signs unusual in stems of like form.
220	(*c*) Omission of the initial vowel of the mood-and-tense sign, or of the suffix. This occurs in **sŭm, ĕdo, fĕro, vŏlo,** which omit the initial vowel of the imperfect subjunctive sign, and the initial vowel of the suffix in the following forms; viz.: —

Present indicative, 2d and 3d sg. and 2d plural.
Present imperative, 2d and 3d sg. and 2d plural.
Present infinitive.

221	**Sŭm** (stem **ĕs-**) omits the vowel, uses **ī** as present subjunctive sign, loses initial **e** in certain forms, and retains older endings not found in the usual conjugations.

(*g*) **Audeo, fīdo, gaudeo, soleo,** have a passive form in the complete tenses, and are called semi-deponents.

(*h*) **Morior, orior, potior,** show a variation between long ī-stem forms and short ĭ-stem forms.

[220] The omission of the ĕ of the imperf. subj. sign -ĕrē causes it to take the form -sē in sum and ĕdo, and -lē in volo. Sē was, no doubt, the original form; lē arises by assimilation of -r to the preceding -l. The same change takes place in the pres. infin.

[221] **Sŭm, esse, fui, fŭtūrŭs.**

PRESENT.				IMPERFECT.		FUTURE.
sŭm	sĭm			ĕrăm	essĕm	ĕrŏ
ĕs	sīs	ĕs, esto	esse	erās	essēs	erĭs
est	sĭt	esto		erăt	essĕt	erĭt
sŭmŭs	sīmŭs		[-sens]	erămus	essĕmus	erĭmus
estĭs	sītĭs	estŏ, estŏtĕ		erātĭs	essētĭs	erĭtĭs
sunt	sint	sunto		erant	essent	erunt

Compounds of **sŭm** are like **sŭm**, except **possŭm**, which contracts in certain forms.	**222**
Edo (stem **ĕd-**) omits the vowel (with consequent euphonic change of **d** to **s**), and has present subjunctive sign **ī**. It has also the regular forms.	**223**

For **sim, sis,** etc., an older form — **siem, sies,** etc. — is found. The 2d sg. pres. ind. **ĕs** stands for es-s (see [12] (b)), and is long in old Latin **ēs,** the result of the loss of the suffix. (See 362.) The pres. part. -**sens** is found only in the compounds, **ab-sens** and **prae-sens.**

The complete tenses are formed from a stem **fu-,** which appears as the simple stem also in **fŭ-tūrus.** From this stem is formed a pres. subj. **fuam,** etc.; and from another form of it, **fo-,** is formed an imperf. subj. **fŏrem,** etc., and an infin. **fŏre. Fŏre** is a future sense, as have also the old inceptive forms **escit, escunt** (= es-sc-it, es-sc-unt). For perfect stem the older language has also **fūv-.**

[222] Possŭm, possĕ, pŏtui.

PRESENT.			IMPERFECT.		FUTURE.
possŭm	possĭm		pŏtĕrăm	possĕm	pŏtĕrō
potĕs	possīs	possĕ	pŏtĕrās	possēs	poterĭs
potest	possĭt		etc.	possĕt	poterĭt
possŭmus	possīmus			etc.	poterĭmŭs
potestis	possītis				poterĭtĭs
possunt	possint				poterunt

Possiem, etc., is found for **possim,** etc.; also the uncontracted **potessem** for **possem. Possum** is for **pot-sum** by assimilation of **t,** which appears in its proper form before a vowel. The imperative and the participle are wanting.

Prosum is like **sum,** but the preposition **prō** keeps its original form, **prōd,** before those forms that begin with a vowel, — **pro-sum, prod-ĕs, prod-est, pro-sŭmŭs,** etc.

[223] Edo, ĕdĕre, ēdi, ēsum. The irregular forms are: —

PRESENT.				IMP. SUBJ.	
—	ĕdĭm			essĕm	
ĕs	ĕdīs	ĕs, esto		essēs	PRES. PASS. IND.
est	etc.	esto	INFINITIVE.	essĕt	estŭr
—			essĕ	etc.	
estĭs		este, estōte			IMPERF. PASS. SUBJ.
—.		—			essētŭr

Also regular **ĕdo, -ĭs, -ĭt,** etc., like **rego.** See [198].

224	**Fĕro** (stem **fĕr-**) omits the vowel, and retains the original present passive infinitive suffix **-rī,** usually lost in consonant-stems.
225	**Vŏlo** (stem **vŏl-**) omits the vowel, has present subjunctive sign **ī,** and varies the stem to **vul, vel, vil.** Its compounds **nōlo** and **mālo** have the same irregularities, and suffer contraction in many forms.

[224] Fĕro, ferre, tŭlī, lātum.

	PRESENT.		INF.	IMPERFECT.		FUTURE.
ferŏ	ferăm		ferrĕ	ferēbăm	ferrĕm	ferăm
fers	ferās	fĕr, ferto	PART.	ferēbās	ferrēs	ferēs
fert	etc.	ferto	ferens	etc.	etc.	etc.
ferĭmus			GER.			
fertĭs	fertĕ, fertōtĕ		ferendi			
ferunt	ferunto					

Ferŏr, ferrī, lātus.

	PRESENT.			IMPERFECT.		FUTURE.
ferŏr	ferăr			ferēbăr	ferrĕr	ferăr
ferrĭs	ferāris	ferĕ, fertŏr	INF.	ferēbārĭs	ferĕrĭs	ferēris
fertur	etc.	fertŏr	ferrī	etc.	etc.	etc.
ferĭmur			PART.			
ferĭmĭnī	ferĭmĭnī		ferendus			
feruntŭr	feruntŏr					

For perfect stem **fĕro** uses **tŭl;** for simple stem, **lā** (older **tla**). Both are variations of a stem seen also in **tollo.** **Ferimini** (ind. and imper.) retains the vowel, but the 2d pl. pass. was originally a participial formation, not a finite form.

[225] Vŏlo, velle, vŏluī.

	PRESENT.		INF.	IMPERFECT.		FUTURE.
vŏlō	vĕlĭm		INF.	vŏlēbăm	vellĕm	vŏlăm
vīs	vĕllīs	(vel, used as a	vellĕ	volēbās	vellēs	volēs
vult	vĕlīt	conjunction)	PART.	etc.	etc.	etc.
vŏlŭmŭs	vellīmus		vŏlens			
vultĭs	etc.		GER.			
vŏlunt			volendi			

Nōlo, nolle, nōluī.

	PRESENT.		INF.	IMPERFECT.		FUTURE.
nōlo	nōlĭm		INF.	nōlēbăm	nollĕm	[nolam]
(nĕvīs)	nōlīs	nōlī, nōlīto	nolle	nōlēbās	nollēs	nōlēs
(nĕvult)	etc.	nōlīto	PART.	etc.	etc.	etc.
nōlŭmŭs			nōlens			
[nevultis]	nolīte, nōlītōtĕ		GER.			
nōlunt	nolunto		nōlendi			

Do (stem **da-**) omits the vowel of the suffix in the present tense and the vowel of the mood-and-tense sign in the imperfect and future, and consequently has short ă throughout, where a-stems usually have long ā. Most of its compounds lose this ă, and thus become consonant-stems. | **226**

Eo (stem **i-**) varies the stem to **e** before a vowel (except before **e** in the present active participle), | **227**

Něvīs, něvult, are old. The imperative (except 3d pl.) is from a stem noli.

Mālo, malle, mālui.

PRESENT.				IMPERFECT.		FUTURE.
mālo	mālim			mālēbam	mallem	[malam]
māvīs	mālīs		INF.	mālēbas	mallēs	mālēs
māvult	etc.	(Imperative	malle	etc.	etc.	mālet
mālŭmŭs		wanting.)	GER.			etc.
māvultīs			malendī			
mālŭnt						

Mavŏlo, mavĕlim, etc. (uncontracted), are old. The bracketed forms are lacking.

[226] **Do, dărĕ, dĕdī, dătum.** Its inflection is like that of **amo,** except that the final vowel of the stem is everywhere short. (The forms dās, dā, are lengthened by a general tendency to lengthen certain syllables. See 360, 361.) Only the form **do** has the suffix vowel. The quantity of the stem-vowel is seen, for example, in **dămus, dăbit, dăbitur, dăbāmus,** etc. Another form of the same stem, **du-,** gives a subjunctive **duam, duas,** etc.; or **duim, duis,** etc.

Do remains unchanged in **circumdo, pessumdo, satisdo** and **venumdo.** These are not full compounds, and are often written separately. In the future, the original form (*e.g.*, **red-dĭbo,** etc.) is sometimes found in the consonant-stem compounds.

[227] **Eo, īre, īvī, ĭtum.**

PRESENT.				IMPERFECT.		FUTURE.
eo	eam		INF.	ībăm	īrĕm	ībŏ
īs	eās	ī, īto	īre	ībās	īrēs	ībīs
ĭt	eăt	īto	PART.	etc.	etc.	etc.
īmus	eāmus		iens, euntis, etc.			
ītis	eātis	ītĕ, ītōtĕ	GER.			
eunt	eant	eunto	iendī, etc.			

and forms the imperfect and future indicative with the signs **ĕbā** and **ĕb**, like **a-** and **e-**stems.

228 **Qveo** (stem **qvi-**) and its compound **neqveo** are like **eo.**

229 **Fīo** (stem **fī-**) keeps the vowel **ĕ** unabsorbed in the present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive. In all other forms the stem-vowel is long, even before a vowel. The present infinitive is passive in form.

Impersonal and Defective Verbs.

230 Impersonal verbs are such as do not take a personal subject. They are found only in the third person singular, and comprise : —

231 (*a*) Verbs referring to the state of the weather.

232 (*b*) A few verbs expressing feeling or emotion, the object of which denotes the person who experiences the feeling.

233 (*c*) Verbs which take a clause or an infinitive as subject. Many of these are also used personally.

---

[228] **Qveo, qvīre, qvīvī, qvĭtum.** So **neqveo, neqvīre,** etc. Only a few forms are in use.

[229] **Fīo, fĭĕrī,** [factus].

PRESENT.			IMPERFECT.		FUTURE.
fīo	**fīām**		**fīēbăm**	**fīĕrĕm**	**fīăm**
fīs	**fīās**	**fī**	**fīēbās**	**fīĕrēs**	**fīēs**
fīt	etc.	INFINITIVE.	etc.	etc.	etc.
fīmus		**fīĕrī**			
fītis	**fītĕ**				
fīunt					

Fīo is passive in meaning, and is used as the passive of **făcĭo,** which supplies the lacking participle and the complete tenses. In old Latin **fīĕrĕm,** etc., and **fīĕrī** occur.

[231] *E.g.,* **pluit,** *it rains ;* **ningit,** *it snows,* etc.

[232] *E.g.,* **pudet me,** (*it shames me,* i.e.) *I am ashamed,* etc.

[233] *E.g.,* **mihi īre licet,** (*to go is permitted to me*) *I am permitted to go,* etc.

(*d*) Many intransitive verbs, which may be used | **234**
impersonally in the passive.

Some verbs are defective in Latin. Of these only | **235**
ōdi and **mĕmĭni** need special mention. They lack
the incomplete tenses, and the complete tenses have
the time of the incomplete.

[234] *E.g.*, **pugnātur,** (*it is fought*) *there is fighting going on;* **invĭdētur
mĭhĭ,** (*it is envied toward me*) *I am envied;* **ĭtur,** (*it is gone*) *people go,* etc.

[235] The forms of the most usual defective verbs are added for
reference: —

1. **ājo, aĭs, aĭt, ājunt.** Imperf. **ājēbam** or **aībam,** etc.; subj. **ājās,
ājăt;** part. **ājens.**

2. Imperat. **ăve, ăvēto, ăvēte;** inf. **ăvēre.**

3. **fātur.** Imperat. **fāre;** fut. **fābor, fābĭtur;** inf. **fārī;** sup. **fātu;**
part. **fans, fandus, fātus.**

4. **inqvam, inqvĭs, inqvĭt; inqvīmus, inqvĭunt.** Imperat. **inqve,
inqvīto, inqvīte;** imperf. **inqvĭēbat;** fut. **inqvĭēs, inqvĭĕt;** perf.
inqvĭi, inqvĭsti, inqvĭt.

5. **mĕmĭni;** the complete tenses, and an imperat. **memento, mementōte.** In compounds the incomplete tenses are found; *e.g.*, **re-mĭn-ĭsc-or,**
etc.

6. **ōdi;** only the complete tenses and part. **ōsūrus.**

7. Subj. **ŏvet, ŏvāret;** part. **ŏvans, ŏvātus;** ger. **ŏvandi.**

8. Imperat. **salve, salvēte;** inf. **salvēre;** fut. **salvēbĭs.**

Many verbs lack the forms from the simple stem or those from the
perfect stem, and some lack both. Impersonal verbs lack all forms except
the third personal singular; and intransitive verbs, except in the use mentioned above (234), of course lack the passive voice altogether. Such are
not usually called defective, however, but the name is limited to those
given here.

PART III. — WORD-FORMATION.

———◦◇◦———

Roots and Stems.

236   A root is a simple sound, or combination of sounds, used in language to convey an idea without modification.

237   Roots are sometimes used in Latin as stems, and the suffixes of inflection joined to them directly. Usually, however, stems are formed from roots by vowel-change, or by the addition of a vowel, **a, e, i, o, u**; sometimes by both.

238   Stems formed from roots in either of these three

---

[237] Many verbs with consonant-stems, and a few with stems in -**a**, -**e** or -**i**, use an unmodified root as a stem. Most verbs with vowel-stems, however, use a primitive stem, or, far more often, a derivative stem as the verb-stem. The **a**, **e** or **i** added to form the present stem is, of course, no part of the verb-stem, but only a modification used in the incomplete tenses. The final **a**, **e** or **i** of the present stem belongs to the verb-stem only when it shows itself also in the perfect stem and in the simple stem.

Very few nouns and no adjectives have roots as stems.

[238] Final vowels of stems (except **u** sometimes) are dropped before suffixes beginning with a vowel, and are often weakened (and sometimes dropped) before those that begin with a consonant. Before some of the latter, however, the vowel is lengthened, perhaps by the absorption of an initial vowel, which generally appears when they are appended to consonant-stems. Compare the usage in the case of the verb-suffixes, 170–190.

Initial **t** of a suffix suffers the euphonic change to **s** after certain letters, as in the supine and participles of the verb.

ways are called primitive stems. From these, deriva-
tive stems are formed by adding suffixes of derivation.
Both primitive and derivative stems, by the addition
of suffixes of inflection, become words of the language,
fitted for use in sentences.

Formation of Nouns.

Nouns are formed from other nouns with a variety | **239**
of suffixes and meanings.

Nouns formed from adjectives express the quality | **240**
or condition denoted by the adjective.

---

[239] The most common suffixes are these : —

-**ātu** (= Eng. *-ship*), name of office or condition of the primitive.
-**ēto, -ārio,** name of place where the primitive is found.
-**tūt** (= Eng. *-hood*), name of condition or quality of the primitive.
-**io,** name of condition or quality of the primitive.
-**lo, -la** (= Eng. *-let*), diminutive nouns.
-**cŭlo, -cŭla** (= Eng. *-let*), diminutive nouns.

Illustrations are : —

consul-ātus, *consulship* ;	from **consul,** *a consul.*
qverc-ētum, *oak forest* ;	" **qvercus,** *an oak.*
vir-tus, *manhood* ;	" **vir,** *a man.*
minister-ium, *service* ;	" **minister,** *a servant.*
vicŭ-lus, *hamlet* ;	" **vicus,** *a village.*
casŭ-la, *cottage* ;	" **casa,** *a house.*
flos-cŭlus, *floweret* ;	" **flos,** *a flower.*
securi-cŭla, *hatchet* ;	" **securis,** *an axe.*

[240] The more usual suffixes are -**tāt,** -**tūdĭn,** -**ia,** -**tia** (= Eng. *-ness*).

Illustrations are : —

superb-ia, *pride* ;	from **superbus,** *proud.*
soli-tūdo, *loneliness* ;	" **solus,** *alone.*
boni-tas, *goodness* ;	" **bonus,** *good.*
justi-tia, *justice* ;	" **justus,** *just.*

241 | Nouns from verbs denote the *doer, means, result, place, instrument,* etc., of the action, or the action itself.

Formation of Adjectives.

242 | Adjectives formed from nouns are usually "possessive" adjectives, expressing "possessed of," "full of,"

---

[241] The most usual suffixes are : —

-tōr (sōr), -trĭc (= Eng. *-er, -ster*), name of the doer.

-tu (-su), -tūra (-sūra), -tĭōn (-sĭōn), -ĭo, -ĭōn, -ōr, -mĭn, -mento, -cŭlo, name of the act, means, result.

-bŭlo, -tro, name of the place, means, instrument.

Illustrations are : —

audī-tor, *hearer ;*	from	**audī-re,** *to hear.*
lu-sor, *player ;*	"	**lud-ere,** *to play.*
al-trĭx, *nourisher ;*	"	**al-ere,** *to nourish.*
ĭc-tus, *blow ;*	"	**ĭc-ere,** *to strike.*
arā-tĭo, *ploughing ;*	"	**ara-re,** *to plough.*
effug-ĭum, *escape ;*	"	**effug-ere,** *to escape.*
suspĭc-ĭo, *suspicion ;*	"	**suspĭc-ere,** *to suspect.*
am-or, *love ;*	"	**ama-re,** *to love.*
certā-men, *fight ;*	"	**certa-re,** *to fight.*
vestī-mentum, *clothing ;*	"	**vestī-re,** *to clothe.*
specta-cŭlum, *spectacle ;*	"	**specta-re,** *to view.*
sta-bŭlum, *stall ;*	"	**sta-re,** *to stand.*
ara-trum, *plough ;*	"	**ara-re,** *to plough.*

[242] Adjectives thus formed correspond to English derivative adjectives in *-ish, -y, -ed, -ful, -en,* etc. The suffixes used to form them are very numerous ; the most common are -āto, -do, -no, -āno, -ĭno, -ālĭ, -ĭlĭ, -ārĭ, -ārĭo, -ātĭ, -ensĭ, -ōso, -lento, -co, -ĭo, -eo, -aceo.

Illustrations are : —

aur-atus, *gilded ;*	from	**aurum,** *gold.*
luctu-ōsus, *sorrowful ;*	"	**luctus,** *sorrow.*
Rom-ānus, *Roman ;*	"	**Roma,** *Rome.*
aur-eus, *golden ;*	"	**aurum,** *gold.*
ebur-nus, *ivory ;*	"	**ebur,** *ivory.*
mort-ālĭs, *mortal ;*	"	**mors,** *death.*
etc.		etc.

"furnished with," "made of," "characterized by," "belonging to," and the like.

243 Adjectives from other adjectives are derivative numerals, comparatives and superlatives, and diminutives.

244 Adjectives from verbs are the regular participles, adjectives with the force of participles (usually active), and adjectives denoting capability (usually passive).

Formation of Verbs.

245 A few verbs are formed from noun- or adjective-stems by using the theme of the noun as a verb-stem.

[243] For the ordinal and distributive numerals, with their suffixes, see [118]; and for the comparative and superlative formations, see 119 ff. Diminutive adjectives have the suffixes -lo and -cŭlo, like diminutive nouns.

> *E.g.*, **albŭlus**, *whitish*, from **albus**, *white*.
>
> **fortĭcŭlus**, *boldish, somewhat bold*, from **fortis**, *bold*.

[244] For the regular participles and their endings see 183–187. Adjectives with the general force of participles, but expressing a habit rather than a single act, are formed with the suffixes **-uo, -ivo, -tivo, -do, -bundo, -cundo, -aci**, etc. Illustrations are: —

> **contig-uus**, *touching, adjacent;*   from **conting-ere**, *to touch.*
> **cad-ivus**, *falling, fleeting;*   "   **cad-ere**, *to fall.*
> **nomina-tivus**, *nominative;*   "   **nomina-re**, *to name.*
> **erra-bundus**, *wandering, vagrant;*   "   **erra-re**, *to wander.*

Adjectives denoting capability are formed with the suffixes **-li, -bĭli, -tĭli (-sĭli)**. Illustrations are: —

> **frag-ĭlis**, *breakable, frail;*   from **frang-ere**, *to break.*
> **cred-ĭbĭlis**, *credible;*   "   **cred-ere**, *to believe.*
> **fer-tĭlis**, *fertile, capable of producing;*   "   **fer-re**, *to produce.*

[245] Thus, from **flor** (theme of **flos**, *a flower*) we have **flor-ēre**, *to flower;* from **arbŏr** (theme of **arbos**, *a tree*), **arbor-esc-ere**, *to become a tree;* from **dulc** (theme of **dulcis**, *sweet*), **dulc-esc-ere**, *to grow sweet*, etc. That the e of the present stem does not belong to the verb-stem, but is a formative addition, is shown by the form of the perfect stem, when one exists (*e.g.*, **flor-ui**). But most of these verbs have only the incomplete tenses.

In such verbs the present stem is formed by adding -e, or by adding -esc. In the former case the verb means "to be [so-and-so]"; in the latter, "to become [so-and-so]."

246   More often verb-stems are formed from noun- or adjective-stems by adding -a or -i to the theme. Verbs thus formed usually mean "to make [so-and-so]"; less often, "to be [so-and-so]."

247   Verbs formed from verbs are frequentatives, intensives, or desideratives.

---

[246] Thus, from **bellum**, *war*, **bellare**, *to war;* from **aeqvus**, *level*, **aeqvare**, *to level;* from **miles**, *soldier*, **militare**, *to be a soldier;* from **tenuis**, *thin*, **tenuare**, *to make thin;* from **insanus**, *mad*, **insanire**, *to be mad;* from **finis**, *end*, **finire**, *to end*, etc.

From stems in **u**, a-stem verbs are formed by adding **a** to the stem, not the theme; *e.g.*, **aestu-are** from **aestu-s**. But **i** is added to the theme in u-stems, as in others. See [238].

[247] Frequentatives denote a frequent or emphatic action. They are formed with the suffix -ta. Many verbs formed in this way, however, have lost the frequentative force. Illustrations are : —

adven-tare, *to come often ;*	from **adven-ire**, *to come.*
rog-itare, *to ask eagerly ;*	" **rog-are**, *to ask.*
dic-tare, *to say frequently ;*	" **dic-ere**, *to say.*
dict-itare, *to say frequently ;*	" **dict-are**, *to say.*

Intensives denote an eager or earnest action. They are few in number, and are formed with the suffix -ess or ᵣessi, the latter being used in the complete tenses and simple stem forms. Illustrations are : —

fac-ess-ere, *to do eagerly ;*	from **fac-ere**, *to do.*
cap-ess-ere, *to take eagerly, to seize ;*	" **cap-ere**, *to take.*

Desideratives denote the desire to do an action. They are few in number, and are formed with the suffix -turi (-suri). Illustrations are : —

cena-turire, *to wish to dine ;*	from **cena-re**, *to dine.*
emp-turire, *to wish to buy ;*	" **em-ere**, *to buy.*

Desideratives seem to be formed from the future active participle by the addition of **i**, as stated in 246, the **u** being shortened, probably by the change of accent.

Formation of Adverbs.

Many adverbs are case-forms of nouns and adjectives, often with obsolete endings. The locative, accusative and ablative are most frequent. **248**

Adverbs of manner are formed from adjectives and verbs; adverbs of source from nouns; numeral adverbs from numeral adjectives. **249**

Formation of Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.

The interjections proper are primitive sounds, but various nouns are used interjectionally in the nominative, accusative or vocative. So also are curt phrases. **250**

The prepositions and conjunctions are in some cases case-forms or phrases, but most of them are not easily subjected to grammatical analysis, and may conveniently be regarded as primitive words. **251**

---

[249] The most usual suffixes for adverbs of manner from adjectives are -ē and -tĕr; from verbs, -tim (-sim). Adverbs of source are formed from nouns with the suffix -tŭs. Illustrations are: —

cert-e, *surely ;*	from **certus,** *sure.*
firmĭ-ter, *firmly ;*	" **firmus,** *firm.*
cau-tim, *cautiously ;*	" **cav-ēre,** *to be cautious.*
fundĭ-tus, *from the bottom ;*	" **fundus,** *bottom.*

Adverbs of source are formed from adjectives also, and even from prepositions. For the numeral adverbs (ending -iens or -iēs) see [118].

[251] The manner of formation of prepositions and conjunctions is a subject for comparative grammar, and cannot be fully treated in an elementary book.

Composition.

252   Words are also formed by composition, *i.e.*, by combining two or more stems into one. The suffixes of inflection or derivation are then added to the last stem.

---

[252] The first stem usually modifies the second with the force of an adverb, an adjective, an oblique case, or a direct object; *e.g.*,—

> **in-īqvus,** *unfair* (**in, aequus**).
> **centi-manus,** *hundred-handed* (**centum, manus**).
> **capri-cornus,** *goat-horned* (**caper, cornu**).
> **partĭ-ceps,** *partaker* (**pars, capere**).
> **sangui-sūga,** *bloodsucker, leech* (**sanguis, sugo**).
>   etc.   etc.

A few words are often written as compounds, though not really such; *e.g.*, **res publica,** *commonwealth;* **jus jurandum,** *oath;* **legis lator,** *legislator.* etc. The custom of writing them as single words has caused them to be looked on as compounds, and they are sometimes called "spurious compounds." Compare in English *instead* (i.e. *in stead*), *perchance, perhaps,* etc., where two words have grown into one.

PART IV. — SYNTAX.

—◦◦◦—

Person, Number, Voice, Concord.

The modifications of person, number and voice have the same force in Latin as in English. Special rules are needed only for concord, for the use of the cases, tenses and moods, and for the non-finite verb-forms.	**253**
The rules of concord are: —	
(*a*) The appositive or predicate noun agrees in *case* with the noun it limits.	**254**
(*b*) The adjective agrees in *gender*, *number* and *case* with the noun it limits.	**255**

---

[253] Except the reflexive use of the passive and the deponent verbs. See 154.

[254] The appositive and predicate noun are usually required by the sense to agree in number, and they agree in gender also, when possible.

Most nouns lack a separate form for the locative and vocative. Such nouns, when used as appositives to those cases, are put in other constructions to express the same idea; with the locative, in the ablative (or ablative with a preposition); with the vocative, in the nominative.

[255] An adjective may limit two or more nouns. In this case the predicate adjective is generally plural and masculine if the nouns denote persons; neuter, if they denote things. The attributive adjective, limiting two or more nouns, generally agrees with the nearest.

Two or more ordinal numerals may stand in the singular with a plural noun; *e.g.*, **prima et qvarta legiones,** *the first and fourth legions.*

256	(*c*) Pronouns agree with their antecedents in *gender*, *number* and *person*.
257	(*d*) The finite verb agrees with its subject in *number* and *person*.

The participles used to make the "periphrastic" verb-forms sometimes agree with an·appositive or predicate noun rather than the subject, when it denotes the same thing.

The locative case is limited by no adjectives but possessives (except **die** in old Latin). A nominative used in direct address is in a few cases limited by an adjective in the vocative form. Nominatives so used are . usually called vocatives. See [261].

A predicate noun or adjective after an infinitive without an expressed subject often agrees not with the omitted subject but with the same word expressed in the sentence in some other case; *e.g.*, **cupio esse bonus,** *I wish to be good;* **mihi licet esse bono,** *I am permitted to be good.* (In the former of these sentences **bonus** agrees with **ego,** expressed in the ending of the verb **cupio;** in the latter, **bono** agrees with **mihi.**) **Vobis necesse est fortibus viris esse,** *you must be brave men.*

[256] The rule applies, of course, only to substantive pronouns, and even these can show person only when they are used as subjects of finite verbs, which show by their ending the person of the subject. All adjective pronouns agree as adjectives. A few cases occur in poetry of an agreement of the relative pronoun in *case* also (attraction); and in a few instances the antecedent takes the case of the relative. A pronoun sometimes agrees with an appositive or predicate-noun of its antecedent. With more than one·antecedent, pronouns follow the usage of adjectives in gender and number; that of verbs in person. See [255] and [257].

[257] With two or more subjects taken conjointly, the verb is plural. If the subjects differ in person the verb takes the first person in preference to the second, the second in preference to the third. But in such cases the verb often agrees with the nearest subject, especially if it precedes the subjects.

Occasional violations of the rules of agreement are found, the most common being an agreement according to sense rather than form. Thus, a feminine or neuter collective noun may take a plural adjective or verb referring to the implied individuals; two subjects, taken together, may take a singular verb if they express a single idea, etc.

Use of the Cases.

The NOMINATIVE is used —

   (*a*) As subject of a finite verb.   **258**

   (*b*) In exclamations.   **259**

   (*c*) To denote the person or thing spoken to.   **260**

The VOCATIVE is used —

   (*a*) To denote the person or thing spoken to.   **261**

The ACCUSATIVE is used —

   (*a*) As the direct object of an action.   **262**

[258] The use of the *subject-nominative* is the same as in English.

[259] The *exclamatory nominative* may be considered the subject of a verb implied in the connection. It is usually accompanied by the interjection **en** or **ecce**. **en Priamus!** *Lo, (here is) Priam!* **En ego, vester Ascanius!** *Lo, (it is) I, your Ascanius!* **ecce tuae litterae!** *Now your letter (comes)!*

[260] The *nominative of direct address* is the regular usage in the plural number, where no vocative is found, but is rare in the singular, when a separate vocative form exists. It is usual to call nominatives vocatives when used in this way, if no separate vocative form is found. **audi tu, populus Albanus,** *hear, thou Alban nation.* **proice tela, sangvis meus,** *cast away thy weapons, my son.*

[261] **faciam, Laeli,** *I will do so, Lælius.* The vocative is the simple stem without a case-suffix. A vocative form is found in the singular in a-stems, masculine o-stems and semivowel-stems. In others the nominative is used as a vocative, and is usually called a vocative when so used. An adjective limiting such a nominative usually takes the vocative form, if it has a separate form for that case, but sometimes the nominative; *e.g.*, **sangvis meus,** above [260].

A form **macte** is called a vocative by some grammarians, an adverb by others. It is used as a simple exclamation, or with the imperative forms **esto, este,** as an exclamation of approval. **macte!** *good!* **macte virtute esto!** *bravo!*

[262] **omnem eqvitatum mittit,** *he sends all the cavalry.*

A special kind of direct object is the *cognate* accusative, which repeats the meaning of the verb in the form of a noun; *e.g.*, **vitam tutam vivere,**

| **263** | (*b*) As subject of an infinitive. |
| **264** | (*c*) In exclamations. |

to live a safe life; **servitutem servire,** *to slave slavery* (i.e., *undergo*). This form of direct object follows verbs which are otherwise intransitive.

Many verbs are transitive in Latin, while English verbs of like meaning are intransitive. In such cases a preposition is inserted in English; *e.g.,* **arma cano,** *I sing of arms;* **petit hostem,** *he aims at the foe,* etc. Other verbs, properly intransitive, sometimes take a direct object in poetical or figurative language; *e.g.,* **ardebat Alexin,** *he was hot for* (i.e., *loved*) *Alexis;* **redolere antiqvitatem,** *to smell of antiquity;* **saltare Cyclopa,** *to dance the Cyclops;* **resonant Amaryllida silvae,** *the groves echo* (*the name of*) *Amaryllis.* Many verbs also are made transitive by being compounded with prepositions.

In a few cases the action implied in a noun or adjective governs a direct object. The infinitives, participles and gerund, of course, retaining their verbal power, govern the same case as their verbs.

Factitive verbs (*i.e.,* verbs meaning *make, appoint, choose, name,* etc.) take two objects, as in English, denoting the same person or thing; *e.g.,* **populus Romanus Ciceronem creavit consulem,** *the Roman nation chose Cicero consul.*

Doceo (and compounds), **celo** and a few verbs of *demanding* and *questioning,* sometimes take two direct objects, — one denoting the person, the other the thing; *e.g.,* **non te celavi sermonem,** *I have not concealed from you the remark;* **te hoc rogo,** *I ask you this;* **Caesar Haeduos frumentum flagitare,** *Cæsar kept demanding corn from the Hæduans.* In the passive voice of these verbs the accusative of the person becomes the subject, and that of the thing remains. In many cases the accusative of the thing seems to be an accusative of specification, or to approach that meaning, and may be a development from it. See [267].

[263] This use is a development of (*a*), the subject of the infinitive being originally the object of the leading verb. It has been extended, however, to all uses of the infinitive except the historical infinitive, which is a finite verb-form in meaning. See [342]. **cum suos interfici viderent,** *when they saw that their men were being killed;* **necesse est legem haberi,** *it is needful that the law be kept;* **fama erat hostem advenire,** *there was a rumor that the foe was coming.*

[264] The *exclamatory accusative* is possibly the object of a verb implied in the connection, but in most cases none need be supplied in translation. An interjection often accompanies it. **heu, me miserum!**

(*d*) To denote the place to which motion proceeds.	**265**
(*e*) To denote extent of time or space.	**266**
(*f*) With verbs or adjectives to define their application.	**267**
(*g*) With many prepositions.	**268**

Alas, unhappy me! **hanc audaciam,** *the impudence!* In old Latin the accusatives **eum, eam, illum, illam,** etc., are combined with the preceding **en** or **ecce** to **eccum, eccam, eccillam,** etc.

[265] *Accusative of limit.* This use is limited, in prose, to names of towns and small islands, and **domum, domos, foras, rus. Hennam profécti sunt,** *they went to Henna;* **ego rus ibo,** *I shall go to the country.* Other words require a preposition, except a few phrases with **eo,** "to go," or **do,** "to give," in which the freer use of early Latin is retained; *e.g.,* **pessum ire,** *to go to ruin;* **pessum dare,** [*to send to ruin,* i.e.] *to ruin;* **infitias ire, exseqvias ire, venum ire, venum dare.** Here belongs also the use of the accusative case of the supine. See 351.

[266] *Accusative of extent.* **paucos dies moratus,** *having waited a few days;* **millia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit,** *he pitches a camp three miles from their camp.* Extent of time or space is sometimes expressed by the ablative. See 302.

[267] *Accusative of specification.* This use is rare in prose, the ablative being the usual construction. The accusative is found, however, in neuter pronouns, **id, qvid,** etc., in **nihil;** in neuter adjectives, **pauca, multum,** etc.; and in a few idiomatic phrases. It is usually best translated by an adverb or an adverbial phrase; *e.g.,* **quid?** *why?* **maximam partem,** *chiefly;* **id temporis,** *then;* **istuc aetatis,** *at your age,* etc. In the phrases **id genus,** *of that sort;* **virile secus,** *of the male sex,* and the like, this accusative seems to qualify a noun, and is nearly equal in force to a genitive or ablative of description. Under this head come many so-called adverbs, **multum, plus, minus,** etc.

With **cingor,** *I bind on (myself),* and other passive forms used reflexively, an accusative is found, which is usually referred to this head. It is better treated, however, as direct object, since the verb is not properly passive. In poetical language many passive participles retain a direct object which may be explained in the same way.

[268] The accusative and ablative cases follow prepositions in Latin. A list of those that take the ablative is given in 308; all others take the accusative. Prepositions compounded with verbs sometimes retain their power of

	The DATIVE is used —
269	(a) As indirect object of an action or feeling.

governing an accusative. If the verb is transitive, it will then take two accusatives, — one a direct object, the other governed by the preposition. This use is rare, except with **trans. populos adit,** *he goes to* (i.e., *visits*) *the tribes;* **milites flumen transportabat,** *he was taking his troops over the river.*

Pridie, *the day before;* **postridie,** *the day after;* and the phrase **ante diem,** used in dates, are followed by an accusative, like prepositions. The construction seems to be elliptical.

The adjectives **propior, proximus,** and the corresponding adverbs **propius, proxime,** are followed by an accusative like their positive **prope,** which is both adverb and preposition. (Compare the similar prepositional use of *nearer, nearest,* in English.)

[269] The *dative of indirect object* denotes the person or thing *to* or *for* which, or *for whose advantage* anything is done or exists. Various prepositions are used to express the idea in English, *to* and *for* most often. Sometimes the English indirect objective will render it. **Himilconi respondit,** *he answered Himilco;* **mihi licet adire,** *I am allowed to come near* (*it is allowed to me*); **hostibus terrorem augere,** *to increase the fright of the enemy* (*increase fright for*); **pugnare hostibus,** *to fight with* (or *against*) *the foe.*

Sometimes, in poetry, the dative of the indirect object is found with verbs of motion, where a phrase expressing the *place to which* would be used in prose; *e.g.,* **it clamor caelo,** *the outcry goes to the sky.* This use arises from a poetical notion or conception, the rising of the shout being thought of not simply as going to the sky, but as affecting or having influence on the sky. So occasionally other-verbs, the action being conceived of as done *to* the person or thing, though another construction would be used in prose; *e.g.,* **lateri abdidit ensem,** *buried the sword in his side.* So especially verbs meaning *"take away."*

Many verbs are intransitive in Latin, though verbs of like meaning are transitive in English, and the indirect object with such becomes a direct object in translation. The most common are verbs meaning *help, please, trust, serve,* and the contrary; also *spare, pardon, envy, command, persuade,* and the like. If pains is taken to translate them by intransitive expressions, the dative will be seen to have its proper force. **non Herculi nocere voluit,** *she did not wish to do harm to Hercules* (= *injure*). **mundus deo paret,** *the world is subject to* (*obeys*) *a god.* Transitive verbs with the meanings given above govern an accusative, but may take a dative also, if

(b) To denote the possessor or apparent agent.	**270**
(c) With adjectives, to denote that to which the quality or feeling is directed.	**271**
(d) To denote purpose or end.	**272**

the meaning permits; and most of these verbs may take an accusative of the thing, especially a neuter pronoun, along with the dative of the person. **Hoc tibi impero,** *I give you this command* (*command this to you*). In the case of some of these verbs, usage is unsettled, and they take either a direct or an indirect object, with little or no difference of meaning.

The same remarks apply also to many verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, pro, sub, super,** which take a dative, and if transitive an accusative also.

[270] The *dative of possessor* is simply an indirect object, denoting the person for whom, or for whose advantage or disadvantage something exists. It needs mention only on account of peculiarity of translation. **Gallis haec consuetudo est,** *the Gauls have this custom* (lit., *this custom exists for the Gauls*). The same is true of the *dative of apparent agent,* so named because translated "*by.*" It is found regularly with the present passive participle (rarely with the perfect passive participle or a verbal adjective in -bilis), and denotes the person who has the work to do. **multa mihi facienda sunt,** *much must be done by me, I have much to do* (lit., *the doing-of-much exists for me*). In poetry we sometimes find a dative of the real agent, or one which approaches that meaning.

[271] The *dative with adjectives* is also an indirect object, and denotes that toward which the implied feeling is exercised, or for which the implied quality exists. The adjectives most often limited by a dative are those kindred in meaning to the verbs that govern a dative, and those which mean *like, ready, friendly, easy, fit,* etc. **paucis carior fides quam pecunia fuit,** *to a few, truth was dearer than money;* **hoc luctuosum est parentibus,** *this is sad for parents.* **idem,** *same,* sometimes takes a dative (like adjectives of *likeness*).

In a few cases, a noun or adverb, derived from a verb or adjective which governs a dative, takes an indirect object like its primitive. **convenienter naturae,** *in agreement with nature.* Also, rarely, a dative is found with interjections. **vae victis!** *woe to the vanquished!* **vae mihi!** *ah me!*

[272] The *dative of purpose* is most frequent with the verb "*be.*" It is translated as a predicate-noun or an appositive with "*as,*" less often by "*for.*" **impedimento id fuit,** *this was a hindrance* (*served as a hindrance*);

	The LOCATIVE is used —
273	(*a*) To denote the place of an action.
274	(*b*) To denote price or value.

virtus non datur dono, *virtue is not given as a present;* **eqvitatum Caesari auxilio miserant,** *they had sent cavalry as a help to Cæsar.* A second dative of the person to whom the action is of interest is often added, as in the last example. This use of the dative to express purpose is not common, except in the case of a few words. A few have become equivalent to adjectives, — **frugi bonae** = *honest,* **usui** = *useful,* **cordi** = *pleasing,* etc. In **operae est,** *it is worth while,* it is not clear whether **operae** is dative or genitive. **operae pretium est** also occurs, and the shorter expression may be derived from the latter.

On the border between the dative of indirect object and the dative of purpose stands its occurrence to denote the *use* to which a thing is put; *e.g.,* **domicilio locum delegerunt,** *they chose a place for a home;* **receptui signum,** the "*retreat-call,*" *signal for retreat;* **esui olivae,** *eating-olives,* etc. This use of the dative is most common with the gerundive, in giving the duties of an officer or committee, and similar expressions; *e.g.,* **decemviri legibus scribendis,** *a committee of ten to compile the laws.* In such cases it seems to limit a noun, but the construction is probably elliptical.

[273] A separate form for the locative is found in Latin only in the singular of some names of towns and islands, and a few other words, **domi, humi, ruri** being the most frequent. (In other words, and in the plural, the ablative or a preposition is used to express "place where.") **cogitandum tibi erat Romaene et domi tuae, an Mitylenis aut Rhodi malles vivere,** *you had to consider whether you preferred to live at Rome and at your own home, or at Mitylenæ or Rhodes.* A locative **animi** occurs with verbs and adjectives of *feeling;* e.g., **aeger animi,** *sick at heart.*

In old Latin a locative **die** is found denoting the "time when"; *e.g.,* **qvinti die,** *on the fifth day;* **die crastini,** *to-morrow,* etc.

Several adverbs of place or time are locatives; *e.g.,* **hic,** *here;* **illic,** *there;* **postridie** (= **posteri die**), *on the following day;* **pridie,** *on the day before;* **qvotidie,** *daily,* etc.

In the case of plural names of towns, it is a matter of indifference whether the case used to denote place be called ablative or locative. The form is the same, and the use of the singular shows that either case may be used in this sense.

[274] A definite amount named as the price is expressed by the ablative. The locative is found in indefinite expressions of price or value; *e.g.,*

The genitive was originally the case of the *source* or (consequently) the *cause*. This idea can be seen in some of its uses; in others the idea of possession, developed from that of source, is more prominent.	275

The GENITIVE is used (as the case of *source* or *cause*) —

(*a*) To denote the crime .	276
1. With verbs of *judicial action*.	277
2. With adjectives of *guilt* or *innocence*.	278
(*b*) To denote the person or thing that excites the feeling	279
1. With some verbs of *reminding, remembering, forgetting, pitying*.	280
2. With **miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet.**	281
3. With *adjectives* of like meaning.	282

magni aestimare, *to value highly;* **flocci non faciunt,** *they don't care a straw for* ——; **est mihi tanti,** *it is worth my while;* **aeqvi boni facere,** *to take in good part,* etc.   In **homo nihili,** *a worthless fellow,* and the like, the locative seems to limit a noun, but the expression is perhaps elliptical.

The locative was not clear to the Romans themselves, and its similarity of form caused it to be confused, in the singular, with the genitive, and in a few cases genuine genitives were used with the force of locatives.   Thus, **pluris** and **minoris** occur a few times to express value; a few other genitives occur once each.   **mentis,** *in mind,* is found twice; it seems to have been formed after the analogy of **animi.**

[277] *i.e.,* verbs of *accusing, condemning, acquitting,* etc.   **ambitus accusare,** *to accuse of bribery.*

[278] **insons culpae,** *innocent of fault;* **reus avaritiae,** *charged with avarice.*

[280] **admonebat eum egestatis,** *he reminded him of his poverty;* **veteris proverbii memini,** *I remember an old saw.*

[281] **eum libidinis infamiaeqve neqve pudet neqve taedet,** *he is neither ashamed of his licentiousness and ill-repute nor sick of them.*   With **pudet** the person toward whom the sense of shame is felt is occasionally treated as the exciting object.

One or two other verbs of like meaning occasionally occur with a genitive, — **vereor,** *to feel awe;* **fastidio,** *to feel disgust.*

[282] **gloriae memor,** *mindful of glory;* **lassus militiae,** *sick of warfare.*

283	(*c*) To denote the whole, of which the word it limits denotes a part.
284	(*d*) To describe anything by denoting its qualities or its material.

[283] *Partitive genitive.* It-may limit nouns, adjectives or adverbs, if they express a part. **pars militum,** *part of the soldiers;* **ubinam genitum sumus?** *where in the world are we?* (*in what place among nations?*) **omnium fluminum maximum,** *the largest of all rivers;* **genus eorum unum,** *one class of them.* Here belongs the genitive in various idiomatic phrases; *e.g.,* **id temporis,** *at that* [*point of*] *time;* **qvid novi?** *what news?* **id loci,** *that spot,* etc. As partitive genitives the personal pronoun forms **nostrum, vestrum** are used, not **nostri, vestri. ejus** is a partitive genitive in the phrase **qvod ejus,** = "*as far as*" (lit. *whatever of it*). **qvod ejus possis,** *as far as you can.* In older Latin, and in colloquial style, we find phrases like **scelus viri,** *a villain;* **qvid hominis?** *what sort of a fellow?* **monstrum hominis,** *a monster,* etc., which come under the head of partitives, as do also the phrases **compendi facere,** *to save;* **lucri facere,** *to gain,* and the like.

[284] *Descriptive genitive.* **res magni laboris,** *a task of great toil* (*very toilsome*); **murus pedum sedecim,** *a sixteen foot wall.* This genitive, when denoting a quality of the word it limits, regularly has an adjective with it, as in the examples given. (**bidui, tridui,** etc., have an adjective compounded with them.)

The descriptive genitive, when used to denote material, does not require a limiting adjective. This use is rare (an adjective is generally used to denote material), and in many cases seems to approach the idea of a partitive genitive. Examples are: **acervus frumenti,** *a heap of grain;* **talentum auri,** *a talent of gold.*

Other constructions occur instead of the genitive in all its uses to express source or cause. Thus, verbs of *accusing,* etc., verbs of *reminding,* etc., sometimes take a phrase with a preposition; verbs of *remembering,* etc., a direct-object; **miseret,** etc., an infinitive; the various adjectives, also, are used with prepositional phrases instead of the genitive. The poets and later writers use the genitive more freely with adjectives to express cause; sometimes also to express specification, where an ablative or locative might be expected.

For a partitive genitive a phrase with a preposition is not unusual, oftenest with **de** or **ex.**

The GENITIVE is used (as a possessive case) —	
(*a*) To denote the possessor.	**285**
(*b*) To define a noun more closely.	**286**
(*c*) To denote the subject of the implied action or feeling.	**287**
(*d*) To denote the object of the implied action or feeling.	**288**

The idea of *source* passes into that of *separation*, and in a few cases a genitive is found in poetry, where an ablative of separation would be the usual construction. Probably the habit of imitating Greek constructions (common in the Augustan poets) is the cause of this use.

[285] *Possessive genitive.* **membra hominis,** *a man's limbs;* **natura deorum,** *the nature of the gods.* Used with any noun denoting a thing capable of possession in the widest sense; also with adjectives used substantively; *e.g.,* **aeqvalis ejus,** *his equal in age;* **similis Caesaris,** *like Cæsar* (*Cæsar's like*), etc. This genitive is often put in the predicate, and *mark, duty,* or some such word supplied in translation; *e.g.,* **est hominis,** *'tis a man's duty;* **hominis est errare,** *it is characteristic of man to make mistakes.*

The genitive case of the personal pronouns is not used, in prose, as a possessive. The possessive pronouns are used instead.

A possessive genitive is found with **ergo, instar, tenus, pridie** and **postridie,** which were originally nouns, but have sunk to prepositions or adverbs.

[286] *Appositive genitive.* **urbs Romae,** (*Rome's city,* i.e.) *Rome;* **urbs Buthroti,** *the city of Buthrotum.* This is properly a possessive genitive. It is rarely found, an appositive being far more usual.

[287] *Subjective genitive.* **deorum factum,** *a deed of the gods.* The word it limits must imply, of course, an action or feeling. In some cases it is hard to draw the line between the subjective and the possessive use of the genitive, and the possessive pronouns are used for it as for a possessive genitive.

[288] *Objective genitive.* **usus membrorum,** *the use of the limbs;* **cura rerum alienarum,** *the care of others' interests.* The objective genitive limits nouns and adjectives that imply an action or feeling which may pass over to an object. **amans sui,** *fond of himself;* **capax urbis mag-**

	The genitive is used, further —
289	(*a*) To denote price or penalty.
290	(*b*) With a few verbs and adjectives of plenty and want.
291	(*c*) With **interest** and **rēfert**.

nae, *capable-of-holding a large city.* As objective genitives, **mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri** are used (**nostrum, vestrum** very rarely).

A phrase with a preposition (**in, erga,** etc.) may be used instead of the objective genitive. This use of the genitive, like that of the subjective genitive, is a development of the idea of possession, the action or feeling, whether done to one or by one, being thought of as something belonging to him.

[289] The genitive of price has been mentioned [274]. The genitive of penalty is found in **capitis damnare,** *to condemn to death,* and similar expressions. It seems to have arisen from confusion with the genitive of the crime, but possibly there may be an ellipsis of the word on which the genitive depends, the expression having been originally a legal phrase. Penalty is usually expressed by the ablative.

[290] With verbs and adjectives of *filling, fullness,* the genitive seems to come under the head of *source* or *cause;* but an ablative of means is more common. With other expressions the genitive is not common, except in the poets and later writers, who seem, in many cases, to use it in imitation of the Greek, to express not only *want* or *lack,* but often also *separation* or *specification,* ideas which are regularly expressed by the ablative. The verb **potior,** also, which usually takes an ablative, is found with a genitive. **domus erat plena ebriorum,** *the house was full of drunken men;* **temeritatis implere,** *to fill with rashness;* **exercitationis indiget,** *needs practice.*

[291] **nullius interest,** *it makes no difference to any one;* **illorum refert,** *it concerns them.* In this construction, the possessive pronoun forms **meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā** are used, instead of the genitive of a personal pronoun. The origin of this genitive is not clear, but **rēfert** is commonly thought to stand for **rem fert;** in which case the genitive is possessive, and **meā, tuā,** etc., stand for **meam, tuam,** etc. The genitive and possessive pronoun with **interest** may be explained as having arisen from the analogy of **rēfert,** which has the same meaning, and naturally takes the same construction.

The ablative in Latin has taken on itself the functions of four different cases, the meaning and force of which are rudely given by the four prepositions most often used to translate it, — *from, by, in, with.* | **292**

1. FROM — The Ablative Proper.

The ABLATIVE PROPER is used —

   (*a*) To denote the place from which motion proceeds. | **293**

   (*b*) To denote separation, source and origin. | **294**

---

[292] The classification here given of the uses of the ablative is not meant to be absolute or scientific. The various uses shade into one another, and a sharp line of division is, in many cases, impossible. In doubtful cases, the clue offered by other constructions has been generally followed; thus *cause*, though often passing insensibly into *means*, has been put under "ablative proper" rather than "instrumental," because of the frequent use of **a, de** or **ex** to express cause; *price*, though in many cases "instrumental," has been put under "locative" because of the locative of price, etc. But analogy fails in many cases, — the name of a town used in dating letters is found not only in the ablative, but also in the locative and in the ablative with **a.** Should the ablative when so used be regarded as "place where" or "place from which"? Some of these doubtful cases are mentioned in the notes; if the teacher should choose to transfer any usage from one head to another, no harm will come of it, as the sole object of the classification is to render it easier to learn and keep in mind the various uses.

[293] This use is generally limited in prose to names of towns and small islands, and **domo, humo, rure.** (Other words usually take a preposition.) **Corintho fugit,** *fled from Corinth;* **rure huc advenit,** *came hither from the country.*

[294] **hostem rapinis prohibere,** *to keep the foe from plunder;* **Jove natus et Latonā,** *born of Jove and Latona;* **satus terrā,** *sprung from earth.* (A preposition is often used, however, to express separation or source.)

Under this head belongs the use of the ablative with verbs and adjectives denoting *want* and *lack; e.g.,* **vacuus curā,** *free from care;* **isto nomine caruit,** *it lacked that name.* (The genitive is also thus used; see 290.)

295	(*c*) To denote cause.
296	(*d*)· To denote the standard of comparison.

2. BY—The Instrumental Ablative.

The INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE is used—

297	(*a*) To denote the means or instrument.

[295] The *ablative of cause* is used with a great variety of expressions, and rendered into English by various prepositions. **animi vitio id evenit,** *that came about from a fault of character.* So with **gaudere,** *to rejoice* (*in*)*;* **niti,** *to depend* (*on*)*;* **confidere,** *to trust* (*to*)*;* **contentus,** *satisfied* (*with*)*;* **laetus,** *glad* (*of*)*;* etc.

. [296] This ablative is translated " than." **nihil est viro dignius aeqvitate,** *nothing is more worthy of a man than justice.* "Than " is also expressed by **qvam,** and the usage of Latin speech is roughly the following: —

(*a*) When the standard of comparison is a relative pronoun, the ablative is used.

(*b*) When the standard of comparison is subject, or an attribute of the subject, either the ablative or **qvam** may be used.

(*c*) When two adjectives are compared, **qvam** is used, and both adjectives take the same degree. **magis disertus qvam sapiens,** *more learned than wise;* **verior qvam gratior,** *more true than popular.*

(*d*) With adverbs the ablative is óften used loosely in indefinite comparisons; *e.g.,* **dicto citius,** *sooner than said.* So **spe, opinione, justo,** etc.

(*e*) In expressions of *size, number, weight,* etc., after the adverbs **plus, minus, amplius, longius,** either the ablative or **qvam** may be used. But **qvam** is often omitted in such constructions, and the word. denoting the standard of comparison left in the same case as if **qvam** were expressed; *e.g.,* **plus tria millia,** *more than three thousand.*

(*f*) In cases not included in the above **qvam** is used in prose, but the ablative is more freely used in poetry. So too with **alius,** *other* (*than*).

On the border between the ablative proper and the instrumental ablative stands its use to denote the material of which a thing consists; *e.g.,* **animo constamus et corpore,** *we are made up of soul and body.*

Here, too, may be placed the use of the ablative with **facio, fio** and **sum** in the peculiar idioms, **qvid facias . . . ?** *what can you do with . . . ?* and **qvid fiet . . . ?** *what will become of . . . ?* *e.g.,* **qvid hoc homine faciatis ?** *what could you do with this fellow ?*

[297] *Ablative of means.* **lacte et carne vivunt pellibusqve sunt**

(b) To denote the amount of difference.	**298**
3. IN — The Locative Ablative. The LOCATIVE ABLATIVE is used —	
(a) To denote the place where an action takes place.	**299**

vestiti, *they live on milk and flesh and are clothed with skins;* **eum coronā donasti,** *you presented him with a crown.*

fruor, fungor, potior, utor, vescor are limited by an ablative of means, which is usually translated as a direct object. **lacte, caseo, carne vescor,** *I eat milk, cheese, flesh* (i.e., *feed myself with*); **Crassus aedilitate functus est,** *Crassus held* (*busied himself with*) *the œdileship.* In regard to the reflexive use of these deponents, see 154. (In old Latin they sometimes take a direct object, and a remnant of their transitive meaning is seen in their present passive participles, which are used with **esse** to make the "second periphrastic conjugation," like those of other transitive verbs. **potior** also takes a genitive; see [290].)

The ablative of means is used also with **opus** and **usus;** *e.g.,* **opus est pecuniā,** (*there is a work* [*to be done*] *with money,* i.e.) *there is need of money.* In this construction, instead of a noun denoting action we sometimes find the perfect passive participle, or the ablative of the supine; *e.g.,* **opus est properato,** *there is need of haste;* **opus est factu,** *there is need of action.*

The ablative may denote the road or route by which one goes. **Aureliā viā profectus est,** *he went by the Aurelian way;* **flumine adverso,** *up the river;* **recto litore,** *straight along the shore;* etc. This use may be considered either instrumental or locative, as the road is looked on as a *means* of travel or a *place* of travel.

[298] *Ablative of degree.* **paulo longius processit,** *he went on a little farther;* **decem annis ante Punicum bellum,** *ten years before the Punic war.* So with **abesse, distare,** etc., to express distance; *e.g.,* **qvinqve milibus ab urbe distat,** *is five miles from the city;* **a litore tridui navigatione,** *three days' sail from the coast.*

qvo . . . eo and **qvanto . . . tanto** occur often in correlative clauses, and are translated by *the . . . the.* **qvo difficilius, eo praeclarius,** *the more difficult, the more glorious.*

[299] *Ablative of place.* This use is generally limited in prose to names of towns and islands, words which mean "place" (**loco, locis, parte,** etc.), words limited by **totus** or **medius,** and a few phrases. (Other words usually take a preposition. For the locative of "place where" see 273.) **Tamesis uno omnino loco transiri potest,** *the Thames can be crossed in*

300	(b) To define the application of the word it limits.
301	(c) To denote the time when or within which an action takes place.
302	(d) To denote extent of time or space.
303	(e) To denote price or penalty.

4. WITH — The Comitative Ablative.

The COMITATIVE ABLATIVE is used —

304	(a) To denote accompaniment.

one place only; **totis trepidatur castris,** *there is a panic in the whole camp.* So **Carthagine Novā,** at *New Carthage;* **Trallibus,** at *Tralles;* **terrā mariqve,** *by land and sea;* **dextrā,** *on the right,* etc.   In the case of plural names of towns, it is indifferent whether the case be called ablative or locative.

[300] *Ablative of specification.*   Translated *in, in respect to, in point of,* etc.   **temporibus errasti,** *you were mistaken in the date;* **grandis natu,** *advanced in life;* **rex nomine, non potentiā,** *king in name, not in power.* Here belongs the ordinary use of the supine in the ablative; *e.g.,* **mirabile dictu,** *strange to tell;* possibly also the ablative with **dignus** and **indignus;** *e.g.,* **indignus est vitā,** *he is unworthy of life.*   But see [303].

[301] *Ablative of time.* **tertiā vigiliā solvit,** *he set sail in the third watch;* **solis occasu,** *at sunset;* **decem diebus proximis,** *within the next ten days.* Some expressions of time contain at the same time a suggestion also of cause, means or specification; *e.g.,* **bello civili periit,** *he lost his life in the civil war;* **duobus his proeliis,** *in these two battles,* etc.

[302] *Ablative of extent.* **pugnatum est horis qvinqve,** *the fight lasted five hours.*   An accusative is more often used to express extent of time or space.   See 266.

[303] *Ablative of price.* **vendidit hic auro patriam,** *this man sold his country for gold.   Ablative of penalty.* **tertia parte agri damnati,** *fined a third part of their land;* **morte damnatus,** *condemned to death.*   With verbs of *exchanging* either what is given or what is received may be treated as the price.   With some verbs the ablative of price seems to be instrumental rather than locative.   Price is also expressed by the locative, and penalty by the genitive.   See 274 and 289.

An ablative is used with the adjectives **dignus** and **indignus,** and with the verb **dignor,** which seems to come under the head of price, but is not quite clear.   See [300].   **haud me tali dignor honore,** *I do not think myself worthy of such honor.*

(*b*) To describe anything by expressing its qualities or appearance.	**305**
(*c*) To denote manner or attendant circumstances.	**306**
The ablative is used, further—	
(*a*) As the case absolute.	**307**

[304] *Ablative of accompaniment.* This use is limited in prose to military expressions, giving the troops or forces with which a movement is made. **Caesar subseqvebatur omnibus copiis,** *Cæsar followed with all his troops.* In other expressions the preposition **cum** is used.

[305] *Ablative of description.* In this use the ablative, like the descriptive genitive, requires a limiting adjective or a limiting genitive. **pari acclivitate collis,** *a hill of equal steepness;* **ore rubicundo homo,** *a red-faced fellow.* It is often best rendered by a compound adjective, as in the last example.

[306] The *ablative of manner* is generally limited in prose to words meaning "*manner*" (**modo, ratione,** etc.), and words which have a limiting adjective. **aeqvo animo mori,** *to die with resignation (an even mind);* **id summo studio a militibus administratur,** *this is performed by the soldiers with the greatest zeal.* Other words take regularly the preposition **cum,** except a few like **injuriā,** *unjustly,* **silentio,** *silently,* which have become equivalent to adverbs in their use; and those which contain also the idea of *cause* or *means; e.g.,* **nox cantu aut clamore acta,** *the night was spent in singing and shouting;* **pedibus proeliari,** *to fight on foot;* **versibus scribere,** *to write in verse,* etc.

The *ablative of attendant circumstances* lies between the ablative of manner and the ablative absolute (which often expresses manner or circumstance), and cannot be separated by any distinct line from those uses. **In foro summā hominum frequentiā exscribo,** *I am writing in the forum with a great crowd (around me).* So in various phrases: **injussu Caesaris,** *without Cæsar's orders;* **pace tuā,** *by your leave;* **tuo periculo,** *at your own risk,* etc. Here seem to belong two or three cases of the gerundive (see 349), which are often regarded as ablative absolute. **nullis officii praeceptis tradendis,** *without giving rules of duty;* **accusandis Camillus dis hominibusqve senescebat,** *Camillus grew old accusing gods and men.*

[307] The *ablative absolute* may be referred to either division of the case, according to the modification it expresses. It denotes most often *time, cause, means, manner, concession* or an *accompanying event,* and should

308 | (*b*) With the prepositions **a** (**ab, abs**), **absqve, de, coram, palam, cum, ex** (**e**), **sine, tenus, pro** and **prae**; and sometimes with **in, sub, subter, super.**

be translated accordingly, usually by a modifying clause, but in the last case often by an independent clause, the proper connective (*and, but,* etc.) being supplied. **Germani, post tergum clamore audito, armis objectis, se ex castris ejecerunt,** *the Germans, when they heard the outcry in their rear, threw away their arms and burst out of the camp.* (Here **clamore audito** denotes time, and **armis objectis** an accompanying circumstance). **nostri omnes incolumes, perpaucis vulneratis,** *our men were all safe, though a few were wounded* (concession) ; **multis telis dejectis, defensores depellebant,** *they drove off the defenders by throwing many missiles* (means).

The ablative absolute consists regularly of a noun and a participle, the former being subject, the latter predicate of the implied statement. For predicate, however, a predicate-noun or adjective is often used, the lacking participle of the verb **sum** being supplied in translation. Rarely a clause or an infinitive is used as subject of the participle.

The ablative absolute is far more common than the English nominative absolute, to which it corresponds. Only seldom can the latter be used to translate it; the best rendering is usually by a modifying clause. The lack of a perfect active participle in Latin makes the construction far more frequent than it would otherwise be, and an English participial construction is often a good translation, if the voice of the Latin verb be changed; *e.g.,* **Caesar, obsidibus acceptis, exercitum in Bellovacos duxit,** *Cæsar, having received hostages, led his army,* etc.; **convocato consilio, eos incusavit,** *calling a council, he upbraided them.*

A few cases occur of the ablative absolute joined to the sentence it limits by a conjunction : **nisi munitis castris,** (*unless after the camp had been fortified*) *unless the camp had been* (*first*) *fortified ;* **qvasi praeda sibi advectā,** *as if booty had been brought to him ;* **tanqvam non transituris in Asiam Romanis,** *as if the Romans were not going to cross into Asia.*

In a few cases the participle stands alone as an ablative absolute, its subject being omitted. This corresponds to the impersonal use of a finite verb-form. **nihil festinato, nihil praeparato,** *without haste, and without preparation ;* **diu certato,** *after a long fight* (lit. *it having been fought long*), like **diu certatum est,** (*it was fought long*) *there was a long fight.*

[308] The *ablative with prepositions* may be assigned to the divisions of the case as follows : —

Use of the Tenses.

The use of the tenses is, in general, the same as **309**
in English.

The perfect indicative, in its use, is either definite **310**
or indefinite. The perfect definite corresponds to

Ablative proper: **a, absqve, de, ex, sine.**

Locative ablative: **coram, palam, tenus, pro, prae, in, sub, subter, super.**

Comitative ablative: **cum.**

In and **sub** take the ablative with expressions implying rest, the accusative with expressions implying motion. **Subter** and **super** usually take the accusative; rarely the ablative, except **super** when it means "concerning."

A few words, commonly adverbs, are sometimes found with the ablative like prepositions; such are **procul, simul, clam.**

[309] The present indicative is often used, as in English, for a past tense (imperfect or perfect indefinite). In this use it is called "historical present." After the conjunction **dum,** "*while*," the present is often used in the same way, though a past tense is necessary in English.

With adverbs meaning "*long*" (**jam, diu,** etc.), the present and imperfect, though they have their proper force, are usually rendered into English by the perfect and pluperfect. **jamdiu machinaris,** *you have long been plotting (and are plotting yet);* **diu comparabam,** *I had long been preparing (and was still doing so).*

The imperfect denotes a past action or state as continuing, repeated or customary, sometimes as attempted. **dicebat,** "*he said,*" "*he was saying,*" "*he used to say,*" or even "*he tried to say.*"

The future indicative is sometimes used, as in English, to express a command. Compare [315]. For the lacking future and future perfect subjunctive, the present and perfect subjunctive are commonly used; but when it is necessary to avoid ambiguity, the subjunctive of the first periphrastic conjugation may be used.

In letters, the imperfect and pluperfect tenses are sometimes found where the English would use the present and perfect; the time of the receipt of the letter, not the time of writing, being reckoned from.

Poets sometimes use the perfect indefinite, in imitation of Greek, to state a general truth.

[310] The perfect subjunctive is usually definite, except when it stands for an indefinite perfect indicative which has been changed to the subjunctive in a dependent statement, by 322.

the English "present perfect"; *e.g.*, **amavi,** *I have loved.* The perfect indefinite corresponds to the English "past"; *e.g.*, **amavi,** *I loved.*

311   The present, perfect definite, future and future perfect are primary tenses; the imperfect, perfect indefinite and pluperfect, secondary.

312   In most subordinate clauses the subjunctive takes a primary tense (present or perfect) when the verb on which it depends is primary, and a secondary tense (imperfect or pluperfect) when the verb on which it depends is secondary. This usage is called *sequence of tenses.*

Use of the Moods.

The INDICATIVE is used —

313   (*a*) To make a statement directly.

314   (*b*) To ask a question directly.

---

[311] The English "perfect with have" is usually the equivalent of the definite perfect, but rarely our idiom requires " have " as a translation of the indefinite perfect.

The historical present is sometimes secondary, following meaning rather than form.

[312] The rule of sequence is not a principle of grammar, but simply the statement of a somewhat unsettled usage. It is subject to violation whenever the sense requires; but this rarely happens, except in consecutive clauses, and conditions impliedly false. See 326 and 327.

[313] The use of the indicative is the same as in English.

[314] Questions answered by "yes" or "no" are not marked, as in English, by the order of the words, but by the interrogative particles -nĕ and **num.** -nĕ is appended to the prominent word of the sentence (usually the first word), and simply shows that the sentence is a question. **sentisne?** *do you perceive?* Rarely -nĕ is omitted.

The insertion of a negative word shows, as in English, that the answer "yes" is expected. In such a case, -nĕ is appended to the negative word. **nonne sentis?** *do you not perceive?*

The IMPERATIVE is used —	
(*a*) To give a command directly.	**315**
The SUBJUNCTIVE is used (in independent sentences) —	
(*a*) To make a statement doubtfully.	**316**
(*b*) To ask a question doubtfully.	**317**

num shows that the answer "no" is expected. **num sentis?** *you don't perceive, do you?*

Double (or alternative) questions take **utrum, num** or -**nĕ** in the first clause, and **an** or -**nĕ** in the second.

Exclamatory sentences are questions in form, are introduced by the same interrogative words, and take the same construction.

[315] The use of the imperative is the same as in English, but a prohibition is seldom expressed by the simple imperative. Instead of it we find (*a*) **nē** with the perfect subjunctive, (*b*) **nolī** (plural **nolīte**) with an infinitive, (*c*) **cavē** (plural **cavēte**) with the present subjunctive. "*Do not speak*" would be **ne dīxeris, nolī dīcere,** or **cave dīcas;** seldom in prose, **ne dīc.**

Rarely a future indicative is used in a command. **expectabis,** *you will wait.*

The imperative forms in -**to, -tote, -nto, -tor, -ntor** (often called future imperative), are old forms, usually found only in legal language (in laws, wills, etc.), and in poetry.

[316] *Potential* subjunctive. It corresponds to the English potential, and should be translated by *may, might, could, would, should,* etc., according to the sense of the passage. **velim,** *I should wish;* **vellem,** *I could wish;* **crederes,** *you would think;* **nemo istud concedat,** *no one would admit that.* Doubtful statements are most common with a conditional clause to limit them, and usually take the same form as the verb of the condition. Sometimes they are used where a conditional or concessive clause would have the same force.

The potential subjunctive may be used in dependent as well as independent sentences, where the indicative would make a positive statement, while the writer desires a doubtful one. This is especially the case in relative sentences, which, though dependent in form, are often practically equivalent to independent statements.

[317] There are two forms of questions in which the subjunctive is found. The first is simply the potential subjunctive of 316, when the statement is changed into a question; *e.g.,* **crederesne?** *would you think?* The

318	(*c*) To give a command doubtfully : —
319	1. In exhortations.
320	2. In wishes.
321	3. In requests or mild commands.

other use is the *dubitative* subjunctive. It is found in doubtful or rhetorical questions; *i.e.*, such as do not require an answer, but imply in themselves a negative answer. **qvid faciam ?** *what can I do ?* **qvid facerem ?** *what was I to do ?* **qvis dubitet ?** *who doubts ?* **qvis vellet ?** *who could wish ?* The implied answer in all these is "*nothing*," "*no one*." So **qviescerem et paterer ?** *was I to keep quiet and suffer ?* [*No.*] The subjunctive in such questions is really potential, but in English the indicative is often used, or the mood-verb *can*, while the subjunctive of 316 is more often rendered by *may, might* or *would*.

[319] *Hortatory* subjunctive. Used in the first person plural; *e.g.*, **moriamur !** *let us die !* **in arma ruamus !** *let us rush into the fight !*

[320] *Optative* subjunctive. **tibi di qvaecumqve precaris dent,** *may the gods give you all the blessings you pray for ;* **moriar, ni puto,** *may I die, if I don't believe . . .!* A particle of wishing (**O, uti, utinam,** etc.) often accompanies this use of the subjunctive. (**O si** is used in the same way, but is a conditional clause.) The secondary tenses imply that the wish cannot be realized, and sometimes approach the notion of a past obligation. **utinam viveret,** *would that he were alive !* **ne poposcisses,** *you ought not to have asked* (lit., *would that you had not asked*).

[321] *Jussive* subjunctive. Common in the third person, where the imperative is seldom used, but rare in prose in the second person, except in prohibitions (see [315]), and when the subject is indefinite (you = any one). **relinqvas,** *leave* (= *one may leave*). **hoc amet, hoc spernat,** *let him choose this and reject that.*

This subjunctive, beside the uses given, often occurs where other constructions are common in Latin, viz :

With **modo** or **tantum,** "*only*" as the equivalent of a condition.

With **ut, ne, qvamvis,** etc., "*however much,*" as the equivalent of a concessive clause.

E.g., **multa in eo admiranda sunt, eligere modo curae sit,** *there is much in him that is admirable, if one only takes pains in choosing* (lit., *only let it be your care to choose*) ; **velis tantummodo,** *if only you wish ;* **qvamvis prudens sis, tamen . . .,** *though you be wise, yet . . .* (lit., *be as wise as you will,* **qvam vis**). At times, this subjunctive is so used without the adverbs mentioned ; *e.g.*, **roges,** *you may ask* (i.e., *if you ask,* or *though you ask*).

The Subjunctive is used (as the indirect mood) —	
(*a*) In the subordinate clauses of dependent statements.	**322**
(*b*) In dependent questions.	**323**

[322] The subjunctive of 322, 323, and 324, is a substitute for the indicative and imperative of 313, 314, and 315, when direct statements, questions or commands are reported and made to depend on verbs of *saying* or *thinking, asking* or *answering, commanding* or *forbidding*.

Direct statements, when made dependent on verbs of *saying* or *thinking*, change the indicative of the principal clauses to the infinitive; that of the subordinate clauses to the subjunctive.

The potential subjunctive, in principal clauses, becomes the infinitive of the active periphrastic conjugation.

Occasionally subordinate clauses, especially relative clauses, take the infinitive, being equivalent to principal clauses in their meaning. A few cases occur of the use of the infinitive by a sort of attraction, even in conditional clauses and the like.

The same principle often causes the subjunctive to be used in relative and other subordinate clauses, that do not depend on verbs of saying or thinking, but limit a sentence whose verb implies the thought or statement of another person. **Paetus libros, qvos frater suus reliqvisset, mihi donavit,** *Paetus gave me the books which his brother (as he said) had left.* Sometimes, by a careless construction, the verb of saying is inserted, and put in the subjunctive instead of the verb of the sentence, which in this case depends on the inserted verb. **literas, qvas me misisse diceret, recitavit,** *he read a letter which he said I had written.* Causal clauses also take the subjunctive on this principle, when the cause is given not on the authority of the speaker or writer, but of some other person, and show the same irregular insertion of **dico.** Compare [328].

Subordinate clauses remain in the indicative, when they form no part of the reported statements, but are inserted by the narrator as explanations. Occasionally, also, though very rarely in good writers, other subordinate clauses are found in the indicative.

[323] Direct questions, when made dependent on a verb of *asking* or *answering*, change their verbs to the subjunctive. **qvis est?** *who is he?* (direct); **nescio qvis sit,** *I know not who he is* (indirect); **qvanto res sit in periculo, cognoscunt,** *they learn in how great danger the matter is.*

In old Latin dependent questions are often in the indicative.

In long passages of a formal, reported speech, dependent questions are

324	(c) In dependent commands.
	The SUBJUNCTIVE is used (in dependent sentences)—
325	(a) In final clauses, and in substantive clauses developed from them.

sometimes in the infinitive. In such cases, the question is usually equivalent to a statement, and not asked for the sake of an answer. See 470, 477.

With **haud scio an, nescio an,** *I know not whether,* the verb often remains in the indicative, these phrases having become practically equivalent in force to adverbs, *"perhaps," "probably."*

[324] Direct commands, when made dependent on verbs of *commanding* or *forbidding,* change their verbs to the subjunctive. **patribus nuntia urbem muniant,** *tell the senate to fortify the city;* **jures postulo,** *I require you to swear;* **Ariovistus respondit, cum vellet, congrederetur,** *Ariovistus answered (telling him), to meet him when he pleased.* In many cases, however, **ut** or **ne** is inserted before the verb, thus making a purpose clause (see 325); and after **jubeo** and **veto,** less often after other verbs, the verb is changed to the infinitive, becoming an object. See 338.

[325] Final clauses denote purpose. In Latin they are relative clauses, and are introduced by relative pronouns or by relative adverbs. **legatos miserunt qvi dicerent,** *they sent envoys to say* . . . (lit. *who should say*).

Ut, *how,* is the most common to introduce a purpose clause. **Ne** is the negative of **ut,** and is used like a conjunction to introduce the purpose clause, **ut** being very rarely expressed before it. **ut iter faceret Genabum proficiscitur,** *he sets out to go to Genabus;* **postulavit ne qvem peditem Caesar adduceret,** *he demanded that Cæsar should bring along no foot-soldier;* **veni ut te hortarem,** *I came to encourage you.*

Qvō is generally used instead of **ut** when the purpose clause contains a comparative. **qvo minus** (often written as one word) is the negative of **qvo,** and is found after verbs of *hindering, refusing,* etc. **qvo fiat facilius,** *that it may be done the more easily;* **me deterret hiems qvominus eam,** *the storm prevents me from going.*

Qvī (an old abl. = **qvo**) is common in the older language. **qvin** (= **qvi ne**) is the negative of **qvi.** It is often difficult to decide whether clauses with **qvin** and **qvominus** should be put under the head of purpose or result clauses. See [326].

Ut is often omitted after verbs of *willingness* and *permission,* and after **dic** and **fac;** seldom elsewhere. **fac sis,** *see that you be* . . .; **dic veniat,** *tell him to come;* **volo facias,** *I wish you to do* . . .; **licet eas,** *you may go*

<table>
<tr><td>(b) In consecutive clauses, and in substantive clauses developed from them.</td><td>326</td></tr>
</table>

(lit., *it is allowed that you go*). **licet** with a following subjunctive often expresses a concession. **licet laudem fortunam, tamen . . .,** *I may praise fortune, yet . . .* (= *though I praise, yet . . .*). **ne** is omitted after **cave, cavete. cave ignoscas,** *do not pardon* (compare [315] (c)). In many cases it is possible that these subjunctives might be classed as dependent commands; the verbs they depend on nearly all express *consent* or *command*.

The purpose clauses, **ut ita dicam,** "*so to speak*"; **ne longum sit,** "*to be brief*," and the like, are used parenthetically, as in English. The same is the case with **nedum,** "*much less*." **sumptus sufferre neqveo, nedum possis,** *I cannot stand the expense, much less can you.*

Purpose clauses easily pass into substantive clauses, and are often used in Latin where subject or object clauses are used in English, especially after verbs denoting an exercise of the will; e.g., *wishing, permitting, commanding*, etc. After verbs of *fearing* this difference of idiom compels us to translate **ne** by "*that*," and **ut** by "*that not*." **timeo ne veniat,** *I fear that he will come;* **timeo ut veniat,** *I fear that he will not come.*

[326] Consecutive clauses express a result. They are relative clauses in Latin, and are introduced by a relative pronoun, or by the relative adverbs **ut** or **qvin. tantus fuit terror ut Volusenus fidem non faceret,** *so great was the panic that Volusenus was not believed.* **qvin,** "*but that*," is used after general negatives and after verbs of *hindering, doubting*, etc.; e.g., **non est dubium qvin,** *there is no doubt that . . . .*

Result clauses introduced by a relative pronoun express a characteristic, or a result of the nature or character of the antecedent; e.g., **non sum ille ferreus qvi non movear,** *I am not so callous as not to be moved.* They are most common after indefinite antecedents; e.g., **sunt qvi,** *there are (some) who;* **qvis est qvi,** *who is there that . . .,* etc.; after **unus** and **solus;** and after general negatives **nemo, nullus, nihil.** In such clauses, **qvin** may be used for the nominative (rarely accusative) of the relative pronoun and a negative; e.g., **nemo est qvin putet,** *there is no one who does not think.*

Relative clauses of result may follow the adjectives **dignus, indignus, idoneus, aptus. dignus est qvi laudetur,** *he is worthy to be praised.* Here also belong the restrictive clause **qvod sciam,** *as far as I know,* and others like it.

Consecutive clauses, like final clauses, are very frequent in Latin where the English uses subject or object clauses, and it is often difficult to draw

327	(c) In conditions impliedly false.
	The SUBJUNCTIVE *may* be used, further—
328	(a) In causal clauses.

the line between purpose and result. Clauses with **qvin,** in particular, often seem to be final rather than consecutive, and it is often a matter of indifference to which use such object-clauses should be referred.

Consecutive clauses easily pass into subject or object-clauses, and occur with a great variety of verbs. As subject they are found with verbs meaning "*it happens,*" "*it remains,*" etc.; as object they are most common with verbs meaning "*accomplish,*" "*bring it about*"; **facio, efficio,** etc. In a few cases they pass into appositive clauses.

[**327**] Conditions impliedly false take the secondary tenses,— the imperfect for present time, the pluperfect for past time. **si tu hic esses,** *if you were in my place* (but you are not); **si adfuissem,** *if I had been there* (but I was not). Conditional clauses are introduced by **si,** *if,* and its compounds, or by a relative pronoun or adverb. Sometimes the conjunction **si** is omitted, as in English; *e.g.,* **fecisses,** *had you done* (= *if you had done*).

The primary tenses of the subjunctive are often used in conditions though the supposed case may be false, because the speaker or writer chooses to represent it as possible; *e.g.,* **tu si hic sis, aliter sentias,** *if you were I, you would feel differently* (more strictly, *if you should be in my case,* implying that such a thing is possible). Such are really future conditions in form, and come under 331.

Conjunctions meaning "*as if*" (**ac si, qvasi, qvamsi, tanqvam si, ut si, velut si,** ceu, also **tanqvam** and **velut** when si is omitted) are used with an ellipsis of the verb on which the condition depends. **ac si scripsisses,** *as (would be the case) if you had written;* **velut haud ulla mora futura esset,** *as if there were to be no delay.* Here too the primary tenses are often used, though the connection shows that the supposed case is untrue; *e.g.,* **tanqvam si claudus sim,** *as if I were lame* (i.e., *as would be the case if I should be lame*); **jacent tanqvam sine animo sint,** *they lie as if they were dead* (i.e., *as they would lie, if it should turn out that they are dead.* **essent** would imply that the speaker thinks that they are not dead).

[**328**] Causal clauses after a relative pronoun or **cum** take the subjunctive regularly, except in old Latin; after **qvoniam,** usually. After other causal conjunctions the indicative is used if the speaker or writer gives the cause on his own authority, the subjunctive if he gives it as the allegation of some one else. **qvae cum ita sint,** *since this is so;* **Panaetius laudat Africanum qvod fuerit abstinens,** *Panætius praises Africanus because he*

(*b*) In concessive clauses.	**329**
(*c*) In temporal clauses.	**330**

was (*as Panœtius says*) *temperate.* (Here Panætius is made responsible for the statement that Africanus was temperate; **qvod fuit** would make the statement the writer's.) The relative pronoun introducing a causal clause is often preceded by **ut, utpote, qvippe,** and the verb of the clause is sometimes, though rarely, in the indicative.

[329] Concessive clauses after **cum** are regularly in the subjunctive; after **qvamqvam,** in the indicative. Of the other conjunctions translated "*though,*" the compounds of **si** (**ac si, etsi,** etc., also **tanqvam, velut, sicut,** where **si** is omitted) introduce conditional clauses, and have the same construction; **qvamvis, ut** and **ne** take the subjunctive of doubtful command (see [321]); **licet** is a verb, and is followed by a final subjunctive with **ut** omitted (see [325]).

[330] Temporal clauses referring to past time usually take the indicative, except after **cum,** which takes the subjunctive of the secondary tenses; and, in later writers, after **anteqvam** and **priusqvam.**

Temporal clauses, however, in many cases express some other modification of the thought than simple time, and are therefore followed by the subjunctive. Thus:—

dum, dum modo take the subjunctive when they mean not simply "*as long as,*" but "*if,*" "*provided.*" **oderint dum metuant,** *let them hate as long as they fear* (i.e., *if they fear*).

dum, donec, quoad take the subjunctive when they imply purpose. **manebo, dum veniat,** *I shall wait for him to come* (*until he comes*).

ante qvam and **prius qvam** take the subjunctive of purpose, the clause expressing the act whose occurrence is to be prevented or anticipated, or, less often, a simple purpose, or something expected and counted on. **sic omne [opus] prius est perfectum qvam intellegeretur ab Afranio castra muniri,** *thus the whole work was finished before Afranius knew that the camp was being fortified* (i.e., *the work was done secretly, that Afranius might not know before it was done*); **anteqvam pronuntient, vocem sensim excitant,** *they excite the voice gradually, before they declaim* (i.e., *with the purpose or expectation of afterwards declaiming*).

The subjunctive is used in the same way with expressions that mean "*sooner than,*" "*rather than,*"—e.g., **potius qvam, citius qvam, libentius qvam,**—though the idea of time has disappeared. **depugna, potius qvam servias,** *fight it out rather than be a slave* (i.e., *in order not to be a slave*). But **ut** is sometimes inserted after **qvam** in such clauses.

331   (*d*) In future conditions.

332   (*e*) In general conditions.

333   (*f*) In clauses dependent on a subjunctive.

Use of the Non-Finite Verb-Forms.

334   The infinitive is a verbal noun, originally in the dative case. It has become, however, in Latin, an indeclinable noun, and may replace any case in construction, but is restricted to certain uses.

Temporal clauses may take the subjunctive also, if they have the same force as conditional clauses which would take the subjunctive.

[331] A future condition is one, the truth or falsity of which will appear, if at all, in the future. The future (or future perfect) indicative may be used in such, or the present (or perfect) subjunctive. The latter has much the same force as in a doubtful statement, and leaves the hypothesis doubtful. It corresponds to the English "*should.*" **sī veniat,** *if he should come ;* **sī probus sit,** *if he (should prove to) be honest.*

A relative or a temporal clause sometimes has the same force as a future condition, and takes the same construction.

[332] General conditions are such as refer to all time, and limit statements of general truths. **memoria minuitur, nisi eam exerceas,** *the memory weakens, unless one exercises it.* The indicative is more common in such, except when the subject is an indefinite person, as in the quotation.

In later writers the secondary tenses of the subjunctive are sometimes used in conditional clauses (and in relative or temporal clauses implying a condition) to express a repeated action. **ubi dīxisset,** *whenever he had said* ...; **qvocunqve sē intulisset,** *wherever he went* ..., etc.

[333] Clauses dependent on a subjunctive are attracted into the subjunctive if they contain an essential part of the thought, or give a modification of the verb they limit, which could not be omitted without an essential change of the idea. Restrictive clauses, for example, become subjunctive if dependent on a subjunctive, while those which are simply explanatory or parenthetical remain in the indicative. **non pugnabo quominus utrum velis eligas,** *I shall not oppose your taking which you will.* Here the speaker gives his opponent the privilege of taking either of two alternatives; (**vis** would imply that the opponent had in some way shown his

The INFINITIVE is used —

(*a*) As an indirect object.	**335**
(*b*) To express purpose.	**336**
(*c*) As subject of a verb.	**337**
(*d*) As object of a verb.	**338**

choice, and that the speaker did not object to his taking *that one*, though he might not consent to his taking *the other*). The clause **utrum velis** is essential to the thought, because without it the speaker simply allows the taking of *one* alternative; with it, he allows the taking of *either* one.

In many cases, however, the subjunctive seems to be simply potential. See 316. Thus, **utrum velis** above, may be translated "*whichever you may wish.*" Whether the speaker shall use the indicative or the subjunctive in such clauses is to a great extent a matter of choice, as he may prefer to make the statement more or less positive in form.

[335] The infinitive of indirect object (also called *complementary* infinitive) follows intransitive verbs which require a second action of the same subject to make their sense complete, and the passive voice of verbs of *saying* and *thinking*, when they have a personal subject. **possum videre,** *I can see* (lit., *I am powerful for seeing*); **Caesar dicitur advenisse,** *Cæsar is said to have arrived.* In some cases it is difficult to draw the line between the infinitive of indirect object and that of direct object. If the verb is transitive, the infinitive after it may be called direct object, but unless it takes a direct object in other constructions, the infinitive should be called indirect object. The English translation is no guide in such a case, as many verbs are transitive in English, while verbs of the same meaning are intransitive in Latin.

[336] This use is rare and poetical. It corresponds to the dative of purpose.

[337] The infinitive of subject or object is used as in English, but is far more common, being especially frequent with verbs of *saying* or *thinking.* It is thus used either with or without an expressed subject. **errare est humanum,** *to err is human;* **biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt,** *they thought that two years was enough for them.* For this infinitive the English often uses a subject or object clause with "*that,*" as in the example given.

[338] When the subject of an object infinitive is the same as that of the verb that governs it, this subject (**se**) is sometimes omitted. **quae**

339	(*e*) As an appositive or predicate noun.
340	(*f*) To limit nouns or adjectives as genitive, accusative or ablative.
341	(*g*) In exclamatory phrases.
342	(*h*) In vivid narration as a substitute for the indicative.

imperarentur, facere dixerunt, *they said that they were doing what was ordered.* (But **se facere** is more common.) In such cases, the predicate noun or adjective is usually attracted into the nominative. See [255].

[339] **id nuntiatum est eos conari,** *this news was brought, (namely) that they were trying ....* An infinitive is frequent in apposition with **hoc, id, illud,** etc., used as subject or object, where the infinitive itself might stand as subject or object. (Compare, in English, "*it is human to err,*" with "*to err is human.*") As a predicate-noun, the infinitive has nothing peculiar. **vivere est cogitare,** *living is thinking.*

[340] Rare and chiefly poetic. **tempus est cogitare,** *it is time to think;* **dignus amari,** *worthy to be loved;* **parati certare,** *ready to fight;* **certus ire,** *resolved to go.* The gerund or a derivative noun is generally used in such cases; **dignus amore, parati ad certandum, certus eundi.** In a few cases, it stands with a participle as ablative absolute, limiting the whole statement. See [307].

Many nouns and adjectives with the verb "be" have the force of verbs of saying or thinking, and take an infinitive which has the same force as an object infinitive. Thus, **auctor sum,** *I assert;* **sum dolore affectus,** *I am sorry,* etc. The infinitive after such seems to be object of the verbal notion implied, not depending directly on the noun or adjective, but governed by the verbal force of the phrase. It may be likened to the use of a direct object of a noun or adjective. See [262].

[341] The *exclamatory* infinitive may be compared with the nominative and accusative in exclamations. See 259 and 264. It is sometimes introduced by the interrogative particle -ne. **hoc non videre!** *not to see this!* **mene desistere!** *that I should cease!*

[342] Called *historical* infinitive. Occasionally found in rapid narration as a substitute for the present or imperfect indicative, and takes its subject in the nominative. **Caesar frumentum flagitare** (= **flagitabat**), *Cæsar kept demanding the corn.*

The PARTICIPLES are verbal adjectives, like the English participles.   They are used — **343**

   (*a*) As simple adjectives, to limit nouns. **344**

   (*b*) As predicate adjectives with **sum,** to make the periphrastic conjugations. **345**

   (*c*) With the force of clauses. **346**

The passive participles, when used as simple adjectives to limit nouns, often express a complex idea **347**

[344] **furens regina,** *the raging queen;* **urbs matura peritura,** *a city destined soon to fall;* **fessi milites,** *wearied soldiers;* **hostis timendus,** *a fearful foe.* This use is most common with the present active and perfect passive participles. Some participles become adjectives altogether in force and construction.

The passive participles, in particular the present passive, when used as adjectives often have the force of the English verbal adjectives in -*able;* *e.g.,* **acceptus,** *acceptable;* **forma expetenda,** *desirable;* **sacra non adeunda,** *unapproachable;* **vix numeranda,** *almost innumerable.*

[345] This use is rare with the present active participle (where it makes a form equivalent to the present active of the verb; **amans est = amat**).

[346] This use is very common with the present active and perfect passive participles, especially in the construction of the ablative absolute, and the participle is predicate of the equivalent clause; the word it limits, subject. The participle thus used may have the force of a relative clause, modifying only the word it limits, but more frequently it modifies the whole statement and is equivalent to a temporal, causal, concessive, conditional, or (rarely) final clause; sometimes to an independent clause. **his rebus nunciatis,** *when this was reported;* **progressus in Nitiobriges,** *after he had advanced . . .;* **non audent, absente imperatore, egredi,** *they dare not go out, because the general is away;* **Cadurcus, in Rutenos missus,** *Cadurcus, who had been sent . . .;* **reluctante natura,** *if nature opposes;* **ut hos transductos necaret,** *to carry them over and kill them.* The present passive participle is rarely so used, however, being almost entirely restricted to uses (*a*) and (*b*); and the future active participle is not common in this use, though it is sometimes found with the force of a final clause, especially in later writers.

[347] **ab urbe condita,** *from the founding of the city;* **vos vitam ereptam negligetis?** *will you disregard the taking of life?* So always in

which is best rendered into English by a verbal or
abstract noun containing the meaning of the parti-
ciple, and an object or limiting phrase containing the
meaning of the noun.

348   The GERUND is a verbal noun found in the oblique
cases of the singular.   It is declined and governed as
a noun, but shows its verbal force in the fact that it
is limited by adverbs, and may govern an object.

---

the gerundive construction. (See [349].)   **consilia urbis delendae,** *plans
for destroying the city;*   **Platonis studiosus audiendi,** *desirous of hearing
Plato.*   So **ejecti reges,** *the expulsion of the kings;*   **natus Augustus,** *the
birth of Augustus,* etc.   In **notum furens quid femina possit,** *the knowl-
edge of what a mad woman can do,* the participle limits a clause.

[**348**] The name "nominative of the gerund" is often given to a con-
struction, which most grammarians regard as an impersonal use of the
passive periphrastic conjugation;   *e.g.,* **mihi dormiendum est,** *I must
sleep.*   This construction resembles the passive periphrastic conjugation in
conveying the notion of duty or propriety, but is sometimes like the
gerund in being active and taking an object;   *e.g.,* **via qvam nobis ingre-
diendum est,** *the road we must go;*   **monendum te est mihi,** *I must warn
you.*   There seems to be no doubt that the gerund is a specialized use of
the neuter of the present passive participle, at a period when the meaning
and force of the form was not so definite as later.   The gerund is often
passive in force, — *e.g.,* **in res difficilis ad explicandum,** *a matter hard
to be explained,* — and the passive participle is sometimes active, *e.g.,*
placenda dos est, *the dower must please.*   The "nominative of the gerund"
seems to lie between the two.

The gerund in the genitive case, in a few instances, becomes so fully a
noun that it takes an objective genitive instead of an object accusative,
and takes the possessive pronoun adjective modifiers **mei, tui, sui, nostri,
vestri,** instead of an object;   *e.g.,* **exemplorum eligendi potestas,** *a
chance to select examples;*   **vestri adhortandi causa,** *for the sake of your
encouragement* (i.e., *of encouraging you*).   (In cases like this, however, the
genitives **mei, vestri,** etc., may be considered objective genitives like
exemplorum above.)

The gerund is limited in its use as follows : —

In the genitive it may be a possessive, an appositive, or an objective
genitive.   In the dative it may be an indirect object, or may limit adjec-

The gerund of transitive verbs is rare, and its place is usually supplied by the gerundive. This consists of a noun and the present passive participle in agreement with it (the two words expressing the complex idea spoken of in 347). | **349**

The SUPINE is a verbal noun, found only in the accusative and ablative singular. | **350**

The accusative of the supine is used with verbs of motion to express purpose. | **351**

---

tives. In the accusative it may follow a few prepositions (**ad** most often). In the ablative it may denote means or specification, rarely separation, manner or circumstance, and may also follow prepositions (**in** most often).

[349] The name gerundive is often used of the participle only, and the noun and participle taken together are then called the "gerundive construction."

The gerundive is less restricted in its use than the gerund. Besides the uses of the gerund it is used in the genitive (with **causā** omitted?) to express purpose; in the dative to express purpose, see [272]; in the accusative as direct object; in the ablative to express manner or the standard of comparison. A few illustrations of both gerund and gerundive are added:—

GENITIVE. **cupidus te videndi,** *desirous of seeing you;* **finem facit dicendi,** *he makes an end of speaking;* **sui muniendi non Galliae impugnandae causā,** *for the sake of defending himself, not of attacking Gaul.*

DATIVE. **scribendo dat operam,** *he gives attention to writing;* **rubens ferrum non est habile tundendo,** *not good for forging.* So in the phrase **non esse solvendo,** *to be unable to pay,* and the like.

ACCUSATIVE. **non vacuus sum ad narrandum,** *I have no leisure for story-telling;* **ad eum oppugnandum,** *to attack him;* **signum collocandum consules locaverunt,** *the consuls let out the (job of) setting up the statue;* **aedem habuit tuendam,** *he had the care of the temple.*

ABLATIVE. **in dando munificus,** *free in giving;* **alitur vitium tegendo,** *a vice is nourished by hiding it;* **de contemnenda morte,** *concerning contempt for death;* **de liberis educandis,** *of the training of children.* So, often in the titles of philosophical treatises.

[351] **venit auxilium postulatum,** *he came to ask help.* This is strictly an accusative of limit. (See 265.)

With **ire,** "*go*," the accusative of the supine make a construction nearly the same in force as the future tense; *e.g.,* **imusne sessum?** (*are we going*

---

352 . The ablative of the supine is used as an ablative of specification.   (See 300.)

---

to sit?) *shall we take a seat?*   By putting the infinitive **ire** in the passive, a form is obtained to supply the lacking future infinitive passive; *e.g.*, **putat se visum iri,** *he thinks he will be seen.*

[352] **horribile visu!** *fearful to see!*   **mirabile dictu!** *strange to tell!* In some of its uses the ablative of the supine seems to approach the meaning of a dative, and may be so called if one prefers.   The form may be in either case.

With **opus** the ablative of the supine seems to come under the head of means rather than specification.   See [297].

PART V.

THE LAWS OF VERSE IN LATIN.

——◦◦——

Quantity.

Latin versification is based on a regular succession **353** of long and short syllables. Quantity is therefore usually treated in connection with versification.

General rules of quantity are such as apply to all **354** syllables. (They have been given, 14–18.)

Special rules of quantity are such as apply only to **355** particular syllables. In Latin we have special rules of quantity for final vowels of stems and for suffix-vowels.

The original quantity of final vowels of stems and **356** of suffix-vowels has been changed in many instances by certain tendencies affecting final syllables; viz.: —

---

[353] The system of versification described here was borrowed with slight modifications from the Greek poets, and was in use during and after the classical period. An older system, called Saturnian, is found in fragments of the older Latin, in epitaphs, etc., but is not found in literature.

[354] The rules for syllables, long or short by position, do not always apply in the comedies; syllables are treated as short in many cases, though their vowels are followed by two consonants. This is especially the case before final -s, which had but a slight sound in old Latin.

In older Latin also, many of the special rules of quantity which follow are not applicable, as the tendencies spoken of had not taken effect so fully as later. In most cases the difference consists in the use of a vowel as long which is shortened in the later language. In a few cases the later poets have followed the older quantity, in imitation of the older writers.

[356] These are called tendencies, and not rules, because they do not act systematically but affect certain words and leave others untouched.

357   1. A tendency to shorten final open vowels.

358   2. A tendency to shorten vowels before final **-m, -r**
and -t.

359   3. A tendency to lengthen final close vowels.

360   4. A tendency to lengthen open vowels before
final **-s.**

361   5. A tendency to lengthen accented monosyllables.

362   6. A tendency to lengthen the vowel of a final syl-
lable if an inflectional letter has been dropped.

363   These tendencies seem to be allowed freer play, or
to be restricted in their effect, when for metrical con-
venience it is desirable to use a long syllable or a
short one instead of the reverse.

It is probable that some old law of accent is at the bottom of most of
them. Their influence is more often negative than positive, *i.e.*, they act
as a restraint on certain syllables that would otherwise be more liable to
change.

[360] When an open vowel is brought before final -s by the loss of t
or **d**, the tendency to lengthen seldom shows itself.

[361] This tendency would explain **dās, dā, vās, pēs, grūs, sūs, vīs**
(from **volo**), **vīs** (noun), various particles, and perhaps **sāl, sōl, lār, pār,
mās**, though these fall also under No. 6. But it is difficult to see why the
neuters, **mĕl, fĕl, ŏs**, etc., should be left short, or why certain unaccented
prepositions and conjunctions should be made long; *e.g.*, why the preposi-
tion **ăb** should be short while the same preposition **ā** should be long. It is
clear that accent does not explain the difference; and we may regard this
tendency as doubtful, or greatly restricted.

[362] The inflectional letters most often lost are the nominative singu-
lar suffix -s of masculine and feminine semivowel-stems, and the suffix -m
of the first singular active of verbs. The loss of a stem-letter does not
seem to affect the preceding vowel. **vīs** (= **vīl-s**) seems to come under
No. 5.

[363] Thus **ăbĭēs, ărĭēs, părĭēs**, perhaps to prevent the concurrence
of so many short syllables, are brought under the influence of No. 4,
though usually such words remain unaffected. See [360]. A final syl-

The special rules for quantity are the following:—	**364**
I. In open vowel noun- and adjective-stems	
The vowel after the theme is short in the nom., acc. and voc. sg.; long elsewhere,	**365**
Except -ēs in the nom. sg. of e-stems. (4)	**366**
Except -ă in the nom. and acc. pl. of neuter o-stems. (1)	**367**
II. In close vowel noun- and adjective-stems	
The vowel ăfter the theme is short in the nom. and acc. sg., and in the dat. and abl. pl.; long elsewhere,	**368**
Except -ēs in the nom. sg. of i-stems. (4)	**369**
Except -ū in the nom. and acc. sg. of neuter u-stems. (3)	**370**
III. The vowels of suffixes of nouns and adjectives, when not contracted with the stem-vowel, are short,	**371**
Except -ī final in the gen. and dat. sg. (3)	**372**
Except -ēs in the nom. and acc. pl. (4)	**373**
VI. The pronouns in general follow the rules of quantity for noun- and adjective-stems of like form.	**374**

lable may be subject to more than one tendency, acting in the same or in contrary directions; in the latter case a common syllable is sometimes the result. For example, ŏ, in the present indicative active first singular of the verb, comes under 6 and 1.

[364] The numbers following the exceptions refer to the tendencies that explain them.

[365] o is short in duŏ; sometimes in ambŏ. These rules, I. and II., are rules for final stem-vowels, but the expression "vowel after the theme" is used, because the stem-vowel often disappears by contraction with the vowel of the suffix.

[368] I-stems, when they lose i and become consonant-stems, of course come under rule III.

For grūs, sūs and vīs, see [361]. Bōs is contracted.

[374] O of ĕgŏ is short; qvī (nom.) is long. (5).

In the forms unlike those of nouns and adjectives, it should be noticed that we find the vowel after the theme long in

375   The nom. neuter forms in -c,   (6)

376   The personal pronouns, except the dat. sg.;
and common in

377   The gen. sg. ending -ius.
We find the suffix vowel

378   Common in the dat. sg., -bĭ, -hĭ.   (3)

379   Long in the dat. and abl. pl., -bīs.

380   **V.** In the nominative singular of consonant-stems the quantity of the last syllable of the stem is retained, except in

381   Nominatives in -ŏ from stems in -ōn and -ĭn.   (1, 6)

382   Nominatives in -ŏr from stems in ōr.   (2)

383   arbōs, Cerēs, pubēs; abiēs, ariēs, pariēs, pēs.   (4)

384   sāl, lār, pār; mās.   (5 or 6)

385   **VI.** In the verb the final vowel of vowel-stems is long

386   Except before final -m or -t.   (2)

387   **VII.** In the mood-and-tense signs the initial vowel before -r is short when unabsorbed; the other vowels are long

388   Except before final -m, -r and -t.   (2)

[378] The same suffix bĭ is found in ĭbĭ and ubĭ, old case-forms of ĭs and qvĭ.

[385] The length of the final vowel of verb-stems is due to the absorption of the initial vowel of the sign or suffix. It is short, therefore, in those verb-forms that omit this vowel; viz., the verb **do**, throughout [except dās, dā (5)] and in the subjunctive **fŏrem**, etc., infinitive **fŏre**, and the twelve non-finite stem-forms given in [209].

In the imperative active second singular, the stem-vowel e is occasionally shortened in a few forms that are often used interjectionally; e.g., **vĭdĕ,** see ! **tacĕ,** hush ! **cavĕ,** beware !

VIII. The vowels of verb-suffixes are short | **389**
    Except final -ī.   (3) | **390**
    Except -ŏ of the ind., when unabsorbed. (1, 5) | **391**
    Except -ō in the imper. endings -ĭtō, -ĭtōtĕ, -untō. | **392**
    Except -ū in the fut. act. part. ending -tūro. | **393**

  IX. The reduplication-prefix is short. | **394**

  X. Uninflected monosyllables are long, if they end | **395**
in a vowel; short, if they end in a consonant.

  XI. In uninflected polysyllables the tendencies | **396**
mentioned above have fuller effect, and become rules,
    Except final -ā. | **397**

Versification.

Syllables, in Latin verse, are either long or short, | **398**
a long syllable being in most cases the equivalent of
two short ones.

---

[387] **E** is usually long in the perfect active ending **-ērunt** (rarely
-ĕrunt); **ĭ** is short in the perfect active ending **-ĭmus.** The occasional
shortening of **ĭ** in the perfect subjunctive sign is due to confusion with the
future perfect indicative. See [175].

[389] For **ĭ** in the future perfect active suffixes, see [179].

[390] The final **ĭ** of **-ĭmĭnī** is properly a nominative plural ending of
an old participial form, and therefore long by rule III.

[395] **Crās** and **ēn** are long; also **nōn** (contracted). **Cūr, hīc, hūc,**
qvīn, sīc, sīn, contain old case-forms.
  Qvĕ, nĕ, vĕ, cĕ, ptĕ, are always attached to other words, and are
therefore not monosyllabic in their use. **Rĕ-** is usually short (standing
for an older form **rĕd-**).

[396] Final **ē** and **ō** in adverbs from o-stems are only apparent excep-
tions; such adverbs are old case-forms. But a few of these are shortened
(by 1), giving **benĕ, malĕ, infernĕ, supernĕ; citŏ, modŏ, ilicŏ, pro-
fectŏ;** rarely other words. **ōhē** should, perhaps, be two words.

[397] Final **a** is shortened in **ejă, ĭtă, pută, quiă** (an old accusative
plural). Note as an exception also **penĕs.**

399 A foot is a combination of two or more syllables, used as the element of a verse.

400 The fundamental feet in Latin verse are the following : —

401 The Dactyl (*one long, two short*), $-\cup\cup$.

402 The Anapest (*two short, one long*), $\cup\cup-$.

403 The Trochee (*one long, one short*), $-\cup$.

404 The Iambus (*one short, one long*), $\cup-$.

405 By substituting a long syllable for the two short ones in the dactyl or anapest we get a spondee, $--$; and by resolving the long syllable of the trochee or iambus into two short ones, we get a tribrach, $\cup\cup\cup$. These are not used as the fundamental foot of a verse, but are often substituted for it, and may therefore be called "substitute" feet.

[401] It will be noticed that the dactyl and anapest, being equivalent to four short syllables, correspond to quadruple time in music, while the trochee and iambus correspond in like manner to triple time. They may be represented in musical notation as follows : —

DACTYL.	ANAPEST.	SPONDEE.
TROCHEE.	IAMBUS.	TRIBRACH.

The accent given above shows the metrical stress. Substitute feet take the metrical accent of the feet they replace, and when a long syllable is resolved into two short ones, the metrical stress falls on the first of the two short.

In lyric and dramatic writers are found other feet also; viz.: the Pyrrhic, $\cup\cup$; the Bacchīus, $\cup--$; the Cretic, $-\cup-$. By combining the fundamental feet and their substitutes are formed various compound feet; *e.g.*, Diiambus, $\cup-\cup-$; Ditrochee, $-\cup-\cup$; Dispondee, $----$; Choriambus, $-\cup\cup-$; Greater Ionic, $--\cup\cup$; Lesser Ionic, $\cup\cup--$; etc.

The trochee and iambus are not used singly to form verses, but in pairs, called *dipodies*. **406**

A verse is a set of feet or dipodies, recurring regularly, and forming a "line" of poetry. **407**

Verses are named from their fundamental foot, and from the number of feet or dipodies they contain. **408**

The most common kinds of verse are the following : — **409**

(*a*) Dactylic Hexameter, — six dactyls or equivalent spondees. Its scale is **410**

$$\_\cup\cup \quad \_\cup\cup \quad \_\cup\cup \quad \_\cup\cup \quad \_\cup\cup \quad \_ \cup$$
$$\_ \_ \quad \_ \_ \quad \_ \_ \quad \_ \_ \quad (\_ \_)$$

The spondee is regular in the sixth foot, but rare in the fifth. **411**

(*b*) Dactylic Pentameter, — two parts, each of two dactyls and a half. Its scale is **412**

$$\_\cup\cup \quad \_\cup\cup \quad \_ \quad | \quad \_\cup\cup \quad \_\cup\cup \quad \cup$$
$$\_ \_ \quad \_ \_.$$

The spondee is allowed in the first part, not in the second. **413**

[408] Dactylic, trochaic, iambic, etc., from the kind of foot ; monometer, dimeter, trimeter, etc., from the number of feet or dipodies.

[410] The cæsura (see 420) usually falls in the third foot ; less often in the fourth, or second.

[411] A trochee often replaces the final spondee. See 419.

[412] The dactylic pentameter is the same as the hexameter, with the loss of the second half of the third and sixth feet. This loss is analogous to a rest in music. The pentameter is not used alone, but alternately with the hexameter to form the "elegiac couplet." The following verses give illustrations of this use, and show the character of each kind of verse : —

> ille ĕgŏ qvī fŭĕrim, ‖ tĕnĕrōrum lūsŏr ămōrum,
> qvem lĕgis, ut nōris, ‖ accĭpĕ postĕrĭtās.
> Sulmo mihi patria est, ‖ gĕlĭdis ūberrĭmus undīs,
> mīlĭă qvī nŏvĭēs ‖ distăt ăb urbĕ dĕcĕm.

414 Iambic and trochaic verses are composed of dipodies, and verses of various length occur, either complete or catalectic (*i.e.*, lacking the last syllable).

415 The first foot of any iambic dipody, and the second foot of any trochaic dipody may be replaced by a spondee, or, rarely, by the equivalent of an iambus, trochee or spondee.

416 In comedy the spondee, and the equivalents of the spondee, the trochee, or the iambus may stand in any foot except the last.

417 In order to understand the structure of Latin verse, the following facts of usage must be noted:—

418 (*a*) A final vowel, or final -m with the foregoing vowel, is regularly dropped when the next word begins with a vowel or **h.**

419 (*b*) The last syllable of a verse may be either long or short at the option of the writer.

ēdĭtŭs hinc ĕgŏ sum, ‖ nec nōn ūt tempŏră nōrĭs,
          cum cecĭdĭt fātō ‖ consŭl ŭterqvĕ părī:
sī qvĭd ĭd est, usqve ā prŏăvīs ‖ vĕtŭs ordĭnĭs hērēs,
          non mŏdŏ fortūnae ‖ mūnĕrĕ factŭs ĕquĕs.

(For the loss of a final vowel in verse before an initial vowel, see 418.)

[414] The most common iambic verse is the trimeter, consisting of three dipodies; the most common trochaic verse is the tetrameter catalectic; four dipodies, but lacking the last syllable. The cæsura of the former occurs in the second dipody, usually in the first foot; the latter is divided uniformly by a diæresis after the second dipody.

[416] Various kinds of verses, besides those mentioned here, are found in the lyric poets, and the editions of their writings generally contain schedules of the metres used. It has not seemed necessary, therefore, to insert any description of them here.

[418] Called *elision*. It occurs very rarely at the end of a verse. Rarely, also, a vowel remains unelided within a verse. Such cases are called *hiatus*.

[419] *I.e.*, a short syllable may be used though the meter calls for a long one, and *vice versa*.

(*c*) Long verses are regularly divided into two **420**
nearly equal parts by a metrical pause, which usually
coincides with a pause in the sense. This pause is
called *cæsura* when it occurs within a foot, and
diæresis when it falls between feet.

(*d*) Metrical irregularities occur at times, as in **421**
English poetry. A short syllable is found now and
then where the metre calls for a long one, or a long
one where the metre requires a short one. Two
syllables are sometimes run into one. Such irregu-
larities are very rare in good poets.

[**420**] A *cæsura* occurs whenever a foot is divided between two words,
but the name is usually given only to the *chief cæsura* as here. The
dactylic pentameter gives a good illustration of diæresis.

SUPPLEMENT TO SYNTAX.

[*A few peculiarities of usage, belonging rather to the lexicon, or to a manual of Latin composition, than to a grammar, are added here for convenience of reference.*]

A. Negative Particles.

422 The usual negative is **nōn**.

423 An older negative is **haud**. It survives in a few phrases.

424 **Nĕ** is used in commands and in final sentences, also in **nĕ . . . quidem**, *not even*.

425 **nĕqvĕ** (or **nĕc**) is equivalent to **et nōn**; **nēvĕ** (or **neu**) to **et nē**.

B. Interrogative Particles.

426 Questions answered by *yes* or *no* are not indicated, as in English, by the order of the words, but by the use of the interrogative particles **-nĕ** and **num**.

427 **-nĕ** appended to the prominent word of the sentence shows that it is a question, but gives no indication what answer is expected.

428 The insertion of a negative word shows, as in English, that the answer *yes* is expected. In such cases **-nĕ** is appended to the negative as the prominent word.

429 **num** shows that the answer *no* is expected.
aderasne? *were you present?* **dixitne**? *did he speak?*
nonne aderas? *were you not present?* **nunqvamne dicet**? *will he never speak?*
num aderas? *you were not present, were you?*

430 The interrogative particle is sometimes omitted.

431 Questions are usually answered by repeating some of the words of the question, but sometimes **non** is used for *no*, and **etiam, vero**, or some other adverb of emphasis, for *yes*.

Alternative or double questions generally take **utrum** or **-ne** | **432**
in the first member, and **an** in the second.

utrum aderas an aberas? *were you present or absent?*

If the second member is simply a negative, "*or not*," it is ex- | **433**
pressed by **an non** or **necne**.

utrum aderas necne? *were you present or not?*

The first member of an alternative question is sometimes | **434**
omitted, and **an** seems to introduce a single question. In such
cases the question expresses some surprise, and **an** is nearly
equivalent to **num**.

an aderas? [*am I mistaken or*] *were you present?*

C. Use of the Pronouns.

The use of the pronouns is, in general, as follows: —

Ego and **tu** are used as in English, but are regularly omitted | **435**
in the nominative case, except when emphatic, as the personal
endings of the verb express them.

nos is sometimes used for a single person (= **ego**); **vos** is | **436**
never so used for **tu**.

sui is used for *him, her, them, their*, when these words refer to | **437**
the subject of the clause in which they stand. In a dependent
clause **sui** refers to the subject of the principal clause, if the
subordinate clause expresses the purpose or thought of that
subject. (For a pronoun of the third person not referring to
the subject, a demonstrative is used. See below.)

se and **suus** are sometimes used, however, referring to some | **438**
other word than the subject, if no ambiguity is caused by
doing so.

The possessive pronouns are used as in English. **Suus**, like | **439**
sui, is reflexive. (For a third person possessive, not reflexive,
the genitive of a demonstrative, **ejus, illius**, etc., is used.)

Hic means *this;* **ille**, *that;* **iste**, *that* (*of yours*), and from its | **440**
frequent use in addressing an opponent, often has a contemptu-
ous meaning. **is** is a weaker *this* or *that*, and is the usual third
personal pronoun not reflexive. As antecedent of a relative,
is qvi means "*he who*," "*any one who*"; **ille qvi** means "*that
(man yonder) who.*"

441   **Ipse,** when used as a substantive, is an emphatic "*he*," "*he himself.*" As an adjective, it emphasizes the word it limits; **homo ipse,** "*the man himself,*" "*the very man*"; **ego ipse,** "*I myself,*" etc. The genitive is used to emphasize the possessive idea of the possessive pronouns; **mea ipsius sententia,** *my own opinion.*

442   When subject and object are the same, the Latin regularly emphasizes the former. **me ipse diligo,** *I love ·myself* (not **me ipsum**).

443   The relative **qvi** has the same force as the English *who, which,* or *that,* but is used more freely, often where the English uses a separate independent statement, so that **qvi** has the same force as **et is, et ille,** or **is autem, ille vero,** etc.

444   The indefinite pronouns in general mean *some, any, one,* etc. **qvidam** means "*a certain*"; **qvis** and **qvispiam,** "*one*," "*any one*"; **aliqvis,** "*some one.*" **qvivis** and **qvilibet** mean "*any one you please*"; **qvisqvam** and **ullus,** "*any whatever,*" and are usually used in negative sentences, so that with the negative they mean "*none at all.*"

445   Many other words are used to express the indefinite idea of *some, any, a few,* etc. Their force and meaning must be learned from the lexicon and by practice in reading and writing the language.

D.   Forms of Conditional Sentences.

446   Conditional clauses are regularly introduced by **si,** *if,* or a compound of **si,** and the verb of such a clause usually takes the mood of the verb on which it depends. The dependent condition is often called a *protasis,* the conclusion on which it depends an *apodosis.*

447   There are three well-marked forms of conditional sentences, — (*a*) with the indicative; (*b*) with a primary tense of the subjunctive; (*c*) with a secondary tense of the subjunctive: —

448   (*a*) The indicative in conditions has its usual force and needs no special explanation. It regularly limits an indicative, but may depend on an imperative or a subjunctive of command. It implies nothing as to the truth or falsehood of the supposed case.

si deus es, tribuere mortalibus beneficia debes, *if you are a god, you ought to give benefits to men.*

sin autem homo es, semper cogita ... etc., *but if you are a man, always consider* ... etc. ·

interesam, si novi! *may I perish if I know!*

(*b*) The primary tenses of the subjunctive denote the non-existence of the supposed state, but imply its possibility, and refer therefore to the future. They usually limit a present or perfect potential subjunctive, but are also used to limit verbs whose meaning is such as to express a potential or hypothetical idea; *e.g.*, **debeo, possum, volo,** etc., or the periphrastic conjugation forms. See 331. **449**

si negem, mentiar, *if I should deny it, I should lie.*

defendat patrem, si arguatur, *he would defend his father, if he should be accused.*

(The perfect tense is rare, and differs from the present only in laying stress on the completion of the action.) **450**

(*c*) The secondary tenses of the subjunctive express the non-reality of the supposed case, and refer therefore to the present or past, the imperfect being used for present time, the pluperfect for past. They regularly limit an imperfect or pluperfect potential subjunctive. See 327. **451**

pacem non peterem nisi utilem crederem, *I should not ask for peace, if I did not think it advantageous.*

te necassem, nisi iratus essem, *I should have killed you had I not been angry.*

The second person singular of the present and imperfect subjunctive is used, moreover, in a general condition, to limit a present or imperfect indicative which states a general truth. See 332. **452**

mens et animus, nisi oleum instilles extingvuntur senectute, *mind and soul are extinguished by age, unless one pours in oil.*

si attenderes acrius, strepitus vinculorum reddebatur, *if one listened more attentively, the rattling of chains was heard.*

453   The conditional particle **si** is sometimes omitted.   The verb is then usually put first, as in English.

   roges me, nihil respondeam, *should you ask me, I should make no answer;* **dedisses,** *had you given,* etc.

454   So **absqve te esset,** *were it not for you,* and like expressions in the comic poets.

455   The real conclusion is often omitted, or only implied in an epithet or exclamation.   In such cases a conditional subjunctive often seems to limit an indicative, but the sense of the passage usually suggests the proper conclusion.   Here belong expressions of wishing with **O si** (see 320); clauses expressing a comparison after **qvasi,** etc. (see [327]), subjunctives depending on **debeo, possum,** etc. (see 449), and various cases where the writer prefers to put a direct statement in place of a doubtful one suggested by the form of the thought.

456   Relative and temporal clauses sometimes imply a condition, and take the same construction as the implied condition would take, if formally expressed.

E. Reported Speech.

457   Reports of speeches or thoughts of others may be made by quoting the exact words uttered or thought, or with the form changed by making the words or thoughts dependent on some verb of saying or thinking, etc.   In the latter case, the language is called "oratio obliqua," or "indirect discourse."   *E.g.,* "*He said that he had made a mistake,*" is indirect discourse corresponding to the direct form ("oratio recta"), "*I have made a mistake.*"

458   When the words of a speaker or writer are quoted in the indirect form, the following changes take place: —

459   (*a*) The pronouns will change in person, as in English, according to the circumstances and requirements of the sense (ordinarily all becoming of the third person).

460   (*b*) The tenses only change as required by the rule of sequence, 312.   But the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive in a condition impliedly false remains after primary tenses, to prevent confusion of meaning with future or possible condi-

tions, and the primary tenses are often retained after a second-ary tense for vividness or exactness.

(c) When indicatives of those tenses which have no sub-junctive (viz., *future* and *future perfect*) are changed to the subjunctive, or when indicatives of those tenses that have no infinitive (viz., *imperfect, pluperfect, future,* and *future perfect*) are changed to the infinitive, they take the tense nearest them in time. Thus the — **461**

Future ind. becomes pres. subj. (or imperfect by sequence).	**462**
Fut. pf. ind. " perf. subj. (or pluperfect by sequence).	**463**
Imperf. ind. " perfect infinitive.	**464**
Plupf. ind. " perfect infinitive.	**465**
Future ind. " present inf. of active periphrastic conj.	**466**
Fut. pf. ind. " present inf. of active periphrastic conj.	**467**

(d) The moods change as follows: —

In *principal* sentences,

Statements { in ind. (313) become infinitive. **468**

in sub. (316)   "   { inf. of active periph. conj. (usually perf., rarely pres.) **469**

Questions { in ind. (314) 1st & 3d pers. }   "   infinitive. **470**

in ind. (314) 2d person }   "   subjunctive. **471**

in sub. (317)   "   subjunctive. **472**

Commands { in imp. (315)   "   subjunctive. **473**

in sub. (318)   "   subjunctive. **474**

In *subordinate* sentences,

All verbs { in ind. in sub. }   "   subjunctive. **475**

As the first periphrastic conjugation has only an active mean-ing, when a subj. of statement is passive, it is expressed in the oratio obliqua by **futurum fuisse ut** (less often **futurum esse** or **fore**), followed by a passive verb. **476**

(e) Relative clauses, though subordinate in form, are in many cases equivalent to principal clauses, and statements contained in such are sometimes treated as principal statements and are **477**

put in the infinitive instead of the subjunctive. In a few cases other subordinate clauses are treated in the same way, if the meaning would not be changed by making them independent in the direct form. The same principle is the cause of the use of the infinitive in reported questions of the first or third person, these questions being usually equivalent to statements, and put in the form of questions only for rhetorical effect.

478 (*f*) The indicative is used in explanatory clauses inserted by the narrator, and not belonging, therefore, to the reported speech. Rarely, also, the indicative is found in other subordinate clauses.

F. Order of Words and Clauses.

479 In a normal prose sentence the subject comes first and is followed by its modifiers; the verb stands last, preceded by its modifiers.

480 Modifiers of nouns may either follow or precede their nouns; modifiers of other parts of speech more often precede.

481 Demonstrative pronouns usually precede, and relative and interrogative pronouns regularly stand at the beginning of their clauses.

482 Modifying clauses are subject to the same general rules of order as words and phrases; those which limit nouns more often follow; those which limit verbs more often precede.

483 Few sentences of any length, however, show the normal order, as the usual position of words and clauses is constantly varied for the sake of rhythm or emphasis.

484 No definite statement of the influence of rhythm on the order of words can be given, but a dislike of a monosyllable (other than **est or sunt**) at the end of a sentence or of a line of poetry is noticeable in good Latin writers.

485 Any word may be emphasized by putting it out of its usual position. The beginning and end of a sentence are the specially emphatic positions.

486 In poetry the order of words is fixed to a great extent by the requirements of metre.

G. Dates.

The year is expressed in Latin by giving the names of the **487**
consuls for that year in the ablative absolute, or by the number
of years from the founding of the city; *e.g.*: —

> *L. Pisone, A. Gabinio consulibus* ⎫
> *anno urbis conditae DCXCVI* ⎬ = 58 B.C.
> *anno ab urbe condita DCXCVI* ⎭

These expressions are seldom written in full. For *consulibus* **488**
we find *coss.;* for *anno urbis conditae, a. u. c.*

The month is expressed by *mense* with the proper month- **489**
name added as an adjective; *e.g., mense Junio,* in June; *exeunte
mense Aprili,* at the end of April, etc.

The day of the month was reckoned backward from three **490**
fixed dates, the Kalends, Nones, and Ides (*Kalendae, Nonae,
Idus*); the first being originally the day of the new moon, the
last, that of the full moon. The Kalends was the first day of
the month; the Nones was usually the fifth, but in March,
May, July, and October, the seventh; the Ides was the eighth
day after the Nones, and, therefore, the thirteenth or fifteenth.

Dates falling on the Kalends, Nones or Ides were expressed **491**
by *Kalendis, Nonis* or *Idibus,* with the name of the month
added as an adjective; *e.g., Kalendis Juniis* (June 1), *Nonis
Aprilibus* (April 5), *Idibus Decembribus* (Dec. 13), etc.

Dates falling between the Kalends and Nones are reckoned **492**
backward from the Nones. The day before the Nones was
called *pridie Nonas* (see [268]); the second day before was
expressed by *tertio die ante Nonas,* or *ante diem tertium Nonas,*
as the Romans counted in the day reckoned from. In like
manner the third day before was called *fourth,* etc.

Dates falling between the Nones and Ides were expressed in **493**
the same way, *pridie Idus Aprilis, ante diem sextum Idus Martias,*
etc. So, too, dates falling between the Ides and Kalends, the
adjective added being, of course, the name of the following month.

These expressions are seldom written in full, the usual con- **494**
traction being of the form *prid. Kal. Mart., IV. Non. Apr., VI.
Id. Sept.,* etc.; or *a. d. iv Non. Apr.,* etc.

In leap-year the 24th of February was counted twice, so that **495**
both the 24th and 25th of the month were called *VI. Kal. Mart.*

496 The days of the months are given in the following schedule:—

DAY OF MONTH.	JANUARY (also AUGUST and DECEMBER).	FEBRUARY.	MARCH (also MAY, JULY, and OCTOBER).	APRIL (also JUNE, SEPT., and NOVEMBER).
1	Kal. Jan.	Kal. Feb.	Kal. Mart.	Kal. Apr.
2	IV Non. Jan.	IV Non. Feb.	VI Non. Mart.	IV Non. Apr.
3	III " "	III " "	V " "	III " "
4	prid. " "	prid. " "	IV " "	prid. " "
5	Non. Jan.	Non. Feb.	III " "	Non. Apr.
6	VIII Id. Jan.	VIII Id. Feb.	prid. " "	VIII Id. Apr.
7	VII " "	VII " "	Non. Mart.	VII " "
8	VI " "	VI " "	VIII Id. Mart.	VI " "
9	V " "	V " "	VII " "	V " "
10	IV " "	IV " "	VI " "	IV " "
11	III " "	III " "	V " "	III " "
12	prid. " "	prid. " "	IV " "	prid. " "
13	Id. Jan.	Id. Feb.	III " "	Id. Apr.
14	XIX Kal. Feb.	XVI Kal. Mart.	prid. " "	XVIII Kal. Maias.
15	XVIII " "	XV " "	Id. Mart.	XVII " "
16	XVII " "	XIV " "	XVII Kal. Apr.	XVI " "
17	XVI " "	XIII " "	XVI " "	XV " "
18	XV " "	XII " "	XV " "	XIV " "
19	XIV " "	XI " "	XIV " "	XIII " "
20	XIII " "	X " "	XIII " "	XII " "
21	XII " "	IX " "	XII " "	XI " "
22	XI " "	VIII " " (In leap year.)	XI " "	X " "
23	X " "	VII " "	X " "	IX " "
24	IX " "	VI " " (VI Kal. M.)	IX " "	VIII " "
25	VIII " "	V " " (VI " ")	VIII " "	VII " "
26	VII " "	IV " " (V " ")	VII " "	VI " "
27	VI " "	III " " (IV " ")	VI " "	V " "
28	V " "	prid. " " (III " ")	V " "	IV " "
29	IV " "	(prid. " ")	IV " "	III " "
30	III " "		III " "	prid. " "
31	prid. " "		prid. " "	

497 The schedule here given was in use after Cæsar's reform of the calendar, B.C. 45. Before that date the Roman year had only 355 days, and an extra month was inserted every other year after Feb. 23.

APPENDIX.

—••—

498. List of Verbs

[Compiled from Roby's Latin Grammar.]

[This list contains all the verbs of the Latin language, with the following exceptions, viz. : —

1. Stems in -a or -i, which use the simple stem as present stem and form the perfect stem by adding -v. Most of them are derived from nouns or adjectives, and form their principal parts after the models here given : —

dŏno	donāre	donāvi	donātum	dŏna-
fīnio	finīre	finīvi	finītum	fīni-

2. Consonant-stems which form the present stem by adding -e, and the perfect stem by adding -u; and lack the forms from the simple stem. Most of them are derived from nouns or adjectives, and form their principal parts after the model here given : —

flŏreo	florēre	florui	flŏr-

3. Verbs which form the present stem by adding -sc, -esc or -isc, and have only the incomplete tenses, or form the perfect stem, when one is found, by adding -u. Examples are : —

gemmasco	gemmascĕre		gemma-
rŏresco	rorescĕre		rŏr-
ingĕmisco	ingemiscĕre	ingemui	in-gĕm-

4. Compounds which do not differ from the simple verb, or differ only in the usual weakening of the stem vowel, or in being defective. Weakening of diphthongs is mentioned, however.

The supine form is given, though but few verbs have a supine in use, whenever a future active or perfect passive participle is found to decide what the form of the supine would be.

Forms preceded by a hyphen (*e.g.*, -lictus) are found only in compounds.]

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUP. OR PART.		STEM.
Accerso (another spelling of **arcesso**).					
ăcuo	**acuĕre**	**acui**	**acūtum**	*sharpen*	**ăcu-**
aegreo	**aegrēre**			*be sick*	**aegr-?**
ădŏlesco (see **-oleo**)				*grow*	**ăd-ŏle-**
agnosco (see **nosco**)				*know*	**ad-gno-**
ăgo	**agĕre**	**ēgi**	**actum**	*drive*	**ăg-**
ăjo (defective. See [235].)				*say*	**ăg-?**
albeo	**albēre**			*be white*	**alb-?**
algeo	**algēre**	**alsi**		*be cold*	**alg-**
ălo	**alĕre**	**alui**	**altum**	*nourish*	**ăl-**

   alĭtum also in later writers.

ămĭcio	**amicīre**	**amici**	**amictum**	*clothe*	**ămĭc-**

   amicui, amixi are mentioned as perf.

ango	**angĕre**			*throttle, vex*	**ang-**
ăpiscor	**apisci**		**aptus**	*get*	**ăp-**
arceo	**arcēre**	**arcui**	{ **arctus** { **artus**	*inclose*	**arc-**

   In compounds, **ex-ercĭtus, co-ercĭtus**.

arcesso	**arcessĕre**	**arcessīvi**	**arcessītum**	*summon*	**arcess-i-**
ardeo	**ardēre**	**arsi**	**arsum**	*be on fire*	**ard-**
arguo	**arguĕre**	**argui**	**argūtum**	*charge*	**argu-**

   argultūrus, once.

audeo	**audēre**		**ausum**	*dare*	**aud-**

   For perf. **ausus sum** is used.   See [216] (*g*).

ăve (defective. See [235].)				*hail !*	
ăveo	**avēre**			*long*	**ăv-?**
augeo	**augēre**	**auxi**	**auctum**	*increase*	**aug-**

Bătuo	**batuĕre**	**batui**		*beat*	**bătu-**
bĭbo	**bibĕre**	**bĭbi**		*drink*	**bĭb-**

   The stem is properly **ba**, but becomes **bib-** by reduplication and
   loss of the final vowel.   See [158].

-bŭro	**-burĕre**	**-bussi**	**-bustum**	*burn*	**bŭs-**

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Sup. or Part.		Stem.
Cădo	cadĕre	cĕcĭdi	cāsum	*fall*	căd-
caecūtio	caecutīre			*be blind*	caecūtĭ?
caedo	caedĕre	cĕcĭdi	caesum	*fell, kill*	caed-

Compounds weaken ae to ĭ.

căleo	calēre	calui	calĭtum	*be hot*	căl-
calveo	calvēre			*be bald*	calv-?
calvor	calvi			*play tricks*	calv-
căneo	canēre			*be gray*	căn-?
căno	canĕre	cĕcĭni	(-cantum)	*sing*	căn-

In compounds, the perfect is -cĭnui (oc-cĕcĭni once).

căpesso	capessĕre	capessīvi	capessītum	*seize*	căpess-i-
căpio	capĕre	cēpi	captum	*take*	căp-
căreo	carēre	carui	carĭtum	*be in want*	căr-
căro	carēre			*card*	căr-
carpo	carpĕre	carpsi	carptum	*pluck*	carp-
căveo	cavēre	căvi	cautum	*beware*	căv-

cavĭtum, rare.

cēdo	cedĕre	cessi	cessum	*yield*	cēd-
cēdo (imperative) plur. cette, no other forms.				*give*	cĕd-?
-cello	-cellere	-cŭli	-culsum	*strike?*	cĕl-

Also ex-cellui. celsus, excelsus, praecelsus are adjectives.

-cendo	-cendĕre	-cendi	-censum	*set on fire*	cend-
censeo	censēre	censui	censum	*count*	cens-
cerno	cernĕre	crēvi	crētum	*decide*	cĕr-, cre-

certus is used as an adjective.

{ cieo { cio	{ ciēre { cīre	cīvi	cĭtum	*stir up*	ci-

In compounds also -cītus sometimes.

cingo	cingĕre	cinxi	cinctum	*gird*	cing-
clango	clangĕre			*clang*	clang-
claudo	claudĕre	clausi	clausum	*close*	claud-

Compounds weaken the stem to -clūd.

clĕpo	clepĕre	clepsi	cleptum	*steal*	clĕp-
clueo	cluĕre		-clŭtum	*be called*	clu-
coenătŭrio	coenaturīre			*wish to dine*	coenătŭri-?

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Sup. or Part.		Stem.
cognosco	(see nosco)			*know*	co-gno-
cŏgo	cogĕre	coēgi	coactum	*compel*	co-ăg-
cŏlo	colĕre	colui	cultum	*cultivate*	cŏl-
coepio	coepĕre	coepi	coeptum	*begin*	co-ăp-
cŏmo	comĕre .	compsi	comptum	*comb*	cŏm-
comperco	compercĕre	compersi		*save*	com-parc-
comperio	(see pario)			*find out*	com-păr-
compesco	(see pasco)			*curb*	com-păs-
concino	(see cano)			*sing*	con-căn-
consŭlo	consulĕre	consului	consultum	*consult*	consŭl-
cŏqvo	coqvĕre	coxi	coctum	*cook*	cŏqv-
crēdo	credĕre	credĭdi	credĭtum	*believe*	crē-d-
crĕpo	crepāre	crepui	crepĭtum	*rattle*	crĕp-
cresco	crescĕre	crēvi	crētum	*grow*	cre-
{ cŭbo { -cumbo	{ cubāre { -cumbere	cubui	cubĭtum	*lie*	cŭb-

cubāvi, rare.

cūdo	cudĕre	cūdi	cūsum	*hammer*	cūd-
cŭpio	cupĕre	cupĭvi	cupĭtum	*desire*	cŭp-i

Imperfect subjunctive cupīret once.

curro	currĕre	cŭcurri	cursum	*run*	curr-

Compounds sometimes retain the reduplication.

-cŭtio (see qvătio).

Dēbeo	debēre	debui	debĭtum	*owe*	dēb-
dēgo	degĕre			*pass time*	dēg-
dēleo	delēre	delēvi	delētum	*destroy*	dē-le-
dēmentio	dementīre			*be mad*	dēmenti-?
dēmo	demĕre	dempsi	demptum	*remove*	dēm-
depso	depsĕre	depsui	depstum	*knead*	deps-
dīco	dicĕre	dixi	dictum	*say*	dīc-
dīlego	(see lĕgo).				
disco	discere	dĭdĭci		*learn*	dīc-

Compounds keep the reduplication.

dīvĭdo	dividĕre	dīvīsi	dīvīsum	*divide*	dī-vĭd-
do	(see 226) dăre	dĕdi	dătum .	*give*	da-

Compounds retain the reduplication (except abscon-di).

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUP. OR PART.		STEM.
dŏceo	docēre	docui	doctum	*teach*	dŏc-
dŏleo	dolēre	dolui	dolĭtum	*grieve*	dŏl-
dŏmo	domāre	domui	domĭtum	*tame*	dŏm-
dūco.	ducĕre	duxi	ductum	*lead*	dŭc-

Ĕdo (see 223)	edĕre	ĕdi	ēsum	*eat*	ĕd-
essum and estum, rare.					
ĕmo	emĕre	ēmi	emptum	*take, buy*	ĕm-
emptŭrio	empturīre			*wish to buy*	emptŭri-?
eo (see 227)	īre	īvi	ĭtum	*go*	i-
Perfect -ii in compounds.					
excello (see cello)				*excel*	ex-cel-
expergiscor	expergisci		experrectum	*arouse*	ex-pĕr-rĕg-
expergĭtum, old.					
exuo	exuĕre	exui	exūtum	*strip off*	exu-

Făcesso	facessĕre	facessīvi	facessĭtum	*make*	făcess-i-
făcio	facĕre	fēci	factum	*make*	făc-
fallo	fallĕre	fĕfelli	falsum	*deceive*	fall-
farcio	farcīre	farsi	fartum	*stuff*	farc-
făteor	fatēri		fassus	*confess*	făt-
fătisco	fatiscĕre		-fessum	*gape*	făt-
Also deponent.					
făveo	favēre	făvi	fautum	*favor*	făv-
-fendo	-fendere	-fendi	-fensum	*strike*	fend-
fĕrio	ferīre			*strike*	fĕri-?
fĕro	ferre	(tŭli)	(lātum)	*carry*	fĕr-
tŭli and lātum are borrowed from tollo. tĕtŭli is old.					
⎰ ferveo ⎱ fervo	⎰ fervēre ⎱ fervĕre	fervi, ferbui		*boil*	ferv-
fīdo	fidĕre		fīsum	*trust*	fīd-
fīsus sum is used as perfect. See [216], (g).					
fīgo	figĕre	fixi	fixum	*fix*	fīg-
fictus, rare.					
fīo (see 229)	fīĕri		(factus)	*become*	fī-
findo	findĕre	fīdi	fissum	*cleave*	fīd-

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Sup. or Part.		Stem.
fingo	fingĕre	finxi	fictum	*form*	fĭg-
flaveo	flavēre			*be yellow*	flav-?
fleo	flēre	flēvi	flētum	*weep*	fle-
flecto	flectĕre	flexi	flexum	*bend*	flect-
-flīgo	-flĭgĕre	-flixi	-flictum	*strike*	flīg-
fluo	fluĕre	fluxi	fluxum	*flow*	flŭgv-
fŏdio	fodĕre	fōdi	fossum	*dig*	fŏd-

fodīri old.

foeteo	foetēre			*be fetid*	foet-?
[for] see [235]	fāri		fātum	*speak*	fa-
fŏveo	fovēre	fōvi	fōtum	*cherish*	fŏv-
frango	frangere	frēgi	fractum	*break*	frăg-
frĕmo	fremĕre	fremui	fremĭtum	*roar*	frĕm-
frendo	frendēre		fressum	*gnash*	frend-

Also frēsum.

frīco	frīcāre	fricui	frictum	*rub*	frīc-

Also fricātum.

frīgeo	frigēre	frixi		*be cold*	frīg-
frīgo	frigĕre		frictum	*roast*	frīg-
frondeo	frondēre			*leaf*	frond-?
fruor	frui		fructum	*enjoy*	fru-, frug-?

fruĭtus once, fruĭtūrus once.

fŭgio	fugĕre	fūgi	fugĭtum	*flee*	fŭg-
fulcio	fulcīre	fulsi	fultum	*prop*	fulc-
{ fulgeo	{ fulgēre	fulsi		*shine*	fulg-
{ fulgo	{ fulgĕre				
fundo	fundĕre	fūdi	fūsum	*pour*	fŭd-
fungor	fungi		functus	*discharge*	fung-
[fuo] (see sum)		fui	fŭtūrus	*be*	fu-
fŭro	furĕre			*rage*	fŭr-

Gaudeo	gaudēre		gāvīsum	*be glad*	gāvĭd-

gavīsus sum is used as perfect. See [216], (*g*).

gĕmo	gemĕre	gemui	gemĭtum	*groan*	gĕm-
gĕro	gerĕre	gessi	gestum	*carry*	gĕs-
gigno	gignĕre	gĕnui	genĭtum	*beget*	gĕn-

gigno for gigĕno. gĕno is old.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUP. OR PART.		STEM.
glisco	gliscĕre			*swell*	gli-
glōcio	glocīre			*cluck*	gloci-?
glūbo	glubĕre		gluptum	*peel*	glūb-
grădior	gradi		gressus	*step*	grăd-

In compounds -gredīri is found.

-gruo	-gruĕre	-grui		*?*	gru-

Hăbeo	habēre	habui	habĭtum	*have*	hăb-
haereo	haerēre	haesi	haesum	*stick*	haes-
haurio	haurīre	hausi	haustum	*drain*	haus-
hĕbeo	hebēre			*be blunt*	hĕb-?
hisco	hiscĕre			*yawn*	hi-
hūmeo	humēre			*be moist*	hum-?

-icio (for jacio in compounds).

Ico?	icĕre	Ici	ictum	*strike*	Ic-
imbuo	imbuĕre	imbui	imbūtum	*imbue*	imbu-
incesso	incessĕre	incessīvi		*attack*	incess-i-
indulgeo	indulgēre	indulsi		*yield*	indulg-

indultum, late.

induo	induĕre	indui	indūtum	*put on*	indu-
ĭneptio	ineptīre			*trifle*	ĭnepti-?
infit (no other form)				*begins*	?
inqvam (see [235])		inqvii		*quoth*	inqvi-?
intellĕgo (see lego)				*understand*	intel-lĕg-
Irascor	irasci		irātus	*be angry*	ira-

Jăceo	jacēre	jacui	jacĭtum	*lie*	jăc-
jăcio	jacĕre	jēci	jactum	*throw*	jăc-
jŭbeo	jubēre	jussi	jussum	*bid*	jŭb-
jungo	jungĕre	junxi	junctum	*yoke*	jung-
jŭvo	juvāre	jūvi	jūtum	*aid*	jŭv-

Also juvātūrus.

Lăbor	labi		.lapsus	*slip*	lăb-
lăcesso	lacessĕre	lacessīvi	lacessītum	*provoke*	lacess-i-
lacteo	lactēre			*suck*	lact-?
laedo	laedĕre	laesi	laesum	*hurt*	laed-

Compounds weaken ae to ī.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUP. OR PART.		STEM.
lambo	lambĕre	lambi		*lick*	lamb-
langveo	langvĕre	langvi		*be faint*	langv-
{ lăvo { lăvo	{ lavĕre { lavăre	lāvi	{ lotum { lautum	*wash*	lăv-

Also **lavātum.**

| lĕgo | legĕre | lēgi | lectum | *choose* | lĕg- |

Perf. **-lexi** in **dī-lĕgo, intel-lĕgo, neg-lĕgo.**

-leo (see **dĕleo**).

| lĭbet | libēre | libuĭt | libĭtum | *it pleases* | lĭb- |

Also spelled **lŭbet.**

lĭceo	licēre	licui	licĭtum	*be on sale*	lĭc-
lĭceor	licēri		licĭtus	*bid for*	lĭc-
lĭcet	licēre	licuĭt	licĭtum	*it is allowed*	lĭc-
-lĭcio	-licēre	-lexi,-licui	-licĭtum	*entice*	lăc-
lingo	lingĕre		linctum	*lick*	ling-
lĭno	linĕre	lēvi, līvi	lĭtum	*smear*	li-
linqvo	linqvĕre	līqvi	-lictum	*leave*	lĭqv-
lĭqveo	liqvēre	licui		*be clear*	lĭqv-
lĭqvor	liqvi			*melt*	lĭqv-
lĭveo	livēre			*be livid*	lĭv-?
lŏqvor	loqvi		locūtus	*speak*	lŏqv-
lūceo	lucēre	luxi		*beam*	lūc-
lūdo	ludĕre	lūsi	lūsum	*sport*	lūd-
lūgeo	lugēre	luxi		*mourn*	lūg-
luo	luĕre	lui	-lūtum	*pay*	lu-
Măceo	macēre			*be lean*	măc-?
maereo	maerēre			*grieve*	maer-?
mălo	malle	malui (see 225)		*prefer*	ma-vŏl-
mando	mandĕre	mandi	mansum	*chew*	mand-
măneo	manēre	mansi	mansum	*wait*	măn-

ĕ-minui also in perfect.

| mĕdeor | medēri | | | *cure* | mĕd- |

mĕmĭni (see [235]) *remember* măn-

mĕreo	merēre	merui	merĭtum	*earn*	mĕr-
mergo	mergĕre	mersi	mersum	*sink*	merg-
mētior	metīri		mensus	*measure*	met-?
mĕto	metĕre	messui	messum	*mow*	mĕt-

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Sup. or Part.		Stem.
mĕtuo	metuĕre	metui	metūtus (once)	*fear*	metu-
mĭco	micāre	micui		*glitter*	mĭc-

-micāvi, -micātum in compounds.

-mĭniscor	-minisci		-mentus	*call to mind*	măn-
mingo	mingĕre	minxi	mictum		mĭg-

Pres. also mĕjo (for mĕg-i-o).

mĭnuo	minuĕre	minui	minūtum	*lessen*	mĭnu-
misceo	miscēre	miscui	mixtum, mistum	*mix*	misc-
mĭsĕreor	miserēri		miserĭtus	*pity*	mĭsĕr-

misertus, rare, also rarely an active form misereo.

mĭsĕret	miserēre	miseruit	miserĭtum	*it pities*	mĭsĕr-
mitto	mittĕre	mīsi	missum	*send*	mitt-
mŏlo	molĕre	molui	molĭtum	*grind*	mŏl-
mŏneo	monēre	monui	monĭtum	*warn*	mŏn-
mordeo	mordēre	mŏmordi	morsum	*bite*	mord-
mŏrior	mori See [216] (*h*)		(moritūrus)	*die*	mŏr-

mortuus sum is used as perfect.   morīri is old.

mŏveo	movēre	mŏvi	mŏtum	*move*	mŏv-
mūceo	mucēre			*be moldy*	mūc-?
mulceo	mulcēre	mulsi	mulsum	*soothe*	mulc-

Also per-mulctus.

mulgeo	mulgēre	mulsi		*milk*	mulg-
-mungo	-mungĕre	-munxi	-munctum	*wipe*	mung-

Nanciscor	nancisci		nactus, nanctus	*gain*	năc-
nascor	nasci		nātus	*be born*	na-

The full stem gna- appears in some compounds.

nĕco	necāre	{ necāvi { nĕcui	{ necātum { -nectum	*kill*	nĕc-
necto	nectĕre	nexi	nexum	*join*	nect-
neglĕgo (see lego).					
neo	nēre	nēvi	nētum	*spin*	ne-
nĕqveo (see qveo)				*can not*	nĕ-qvi-
nexo	nexĕre	nexui		*tie*	nex-
{ ningit { ningvit	ningĕre	ninxit		*it snows*	{ ning- { ningv-
nītor	niti		nixus, nīsus	*lean*	nict-

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Sup. or Part.		Stem.
-nĭveo	-nivĕre	-nīvi, -nixi		*wink*	nigv-
nŏceo	nocĕre	nocui	nocĭtum	*harm*	nŏc-
nōlo	nolle	nolui	See 225	*be unwilling*	nĕ-vŏl-
nosco	noscere	nŏvi	nōtum	*learn*	no-

The full stem **gno-** appears in some compounds. **-gnĭtum** is found in **a-gnĭtum, co-gnĭtum.**

nūbo	nubĕre	nupsi	nuptum	*marry*	nūb-
-nuo	-nuĕre	-nui		*nod*	-nu-

ab-nuĭturus once.

Oblīviscor	oblivisci		oblītus	*forget*	ob-līv-?
occŭlo	occulĕre	occului	occultum	*conceal*	oc-cŭl-

odi (see 235).

⎰ -ŏleo	⎰ -olĕre	⎰ -olĕvi	⎰ -olētum	*grow*	ŏl-? ŏle-?
⎱ -ŏlesco	⎱ -olescĕre	⎱ -olui	⎱ -olĭtum		

ădolesco has **ad-ultus.**

⎰ ŏleo	⎰ olĕre	olui		*smell*	ŏl-
⎱ ŏlo	⎱ olĕre				
ŏportet	oportĕre	oportuit		*it is proper*	ŏpòrt-
ordior	ordīri		orsus	*commence*	ord-
ŏrior	orīri	See [216] (*h*)	ortus	*rise*	ŏr-

Also **orĭtūrus.**

[**ŏvo**] defective. See [235].

Păciscor	pacisci	pĕpĭgi	pactum	*bargain*	păc-, păg-
paęnĭtet	paenitĕre	paenituit		*it repents*	paenĭt-

paenĭtūrum is mentioned by grammarians.

pando	pandĕre	pandi	pansum, passum *open*		pand-
pango	pangĕre	pēgi	pactum, panctum *fasten*		păg-
parco	parcĕre	⎰ pĕperci ⎱ parsi	parsum	*spare*	parc-
păreo	parĕre	parui	parĭtum	*appear*	păr-
părio	parĕre	pĕpĕri	partum	*bring forth*	păr-

Also **parĭtūrus.** Compounds have **-perīre.**

partŭrio	parturīre			*be in labor*	partŭri-
pasco	pascĕre	păvi	pastum	*feed*	păs-

-pescui in **compesco** and **dispesco.**

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUP. OR PART.		STEM.
pătior	pati		passus	*be ır*	păt-
păveo	pavēre	pāvi		*fear*	păv-
pecto	pectĕre	pexi	pexum	*comb*	pect-
pědo	pedĕre	pěpēdi			pěd-
pello	pellĕre	pěpŭli	pulsum	*drive*	pěl-
pendeo	pendēre	pěpendi	pensum	*hang*	pend-
pendo	pendĕre	pěpendi	pensum	*weigh* ·	pend-
pergo	pergĕre	perrexi	perrectum	*continue*	pěr-rěg-
-pěrio	-perīre	-perui	-pertum		pěr-

perĭtus as an adjective, and in opperītus.

pěto	petĕre	petīvi	petītum	*seek*	pět-i-
pĭget	pigĕre	piguit	pigĭtum	*it vexes*	pĭg-
pingo	pingĕre	pinxi	pictum	*paint*	pĭg-
⌠ pinso	⌠ pinsĕre	⌠ pinsui	⌠ pinsitum	*pound*	pĭs-
⌡ pīso	⌡ pisĕre	⌡ pinsi	⌡ pistum		

pisi once, pinsībant once.

plăceo	placēre	placui	placĭtum	*please*	plăc-
plango	plangĕre	planxi	planctum	*beat*	plang-
plaudo	plaudere	plausi	plausum	*clap*	plaud-

Most compounds weaken au to ō.

plecto	plectĕre			*strike*	· plect-
-plector	-plecti		-plexus	*twine*	plect-
-pleo	-plēre	-plēvi	-plētum	*fill*	ple-
plĭco	plicāre	⌠ -plicui, ⌡ -plicāvi	⌠ -plicĭtum, ⌡ plicātum	*fold*	plĭc-
pluo	pluĕre	pluit		*rain*	plu-

pluvit often in Livy.

polleo	pollēre			*be strong*	pŏll-?
pollūceo	pollucēre		polluctum	*offer*	pollūc-
pōno	ponĕre	pŏsui	posĭtum	*place*	pŏ-s-

pono is for po-sino; see sino. posīvi and posi are found, and in poetry postus.

posco	poscĕre	pŏposci			posc-

Compounds retain reduplication.

possum .	posse	pŏtui	See 222	*can*	pŏt-ěs-
pŏtior	potīri	See [216] (*h*)	potītum	*be master*	pŏti-
pŏto	potāre	potāvi	pōtum, potātum	*drink*	pōta-

pōtum seems to belong to a simpler stem, po-.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUP. OR PART.		STEM.
praebeo	praebēre	praebui	praebĭtum	*furnish*	praeb-
prandeo	prandēre	prandi	pransum	*dine*	prand-
⎰ prehendo	prehendēre	prehendi	prehensum	*seize*	⎰ prehend-
⎱ prendo	prendēre	prendi	prensum		⎱ prend-
prĕmo	premĕre	pressi	pressum	*press*	prĕm-
prŏfĭciscor	proficisci		profectus	*advance*	prŏ-fĭc-
prŏmo	promĕre	prompsi	promptum	*bring out*	prŏm-
prūrio	prurīre			*itch*	prūri-?
psallo	psallĕre	psalli		*play*	psall-
pŭdet	pudēre	puduit	pudĭtum	*it shames*	pŭd-
pungo	pungĕre	pŭpŭgi	punctum	*prick*	pŭg-

Compounds have -punxi.

| Qvaero | qvaerĕre | qvaesīvi | qvaesītum | *seek* | qvaes-i- |

qvaeso and qvaesumus are old colloquial forms.   Compounds
weaken ae to ī.

| qvătio | qvatĕre | | qvassum | *shake* | qvăt- |

Perfect -cussi in compounds.   See -cutio.

qveo (228)	qvīre	qvīvi	qvĭtum	*can*	qvi-
qvĕror	qveri		qvestus	*complain*	qvĕs-
qviesco	qviescĕre	qviēvi	qviētum	*rest*	qvie-
-qvĭnisco	-qviniscĕre	-qvexi		*defile*	qvīc-

Răbo	rabĕre			*rave*	răb-
rādo	radĕre	rāsi	rāsum	*scrape*	rād-
răpio	rapĕre	rapui	raptum	*seize*	răp-
rāvio		(-rausi)	(rausurus)	*be hoarse*	răv-
rĕfert	rĕferre	rĕtŭlit		*it concerns*	rĕ-fĕr-
rĕgo	regĕre	rexi	rectum	*rule*	rĕg-
rĕnīdeo	renidēre			*glitter*	rĕ-nīd-
reor	rēri		rătus	*think*	ra-
rĕpĕrio	reperīre	reppĕri	repertum	*discover*	rĕ-păr-
rĕpo	repĕre	repsi	reptum	*creep*	rĕp-
rĕsĭpisco see săpio					rĕ-săp-
rīdeo	ridēre	rīsi	rīsum	*laugh*	rīd-
ringor	ringi			*grin*	rīg-
rōdo	rodĕre	rōsi	rōsum	*gnaw*	rōd-

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Sup. or Part.		Stem.
rŭdo	rudĕre	rudīvi	*bray*		rŭd-i-
rumpo	rumpĕre	rūpi	ruptum	*break*	rūp-
ruo	ruĕre	rui	rŭtum	*dash*	ru-

ruĭturus, late.

Saepio	saepīre	saepsi	saeptum	*hedge*	saep-
{ salio	{ (salīre ?)		{ salitum	*salt*	sal-
{ sallo	{ sallĕre		{ salsum		
sălio	sallīre	salui			săl-

Also salīvi, rare.

salve, see [235].

| sancio | sancīre | sanxi | sanctum | *hallow* | sanc- |

sancītum, rare.

| săpio | sapĕre | sapīvi | | *be wise* | săp- |

Also perfect re-sipui-.

sarcio	sarcīre	sarsi	sartum	*patch*	sarc-
sărio	sarīre	sarui, sarīvi	sarītum	*hoe*	săr-, sări-?
sarpo	sarpĕre		sarptum	*trim*	sarp-

sătăgo (= săt ăgo, see ăgo).

scăbo	scabĕre	scăbi		*scratch*	scăb-
scalpo	scalpĕre	scalpsi	scalptum	*scrape*	scalp-
scando	scandĕre	scandi	scansum	*climb*	scand-
scăteo	scatĕre			*bubble*	scăt- ?
scindo	scindĕre	scĭdi	scissum	*cut*	scĭd-

scĭcĭdi is old.

scisco	sciscĕre	scīvi	scītum	*enact*	sci-
scrībo	scribĕre	scripsi	scriptum	*write*	scrīb-
sculpo	sculpĕre	sculpsi	sculptum	*carve*	sculp-
sĕco	secāre	secui	sectum	*cut*	sĕc-

secăturus, once.

sĕdeo	sedĕre	sēdi	sessum	*sit*	sĕd-
sentio	sentīre	sensi	sensum	*think*	sent-
sĕpĕlio	sepelīre	sepelīvi	sepultum	*bury*	sepĕl-
sĕqvor	seqvi		secūtus	*follow*	sĕqv-
sĕro	serĕre	sēvi	săstum	*sow*	sa-
sĕro	serĕre	-serui	-sertum	*put in rows*	sĕr-
serpo	serpĕre	serpsi	serptum	*crawl*	serp-

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUP. OR PART.		STEM.
sīdo	sīdĕre	sīdi		*settle*	sīd-

sēdi and **sessum** (borrowed from **sēdeo**) are also found.

singultio	singultīre		sob		singulti-?
sīno	sinĕre	sīvi	sĭtum	*permit*	si-
sisto	sistĕre	stĭti	stătum	*set*	sta-

Compounds keep the reduplication.

sŏleo	solēre		solĭtus	*be wont*	sŏl-

solitus sum is used as perfect; see [216] (*g*).

solvo	solvĕre	solvi	solūtum	*loose*	solv-
{ sŏno	{ sonāre	sonui	sonĭtum	*sound*	sŏn-
{ sŏno	{ sonĕre				

sonāturus, once.

sorbeo	sorbĕre	sorbui		*swallow*	sorb-

Perfect **-sorpsi**, late and rare.

spargo	spargĕre	sparsi	sparsum	*scatter*	sparg-
sperno	spernĕre	sprēvi	sprētum	*despise*	spĕr-, spre-
-spĭcio	-spicĕre	-spexi	-spectum	*look*	spĕc-
splendeo	splendēre			*shine*	splend-?
spondeo	spondēre	spŏpondi	sponsum	*promise*	spond-

de-spŏpondi, old.

spuo	spuĕre	spui	spūtum	*spit*	spu-
sqvāleo	sqvalēre			*be rough*	sqvāl-?
stătuo	statuĕre	statui	statūtum	*set up*	stătu-
sterno	sternĕre	strāvi	strātum	*strew*	stĕr-, stra-
sternuo	sternuĕre	sternui		*sneeze*	sternu-
sterto	stertĕre	stertui		*snore*	stert-
stingvo	stingvĕre	-stinxi	-stinctum	*extinguish*	stingv-
sto	stāre	stĕti	stătum	*stand*	sta-

Also **stāturus**, rare.

strĕpo	strepĕre	strepui	strepĭtum	*make a noise*	strĕp-
{ strīdeo	{ stridēre	strīdi		*hiss*	strīd-
{ strīdo	{ stridĕre				
stringo	stringĕre	strinxi	strictum	*graze*	strĭg-
struo	struĕre	struxi	structum	*build*	strŭgv-
sūgo	sugĕre	suxi	suctum	*suck*	sūg-
sum see 212	esse	(fui)	(futurus)	*be*	ĕs-

Complete tenses and future participle borrowed from [**fuo**].

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUP. OR PART.		STEM.
sūmo	sumĕre	sumpsi	sumptum	take	sūm-
suo	suĕre	sui	sūtum .	sew	su-
surgo	surgĕre	surrexi	surrectum	rise	sur-rĕg-
svădeo	svadĕre	svāsi	svāsum	persuade	svād-
svesco	svescĕre	svēvi	svētum	get wont	sve-
Tābeo	tabĕre			waste	tāb- ?
tăceo	tacēre	tacui	tacĭtum	be silent	tăc-
taedet			taesum	it wearies	taed-

tăgo (old form of **tango**).

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUP. OR PART.		STEM.
tango	tangĕre	tĕtĭgi	tactum	touch	tăg-
tĕgo	tegĕre	texi	tectum	cover	· tĕg-
temno	temnĕre	tempsi	temptum	despise	tem-
tendo	tendĕre	tĕtendi	tentum, tensum	stretch	tend-
tĕneo	tenēre	tenui	tentum	hold	tĕn-

tĕtĭni is quoted.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUP. OR PART.		STEM.
terreo	terrēre	terrui	terrĭtum	frighten	terr-
⎰ tergeo	⎰ tergēre	tersi	tersum	wipe	terg-
⎱ tergo	⎱ tergĕre				
tĕro	terĕre	trīvi	trītum	rub	tĕr-, tri-

at-terui, once.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUP. OR PART.		STEM.
texo	texĕre	texui	textum	weave	tex-
⎰ tingo	⎰ tingĕre	tinxi	tinctum	dye	tingv-
⎱ tingvo	⎱ tingvĕre				
tollo	tollere	(sustŭli)	(sublātum)	lift	tŏl-, tla-

The simple **tŭli** and **lātum** have the sense of **fĕro**, and the compound forms given are used in the sense of **tollo**.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUP. OR PART.		STEM.
tondeo	tondēre	tŏtondi	tonsum	shear	tond-
tŏno	tonāre	tonui	tonĭtum	thunder	tŏn-

in-tonātus, once.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUP. OR PART.		STEM.
torqveo	torqvēre	torsi	tortum	twist	torqv-
torreo	torrēre	torrui	tostum	roast	tors-
traho	trahĕre	traxi	tractum	drag	trăh-
trĕmo	tremĕre	tremui		tremble	trĕm-
trĭbuo	tribuĕre	tribui	tribūtum	assign	trĭbu-
trūdo	trudĕre	trūsi	trūsum	thrust	trūd-

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Sup. or Part.		Stem.
{ tueor { tuor	{ tuēri { tui	•	tūtus, tuĭtus *look at*		tu-
tundo	tundĕre	tŭtŭdi	tūsum, tunsum *thump*		tŭd-

Also perfect **re-tundi.**

tŭrgeo	turgēre	tursi	.	*swell*	turg-

Ulciscor	ulcisci		ultus	*avenge*	ulc-
{ ungo { ungvo	{ ungĕre { ungvĕre	unxi	unctum	*anoint*	ungv-
urgeo	urgēre	ursi		*urge*	urg-
ūro .	urĕre	ussi	ustum	*burn*	ūs-
ūtor	uti		ūsus	*use*	ūt-

Vădo	vadĕre	-vāsi	-vāsum	*go*	văd-
văleo	valēre	valui	valĭtum	*be strong*	văl-
vĕgeo	vegēre			*arouse*	vĕg-?
veho	vehĕre	vexi	vectum	*carry*	vĕh-
vello	vellĕre	velli	vulsum	*pluck*	vĕl-

Perfect also **vulsi,** late.

vendo	vendĕre	vendĭdi	vendĭtum	*sell*	ven-d-
vĕneo	venīre	venīvi		*to be sold*	vĕn-i-
vĕnio	venīre	vēni	ventum	*come*	vĕn-
vĕreor	verēri		verĭtus	*fear*	vĕr-
vergo	vergĕre			*incline*	verg-
verro	verrĕre	verri	versum	*brush*	verr-
verto	vertĕre	verti	versum	*turn*	vert-
vescor	vesci			*eat*	vesc-?
vĕto	vetāre	vetui	vetĭtum	*forbid*	vĕt-

Also **vetāvi,** rare.

vĭdeo	vidēre	vīdi	vīsum	*see*	vĭd-

-**vĭdo,** see **dīvĭdo.**

vieo	viēre		viĕtum	*plait*	vie-

Also **viĕtus.**

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Sup. or Part.		Stem.
vincio	vincīre	vinxi	vinctum	*bind*	vinc-
vinco	vincĕre	vīci	victum·	*conquer*	vīc-
vīso	visĕre	vīsi		*visit*	vīs-
vīvo	vivĕre	vixi	victum	*live*	vīgv-
vŏlo	velle	volui	see 225	*wish*	vŏl-
volvo	volvĕre	volvi	volūtum	*roll*	volv-
vŏmo	vomĕre	vomui	vomītum	*vomit*	vŏm-
vŏveo	vovēre	vōvi	vōtum	*vow*	vŏv-

[This list contains all words mentioned in the book because of any peculiarity of form or construction.]

ABBREVIATIONS.

abl. . . . .*ablative.*
acc. . . . .*accusative.*
assim. . . . .*assimilation.*
comp. . . . .*comparison.*
constr. . . . .*construction.*
cmpds. . . . .*compounds.*
dat. . . . .*dative.*
decl. . . . .*declension.*
def. . . . .*defective.*
gen. . . . .*genitive.*
gend. . . . .*gender.*

indic. . . . .*indicative.*
inflect. . . . .*inflection.*
irreg. . . . .*irregular.*
loc. . . . .*locative.*
pron. . . . . *pronoun.*
quant. . . . .*quantity.*
redupl. . . . .*reduplication.*
semi-dep. . . . .*semi-deponent.*
subj. . . . .*subjunctive.*
vb. . . . .*verb.*
w. . . . .*with.*

---

ab . . . . .assim. [12]
abies . . . . .quant. 383
absens . . . .[221]
accipiter. . . . . .decl. [80]
acies. . . . . .decl. [58]
acus . . . . .gend. [113]
ad. . . . . .assim. [12]
ad. . . . . in cmpds. w. dat. [269]
adeps. . . . . .gend. [82]
aedili . . . . .abl. [99]
agger. . . . . .gend. [89]
ajo. . . . . .def. vb. [235]
aliqvi }
aliqvis } . . . . .decl. 141
alius . . . . .decl. 71, w. abl. [296]
alter. . . . . .decl. 71
alvus . . . . .gend. [69]

ambō . . . . . . .decl. [72], quant. [365]
amni. . . . . .abl. [99]
amplius . . . . .constr. [296]
amussim . . . . .acc. [99]
angvi . . . . .abl. [99]
animi . . . . .loc. [273]
ante . . . . . . .in cmpds. w. dat. [269]
ante diem. . . . . .w. acc. [268]
antes . . . . .gend. [103]
Aprili. . . . . .abl. [99]
Arar . . . . .decl. [102]
Arari . . . . .abl. [99]
Ararim . . . . .acc. [99]
arbōs. . . . . . . .gend. [89], quant. 383
arcus . . . . . .decl. [110], gend. [113]
ariēs . . . . .quant. 383
artus . . . . .decl. [110]

LATIN EXERCISES

INTRODUCTORY TO

CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR,

TO ACCOMPANY THE STUDY OF

BLACKBURN'S "ESSENTIALS OF LATIN GRAMMAR."

BOSTON:
GINN, HEATH, AND COMPANY.
1883.

PREFACE.

THESE exercises have been prepared as a necessary
supplement to my " Essentials of Latin Grammar"
to furnish the needed illustration and drill for the
beginner. They do not essentially differ from other
collections of the same plan and aim, but in compiling
them I have kept in view the following objects : —

1. To provide the means for studying the Grammar
systematically from the beginning. Most exercise-books
for beginners in Latin are so arranged as to use the
Grammar as a reference-book only, giving the pupil
detached principles to hold in memory until he begins
the study of his first Latin author. In this, on the con-
trary, the Grammar is taken in its own order, and the
few verb-forms and principles of syntax necessary to
make sentences are put in the vocabularies and notes;
nothing is anticipated, and the use of the Grammar as
a book of reference is limited to portions already mas-
tered, until the pupil reaches the exercises on syntax.

2. To make the earlier lessons very simple, so as to
require as little labor as possible in translation and
leave a broad margin of time for the thorough mastery
of forms. If my experience is of any value, poor scholar-

ship in Latin is far more often the result of lack of
training in the inflections than in the syntax. The
latter is comparatively easy when the forms are perfectly
familiar and the general force of flectional syllables
understood and felt. The earlier sentences, therefore,
are very easy; exercise in translation will come later.

3. To make the pupil familiar, so far as it can be done
in a book of this kind, with the vocabulary and style of
Cæsar's Commentaries, and thus render easier the hardest
step in the study of Latin,—the transition from the exer-
cise-book to a Latin author. To this end all the words
are taken from the first book of the Gallic War, and the
sentences are from the same source with the necessary
changes, omissions, and variations. The Gallic War has
been chosen because it is usually the first Latin author
put into the pupil's hands, and these exercises are meant
to be, as they are entitled, "introductory" to it.

In the matter of orthography I have followed, though
with reluctance, the usual custom of distinguishing *j* from
i and *u* from *v* (except after *q*, *g*, and *s*), believing that
the slight inconsistency of usage between the Grammar
and Exercise-book would be less trouble to a beginner
than the difficulty of unlearning a system after once
becoming familiar with it. Marks of quantity have
been added in the vocabularies and indices, but in the
exercises they have been used only as an aid to pronun-
ciation and accent, and this aid is gradually withdrawn.

No consistent plan of noting quantity has been followed; the marks have been added to those syllables which as experience shows, are most often mispronounced. In a few instances also the quantity mark has been used to give the pupil a hint of the case used; *e.g.*, the ablative singular of *a*-stems or accusative plural of *i*-stems.

References to the Grammar are added in both vocabularies and indices to all words in the form or syntax of which there is anything irregular or peculiar. The notes are intended to cover all cases where the pupil, if left without help, would be likely to go astray, and the hints and directions for the use of the book are meant for such teachers as from lack of experience in teaching elementary Latin may feel the need of them.

Corrections and suggestions will be welcome.

F. A. BLACKBURN.

SAN FRANCISCO, CAL.,
July 27, 1883.

ABBREVIATIONS.

——◆——

abl. . . . . . . *ablative.*	inf. . . . . *infinitive.*
acc. . . . . . . *accusative.*	(M.) . . . . *masculine.*
act. . . . . . . *active.*	(N.) . . . . *neuter.*
adv. . . . . . *adverb.*	pl. . . . . *plural.*
(c.) . . . . . . *common (gender).*	prep. . . . . . . *preposition.*
conj. . . . . *conjunction.*	pres. . . . . . . *present.*
(F.) . . . . . *feminine.*	sing. . . . . . . *singular.*
ind. . . . . . *indicative.*	w. . . . . *with.*

Gr., *Blackburn's " Essentials of Latin Grammar."*

A small figure added to a word refers to the notes which follow the exercises.

CONTENTS.

—◆—

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

LATIN EXERCISES.

EXERCISES.

—◦◦✦◦◦—

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

—◆—

I.

Preliminary.

Learn thoroughly Gr. 1–51, and practise to secure a good pronunciation and the habit of placing the accent rightly.

·II.

The **a**-declension; Gr. 52–56.

Present indicative of the verb **sum** (to *be*).

Subject nominative.

Agreement of the finite verb.

Agreement of the predicate noun.

VOCABULARY.

Galliă, -ae, *Gaul* (now France).

linguă,-ae, *tongue,speech,language.*

Belgae, -ārŭm (pl.), *Belgians.*

causă, -ae, *cause, reason.*

Gărumnă, -ae, *Garonne* (river).

Ăquītāniă, -ae, *Aquitania* (now S. W. France).

ĭn (prep. with abl.), *in, on, among.*

ĭn (prep. with acc.), *into, to, towards, for.*

ē or **ex** (prep. w. abl.),[1] *out of, from.*

ăd (prep. w. acc.), *to, towards, for.*

ĕt (conj.), *and, also.*

nōn (adv.),[2] *not.*

sŭm, *(I) am.*

ĕs, *(thou) art.*

est, *(he, she, it) is.*

sŭmŭs, *(we) are.*

estĭs, *(you) are.*

sunt, *(they) are.*

---

* The personal pronoun-subject is expressed in Latin only when emphatic; in ordinary speech the verb-form shows the person and number of the subject.

EXERCISES.

1. in Galliā sum.   2. linguā[3] Belgārum.   3. in Garumnam.
4. ad Garumnam.   5. causā es.[4]   6. ex Aquitaniā.   7. sŭmus
in Galliā.   8. ad Belgas.   9. Belgae causă sunt.   10. linguă
Galliae linguă Belgārum nōn est.   11. in Belgīs.   12. in
Galliā et in Aquitaniā.   13. ex Aquitaniā in Galliam.

1. We are the cause.   2. To the Belgians.   3. Out of
Gaul.   4. In the language of the Belgians.   5. The
Garonne is in Gaul and Aquitania.   6. The Garonne is
not in [the land of][5] the Belgians.   7. He is not the
cause.   8. There is no cause.[6]   9. Out of Gaul into [the
land of] the Belgians.   10. Toward the Garonne.

III.

The e-declension; Gr. 57–60.
Imperfect indicative of the verb **sum** (to *be*).

VOCABULARY.

rēs, rĕī, *thing, matter, circumstance.*	prōvincĭă, -ae, *province.*
diēs, diēī (c.),* *day.*	nātūră, -ae, *nature, character.*
fīdēs, -ĕī, *faith, belief, promise.*	ĕrăm, (*I*) *was.*
spēs, -ĕī, *hope.*	ĕrās, (*thou*) *wast.*
cŭm (prep. w. abl.), *with, along with.*	ĕrăt, (*he, she, it*) *was.*
glōrĭă, -ae, *glory.*	ĕrāmŭs, (*we*) *were.*
cōpĭă, -ae, *plenty, supply.*	ĕrātĭs, (*you*) *were.*
cōpiae (pl.), *forces, troops.*	ĕrant, (*they*) *were.*

EXERCISES.

1. cum fidē.   2. ĕrat spes gloriae.   3. fidĕi causā.[1]
4. cum provinciae copiīs.   5. in provinciā nōn est Garumnă.
6. causārum ĕrat copiă.   7. rērum natūră.   8. cum Belgīs

---

* Gender is denoted by (M.), (F.), (N.) or (C.), but only when the
noun is an exception to the rules given in the Grammar.

erātis.　9. in copiīs provinciae Belgae ĕrant.　10. Belgae non sŭmus.　11. gloriā diēī.　12. copiae Belgārum in provinciā sunt.　13. rērum causā.

1. The glory of the days.　2. You[2] are the glory of the province.　3. The troops of the province are among the Belgians.　4. There are troops in Gaul.　5. By the nature of glory.　6. With faith and hope.[3]　7. He was in Aquitania with the Belgians.　8. For the sake of the province.　9. You were in Gaul for the sake of glory.　10. Out of the province into Gaul.

IV.

The o-declension; Gr. 61–69.
Questions.

VOCABULARY.

ănĭmŭs, -ī, *spirit, courage, mind.*
bellŭm, -ī, *war.*
Rhēnŭs, -ī, *Rhine* (river).
proelĭŭm, -ī, *battle.*
Gallī, -ōrŭm (pl.), *Gauls* (a people).
Germānī, -ōrŭm (pl.), *Germans.*
Inĭtĭŭm, -ī, *beginning.*
ā or ăb (prep. w. abl.),[1] *away from, from.*

regnŭm, -ī, *kingdom, kingly power.*
ăgĕr, agrī, *land, farm-land, field.*
frūmentŭm, -ī, *corn, grain* (often pl.).
fīlĭŭs, -ī, *son.*
pŏpŭlŭs, -ī, *a people, a nation.*
fīlĭă, -ae, *daughter;* (Gr. [54]).
impĕrĭŭm, -ī, *power, sway.*
trans (prep. w. acc.), *across, beyond.*

EXERCISES.

1. belli causā Galli ĕraut.　2. ab initio belli.　3. in agro frumentum est.　4. in agrīs Gallōrum frumenti est copiā.　5. ab Rheno ad Garumnam.　6. cum filiīs et filiābus.　7. nōnnĕ in Galliā initiō belli ĕras?　8. nōn ĕram.　9. cum fĭdē et anĭmo.　10. trans Rhenum in Germānis ĕrāmus.　11. estne copiā frumenti?

1. Was there plenty of corn?   2. There was.   3. In the beginning[2] of the war the Germans were in Gaul. 4. By the sway of Gaul.   5. By the nature of the land. 6. The glory of the war.   7. The spirit of the Belgians. 8. The peoples of Gaul.   9. From the Garonne to the Rhine.   10. Are you Gauls?   11. We are not.   12. Was the nature of the land the cause of the battle?   [No.]

V.

Adjectives of the a- and o-declensions; Gr. 70.

Agreement of the adjective.

Present indicative active and present infinitive active of the a-stem verb.

Direct object.

VOCABULARY.

altŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *high, deep.*	pugn ō, *(I) fight.*
ămīcŭs, -ă, -ŭm,[1] *friendly.*	pugn ās, *(thou) fightest.*
angustŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *narrow.*	pugn ăt, *(he, she, it) fights.*
cŭpĭdŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *desirous.*	pugn āmŭs, *(we) fight.*
lātŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *broad.*	pugn ātĭs, *(you) fight.*
meŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. 126), *my, mine.*	pugn ant, *(they) fight.*
pugnārĕ, *to fight.*	occŭp ō, *(I) seize.*
occŭpārĕ, *to occupy, seize.*	occŭp ās, *(thou) seizest.*
importārĕ, *to import.*	etc. etc.
Rhŏdănŭs, -ī, *Rhone* (river).	import ō, *(I) import.*
tuŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *thy, thine, your.*	etc. etc.

EXERCISES.

1. trans Rhēnum pugnat.   2. pugnārĕ in Gallīs.   3. regni cupĭdus est.   4. popŭli[2] amīci sunt.   5. trans Rhenum popŭli amīci nōn sunt.   6. Galli amīci[3] Germānis nōn sunt. 7. Gallōrum amīci Germāni nōn sunt.   8. angustīne sunt Rhodănus et Rhenus?   9. Rhodănus angustus est; Rhenus, latus.   10. agrum amicōrum nōn occŭpo.   11. importāmus frumentum in Galliam.

1. You are importing things into the province.   2. Were the nations desirous of war?   3. Is the Rhine deep?   4. The Rhine is deep and broad.   5. My son was friendly to your daughter.   6. Were you friendly to my daughter?   7. To fight with the Gauls across the Rhone.   8. My friends were desirous of war.   9. We are seizing the lands of the Belgians.   10. Are you seizing the lands of my friends?   11. My friends are importing corn into Gaul. 12. We are desirous of glory.

VI.

Irregular a- and o-stem adjectives; Gr. 71, 72. Indirect object.

VOCABULARY.

ălĭŭs, -ă, -ŭd,[1] another.	dō,[2] (I) give.
altĕr, -ă, -ŭm,[1] the other (of two).	dărĕ, to give.
tōtŭs, -ă, -ŭm, whole, all.	nuntĭ ō, (I) announce, tell.
ūnŭs, -ă, -ŭm, one.	nuntĭ ārĕ, to announce, to tell.
multŭs, -ă, -ŭm, much, pl. many.	rīpă, -ae, bank (of a river).
magnŭs, -ă, -ŭm, great, large.	vĭă, -ae, way, road, path.

EXERCISES.

1. totam provinciam occŭpat.   2. aliae viae sunt.   3. totīus belli causă ĕras.   4. Gallīs fĭdem dat.   5. aliud regnum occupāre.   6. multae viae in Galliā sunt.   7. Gallīs causam nuntiat.   8. altĕra viā angustă est.   9. ad ripam Rhodăni. 10. Gallis nuntiāmus belli magni initium.   11. alii pugnant, alii provinciam occŭpant.   12. erantne viae in provinciā?

1. The Rhine is broad and large.   2. We give the province to the Belgians.   3. Are the Germans seizing the province? [No.]   4. Are you not fighting in Gaul?   5. The troops are on the road.   6. Some are desirous of glory; others, of war.   7. The people give my son[3] the king-

dom.   8. In the whole province we are desirous of a
battle.   9. There is one road in the province.   10. We
give all Gaul to the Germans.   11. There is great hope
of glory.   12. Courage gives the sway of Gaul to the
Germans.   13. Was there a great war in Aquitania?

VII.

Review of Group A.
Present indicative passive of a-stem verbs.
Vocative.

VOCABULARY.

silvă, -ae, *forest.*

postĕrŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *following, next.*

Celtae, -ārŭm (pl.), *Celts.*[1]

appellŏ, -ārĕ,[1] *call.*

mātūrŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *ripe.*

deŭs, -ī (Gr. 68), *god.*

grātiă, -ae, *popularity, favor.*

ā or ăb (prep. w. abl.), *by* (to express the doer).

nostĕr, -tră, -trŭm, *our, ours.*

ŏb (prep. w. acc.), *on account of, because of, for.*

victōriă, -ae, *victory.*

vīnŭm, -ī, *wine.*

appell ŏr, (*I*) *am called.*

appell ārĭs, (*thou*) *art called.*

appell ātŭr, (*he, she, it*) *is called.*

appell āmŭr, (*we*) *are called.*

appell āmĭnī, (*you*) *are called.*

appell antŭr, (*they*) *are called.*

EXERCISES.

1. linguā nostrā Galli appellantur.[2]   2. alter Rhenus appellātur; alter, Rhodănus.   3. amīci appellamĭni.   4. filiusne tuus imperii cupĭdus est?   5. nostrae filiae cupĭdae sunt gratiae.   6. Galli a Belgis Celtae appellantur.   7. Celtas Gallos appellāmus.   8. frumenta in agris nōn ĕrant matūra. 9. postĕro diē[3] proelium ĕrat in silvā Belgārum.   10. imperium ā dīs dătur.   11. multae res in Belgas nōn importantur.   12. proelium Gallīs a filio tuo nuntiātur.

1. Your son is telling [the news of] the battle to the Gauls.   2. The one[4] people is called Belgians; the other, Gauls.   3. You call the Belgians Gauls.   4. The nations

of Gaul are called Celts in the language[5] of the Belgians.
5. Land is given to the Germans by the Celts. 6. You
are desirous of war, Belgians.[6] 7. They are fighting for[7]
many reasons, my son. 8. The gods are giving victory to
our friends. 9. On the following day[8] there was a battle
in the forest. 10. Wine is not imported into [the country
of] the Belgians. 11. We do not import our wine. 12. The
grain[9] is not ripe.

VIII.

The consonant-declension; Gr. 73–90.
Agreement of the appositive.

VOCABULARY.

adsŭm,[1] *(I) am present, am by.*
ădĕs, *(thou) art present, art by.*
  etc.   etc.
absŭm,[1] *(I) am absent, am away.*
ăbĕs, *(thou) art absent, art away.*
  etc.   etc.
lex, lēgĭs, *law.*
flūmĕn, -ĭnĭs, *river.*
vīrtūs, -ūtĭs, *manhood, courage, merit.*

hŏnŏr, -ōrĭs, *honor.*
cŭpĭdĭtās, -ātĭs, *desire, greediness.*
consŭl, -ŭlĭs, *consul.*
tempŭs, -ŏrĭs, *time.*
Caesăr, -ărĭs, *Cæsar.*
mercātŏr, -ōrĭs, *trader, merchant.*
hūmānĭtās, -ātĭs, *culture, refinement.*
cīvĭtās, -ātĭs, *state.*
sōl, sōlĭs, *sun.*

EXERCISES.

1. tempŏre belli non adĕram. 2. nōnne consul ăbest?
3. regni cupidĭtas causā ĕrat belli. 4. Cæsar ŏb cupi-
ditātem gloriae pugnat. 5. mercatōres in Germānos multas
res important. 6. cum fĭdē et virtūte. 7. Cæsar consul
lēgēs civitāti dat. 8. lēges natūrae ā deis dantur. 9. leges
totīus Galliae multae ĕrant. 10. tempŏre proelii trans
flumen in Germānīs ĕram. 11. honōrĭs causā consŭles
pugnant.

1. With Cæsar and the consuls.   2. With hope and courage.   3. Cæsar fights on one[2] bank of the river; the Germans on the other.   4. Corn is imported across the river by the traders.   5. Is Cæsar, the consul, seizing the land of the Belgians?   6. In the state of the Belgians are many rivers.   7. The courage of the traders is not great.   8. They were away from the province at the beginning of the war.   9. They are called great on account of courage and glory.   10. The courage of the Belgians is great.   11. We were absent from Gaul in the time[3] of the war.   12. The gods give victory to the consul on account of [his] courage.

IX.

Adjectives of the consonant-declension; Gr. 91–93. Future indicative active of the verb **sum** (to *be*).

VOCABULARY.

vĕtŭs, -ĕrĭs, *old, ancient.*	ĕr ŏ̆, (*I*) *shall be.*
ultĕrĭŏr, -ĭŭs, *farther.*	ĕr ĭs, (*thou*) *wilt be.*
cĭtĕrĭŏr, -ĭŭs, *nearer.*	ĕr ĭt, (*he, she, it*) *will be.*
mĭnŏr, -ŭs, *less, smaller.*	ĕr ĭmŭs, (*we*) *shall be.*
mājŏr, -ŭs, *larger, greater.*	ĕr ĭtĭs, (*you*) *will be.*
quăm (conj.), *than.*	ĕr unt, (*they*) *will be.*

EXERCISES.

1. in Galliā ulteriōre pugnant Belgae.   2. in silva cum Celtīs erĭmus.   3. Caesăris copiae in via ĕrant.   4. bellum erit in Gallia.   5. non erat causă belli in provinciā. 6. nōnne amīci Caesăris erĭtis?   7. Belgae mĭnus frumenti quam Galli important.   8. num Caesar consul erit?   9. provinciam occŭpant et belli cupĭdi sunt.   10. Gallia citerior Caesăris provincia erat.   11. vetĕris belli proelia multa et magna[2] ĕrant.

1. The Rhine is larger than the Rhone.   2. Across the Rhine are larger forests than in Gaul.   3. The forests will be smaller.   4. The Germans' courage is greater than the Gauls'.   5. Will there not be a battle in the forest?   6. My friends will be present.   7. The whole people was present. 8. Farther Gaul is larger than Hither³ Gaul.   9. The war will be greater than the old [war].⁴   10. My desire of war is less [than it was].   11. A great battle is announced. 12. The gods give victory and glory in war.   13. On the banks of the Rhine were many large² forests.   14. Some are friendly, others are desirous of war.

X.

The i-declension; Gr. 94–105.
Extent of time and space.

VOCABULARY.

pars, -rtĭs, *part.*

fīnĭs, -nĭs (c.), *end; pl.* bounds, *lands.*

mons, -ntĭs (M.), *mountain.*

mors, -rtĭs, *death.*

urbs, -bĭs, *city.*

mensĭs, -ĭs, *month.*

ignĭs, -ĭs, *fire.*

dē (prep. w. abl.), *down from, from.*

crĕmŏ̄, -āre, *I burn.*

post (prep. with acc.), *after.*

multĭtūdŏ̄, -ĭnĭs, *multitude.*

pătĕr, -trĭs, *father.*

annŭs, -ī, *year.*

pax, pācĭs, *peace.*

ēnuntĭŏ̄, -ārĕ, *I announce.*

ămŏ̄, -ārĕ, *I love.*

Germănĭă, -ae, *Germany.*

EXERCISES.

1. rem ēnuntiat.   2. res enuntiātur.   3. filio meo rēs ēnuntiantur.   4. fines Belgārum magni ĕrant.   5. pars magnā igni cremātur.   6. Caesar urbem crĕmat.   7. consŭlis causā pacem ămo.   8. filius consŭlis amīcus Caesari erat.   9. multos annos in finĭbus Belgārum ĕram.   10. dē montĕ in flumen.   11. a filio meo pax enuntiātur.   12. num

montes Galliae majōrēs sunt quam nostri?   13. pater tuus
urbīs Galliae igni crĕmat.   14. post annos multos pax
ēnuntiātur.   15. mors consŭlis enuntiātur.

1. The death of Cæsar is announced.   2. A multitude
of traders.   3. The cities of Gaul are large.   4. He is
burning a part of the cities with fire.   5. I am friendly to
the consul's son for Cæsar's sake.   6. The greediness of
the traders was the cause of the war.   7. I was in the land[1]
of the Belgians many months.   8. There was a fire in the
mountains [for] many days.   9. In the mountains there
are many rivers.   10. Some of the traders were among the
Belgians, others were across the river.   11. The honors of
Cæsar are many.   12. I was among the mountains one
month.   13. We announce peace.

XI.

Adjectives of the i-declension; Gr. 106–108.

VOCABULARY.

omnĭs, -ĕ, *all; every.*
trēs, trĭä (pl.), *three.*
ŏriēns, -ntĭs, *rising.*
ŏriēns sōl, *east.*
făcĭlĭs, -ĕ, *easy.*
ăpŭd (prep. w. acc.), *among, with.*

impĕrŏ, -ārĕ, *I order, I levy*
    (troops).
lĕgĭŏ, -ōnĭs, *legion.*
altĭtūdŏ, -ĭnĭs, *height* or *depth*
pĕr (prep. w. acc.), *through.*
mīlĕs, -ĭtĭs, *soldier.*

EXERCISES.

1. trēs viae sunt per Galliam.   2. via facĭlis est per
Belgas.   3. altitūdo flumĭnis mĭnor est.   4. trēs partes
sunt omnĭs Galliae.   5. tota via angusta ĕrit.   6. In
Galliā legio erat una.   7. tres legiōnes provinciae[1] im-
pĕrat.   8. Caesăris gratiä apud mīlĭtes magna erat.
9. milĭtĭbus fidem dămus.   10. postĕro die tres legiōnes

abĕrant.   11. altitūdo montium magna erat.   12. omnes viae angustae sunt et flumĭnum altitūdo magnă.   13. honor consŭlis major erat quam virtus.   14. virtūte et anĭmo honor et victoria militĭbus dantur.

1. We shall be desirous of peace.   2. The old forest is burning.[2]   3. I was in the city three days.   4. All the roads are narrow.   5. At the beginning of the war there were three legions in Gaul.   6. The popularity of Cæsar was less among the Gauls than among the Germans.   7. The courage of the soldiers gives peace to the province.   8. One part of the road was narrow; the other part was easy.   9. The hope of glory gives courage to the soldiers.   10. I levy three legions on the province (lit. order to the province).   11. I was in the province three months.   12. There is an easy road through Gaul.   13. All the legions were present.

XII.

The u-declension; Gr. 109–113.

VOCABULARY.

cultŭs, -ūs, *civilization; refinement.*
lăcŭs, -ūs (Gr. [110]), *lake.*
mănŭs, -ūs (F.), *hand.*
occāsŭs, -ūs, *fall, setting* (of the sun).
occāsŭs sōlĭs, *sunset, west.*
sĕnātŭs, -ūs, *senate.*
princĭpātŭs, -ūs, *leadership.*

Dumnŏrix, -ĭgĭs, *Dumnorix.*
Divitiăcŭs, -ī, *Divitiacus.*
Orgetŏrix, -ĭgĭs, *Orgetorix.*
Pīsō, -ōnĭs, *Piso.*
Messālă, -ae, *Messala.*
mātrĭmōnĭŭm, -ī, *marriage.*
hăbĭtŏ, -ārĕ, *I dwell.*

EXERCISES.

1. Dumnŏrix et Divitiăcus cum Caesăre pugnant.   2. a senātu amīcus appellor.   3. tres menses in Gallia ĕram; annum unum in urbe.   4. post mortem Caesăris in Germania tres annos erāmus.   5. fidem inter se[1] dant.

6. Dumnŏrix igni[2] cremātur.   7. in urbe Belgārum habitā-
mus.   8. habitasne trans Rhodănum?   9. principātūs
cupĭdus erat Messālă.   10. cultus provinciae mājor quam
Gallōrum est.   11. Piso et Messāla tres mensīs abĕrant in
Gallia.   12. num in Gallia citĕriōre multos mensīs erĭtis?
13. pacem amat multitūdo.   14. popŭli causā pugnāmus.

1. The Belgians are distant from the culture and refine-
ment of the province.   2. The Belgians dwell in one part
of Gaul; the Gauls, in another.   3. Divitiacus is called
friend by the senate.   4. After the death of Dumnorix,
Piso was in the city [for] many months.   5. From the
lake to the mountain.   6. Piso and Messala were consuls.
7. The depth of the river is less than [that] of the lake.
8. He gives his daughter in marriage[3] to Dumnorix.   9. The
consul, Messala, was on the mountain at[4] sunset.   10. The
lands of the Gauls are broad, ours are narrow.   11. He
tells [the news of] the battle to the senate.   12. The
leadership of Gaul is given to Cæsar by the people.

XIII.

Review of the declensions.
Irregular nouns; Gr. 114–117.

VOCABULARY.

lŏcŭs, -ī (Gr. [116]), *place.*
circŭm (prep. w. acc.), *around.*
dŏmŭs, -ūs (F.), (Gr. [115]), *house, home.*
sanguĭs, -ĭnĭs (M.), (Gr. [115]), *blood.*

ĭtĕr, -ĭtĭnĕrĭs (Gr. [115]), *journey, march, route.*
Helvētiī, -ōrŭm, *Helvetians.*
vŏluntās, -ātĭs, *wish, consent.*
hĭĕmō, -ārĕ, *I am wintering.*

EXERCISES.

1. iter Helvetiōrum Caesări nuntiātur. 2. tres legiōnes circum urbem hiĕmant. 3. domus angusta ĕrat. 4. locus magnus est. 5. ĭter nōn facĭle erit. 6. itinĕra facilia sunt. 7. voluntāte Caesăris in Belgis habĭto. 8. regni cupiditāte[1] provinciam occupātis. 9. apud milĭtes hiĕmo. 10. iter vetus facĭle erat. 11. altĕro in loco proelium erat magnum. 12. agri militĭbus a popŭlīs Galliae dantur. 13. initio belli spēs erat victoriae magna. 14. trans flumen via angusta est. 15. păter meus in urbe nōn habĭtat.

1. We are wintering among the Belgians. 2. The places are large and broad. 3. The Helvetians are on the march. 4. I dwell in Caesar's house. 5. Around the places was much blood.[2] 6. The Rhine and the Garonne are large rivers. 7. We were in the place three years. 8. The houses are small. 9. We were at home.[3] 10. There is a road through the mountains. 11. Orgetorix was desirous of kingly power. 12. The soldier was at home on the next day. 13. The legions winter among the Helvetians. 14. There was an easy route through Gaul. 15. Dumnorix and Divitiacus dwell among[4] the mountains.

XIV.

Numeral adjectives; Gr. 118.

VOCABULARY.

passŭs, -ūs, *step, pace.*	**confirm āre,** *to fix, appoint, set.*
millĕ passuŭm, *mile* (1000 paces).	**confirm ō,** *I appoint.*
pēs, pĕdĭs (M.), *foot.*	etc. etc.
prŏfectĭō, -ōnĭs, *departure, start.*	**hŏmō, -ĭnĭs,** *man, person.*
vīcŭs, -ī, *village.*	**rĕdĭtĭō, -ōnĭs,** *coming back, return.*
Alpēs, -ĭŭm, *Alps.*	**Itălĭă, -ae,** *Italy.*

EXERCISES.

1. domum[1] reditiōnis spes.   2. vici omnēs crĕmantur. 3. profectiōnem in tertium annum lege confirmant.   4. dĕcem annos in Gallia ĕram.   5. millia passuum viginti tria silva abest.   6. flumen pĕdēs undeviginti altum erat.   7. in itinĕre copia frumenti legionĭbus dătur.   8. fratri tuo imperium Galli dant.   9. duae Galliae sunt; citerior in Italia est, ulterior trans Alpīs.   10. Gallia citerior minor est quam Gallia ulterior.   11. per Alpīs in Galliam mercatōres multas res important.   12. ob profectiōnem milĭtum pater tuus omnīs vicos crĕmat.   13. in vicis amīcis copiā erat frumenti.   14. vici amicōrum tuōrum cremantur.

1. The road is[2] three miles from the river.   2. There is one legion in Farther Gaul.   3. Our departure is fixed by law for[3] the third year.   4. The Alps are high mountains. 5. The Germans were in Gaul five months.   6. After the death of Orgetorix, the war was announced to my father by Piso.   7. Three months after the beginning of the war I was at home.[1]   8. Two legions are wintering in Gaul; the one among the Belgians, the other across the Garonne. 9. The city is[2] thirteen miles from the mountain.   10. On the seventh day[4] I shall be on the bank of the Rhine.

XV.

Comparison of adjectives; Gr. 119–123.

VOCABULARY.

nōbĭlĭs, -ĕ, *noble, of high birth.*
mǎgĭs (adv.), *more.*
dĭffĭcĭlĭs, -ĕ, *difficult, hard.*
maxĭmē (adv.), *most, very, especially.*
spērŏ, -ārĕ, *I hope, I expect.*

fortĭs, -ĕ, *brave.*
longē (adv.), *far, by far.*
mĭnŭs (adv.), *less.*
Rōmānŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *Roman.*
făcĭlĭs, -ĕ, *easy.*

EXERCISES.

1. unā ex parte[1] mons altissĭmus[2] est; altĕrā ex parte, flumen Rhenus; tertiā, Rhodănus.   2. flumĭna latissĭma multa sunt.   3. Piso in Helvetiis hiĕmat.   4. tempŏre belli magnus est honor milĭtum.   5. a senātu popŭli Romāni amīcus appellātur.   6. apud Romānos in ripa flumĭnis aderāmus.   7. difficillĭmum est[3] res in Belgas importāre. 8. itinĕra per Alpīs in Galliam erant.   9. altitūdo montium magna est.   10. via non est alia.

1. Among the Helvetians Orgetorix was far the noblest. 2. The Belgians are the bravest of all the Gauls.   3. To seize all Gaul is difficult.   4. The journey is very difficult. 5. There are many very high mountains in Gaul.   6. There are rivers in Gaul deeper than the Rhone.   7. The Rhine is broader than the Rhone.   8. The route through the Alps is harder.   9. We fight with the Romans.   10. The Germans are braver than the Gauls.   11. It is more difficult[3] to fight with the Romans than with the Belgians.

XVI.

Irregular comparison; Gr. [123].

VOCABULARY.

bŏnŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *good.*

mălŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *bad.*

parvŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *small.*

sĕnex (Gr. [115]), *old.*

jŭvĕnĭs (Gr. [96]), *young.*

extĕrŭs, -ă, -ŭm,[1] *outside, outer.*

duŏ, -ae, -ŏ (Gr. [72]), *two.*

infĕrŭs, -ă, -ŭm,[1] *lower, inferior.*

supĕrŭs, -a, -um,[1] *upper.*

intĕriŏr; intĭmŭs, *inner; inmost.*

priŏr; primŭs, *former; first.*

prŏpriŏr; proxĭmŭs, *nearer; nearest, next.*

ultĕriŏr; ultĭmŭs, *further, furthest.*

Sēquănī, -ōrŭm, *Sequanians* (a tribe).

confirmō, -ārĕ, *make* (peace).

EXERCISES.

1. ad inferiōrem partem flumĭnis Rheni.   2. cum proxĭmis civitatĭbus pacem confirmātis.   3. erant itinĕra duo; unum per Sequănos, angustum et difficĭle, altĕrum per provinciam nostram.   4. quam[2] maxĭmis itinerĭbus.   5. quam plurĭmas urbīs occŭpant.   6. tres partes[3] Helvetiōrum trans Rhodănum sunt.   7. per Alpīs erat proxĭmum[4] ĭter in Galliam ulteriōrem.   8. Helvetii primus popŭlus trans Rhodanum sunt.   9. in summo monte[5] multi milĭtes sunt.   10. nostri milĭtes fortiōres sunt.   11. flumĭna Galliae majōra quam Italiae sunt.   12. veterrĭma est urbs Helvetiōrum.

1. Nearer Gaul is smaller than Farther Gaul.   2. On the following day, Cæsar was among the Sequanians.   3. I am making peace with as many states as possible.[2]   4. Cæsar's desire of kingly power was less than Piso's.   5. The former soldiers were younger and braver.   6. There are older men in the neighboring[6] cities.   7. In the country of the Belgians are many large[7] cities.   8. The larger part of the multitude is on the road.   9. Victory is given to the braver men.   10. The Romans are called brave by our consuls.   11. The old route is better than the narrow road.

XVII.

Personal and possessive pronouns; Gr. 124–126.

VOCABULARY.

intĕr (prep. w. acc.), *between, among.*

ĕgŏ, etc., *I, me,* etc.

tū, etc., *thou, thee,* etc.

suŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *his, his own, her,* etc.

cāsŭs, -ūs, *chance, accident.*

suī, etc., *himself, herself,* etc.

nullŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. 71), *no, no one.*

vestĕr, -tră, -trŭm, *your, yours.*

EXERCISES.

1. tu, mī fili, junior es quam ĕgŏ.   2. nostri anĭmi belli cupidi sunt.   3. principātum provinciae Caesar mihi dat. 4. et[1] ego[2] et tu, mi amīce, erāmus in silvā.   5. tĭbi nuntiat victoriam.   6. vobiscum[3] tres menses milĭtes ĕrant. 7. hostes inter se[6] pugnant.   8. victoria nostrārum legiōnum nuntiātur.   9. ĭter nobīs difficilius erit quam tibi. 10. Helvetii nos amīcos appellant.   11. vestri fīnes, amici, a Gallis occupantur.   12. omnes legiōnes nostrae cum amĭcis tuis in Belgis pugnant.   13. senātus te amīcum populi appellat.   14. castra Caesăris meliōre in loco quam mea est.

1. You are too[4] desirous of war, my friends.   2. My legion is[5] four miles distant[5] from the Rhone.   3. At the time of your departure I was with Cæsar.   4. The lands of the Sequanians are broader than our [lands].   5. Five years after the war, Orgetorix was with us in Farther Gaul. 6. It will be easy to seize your cities.   7. The Sequanians are fighting with one another.[6]   8. A part of the enemy is present in the city.   9. There are very many nations in the country[7] of the Germans.   10. The legions were present by chance.

XVIII.

Demonstrative pronouns; Ĭs, illĕ, istĕ, ipsĕ;
Gr. 127–132.

VOCABULARY.

incŏlă, -ae (m.), *inhabitant.*   saepĕ (adv.), *often.*
sătĭs (adv.), *enough.*   Ĭs, eă, ĭd, *this, that;* he, she, it.
nŏvŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *new.*   istĕ, istă, istŭd, *that.*
illĕ, illă, illŭd, *that.*   ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsŭm, *self.*

EXERCISES.

1. Galliae incŏlae ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Galli
appellantur.   2. eōrum omnium fortissĭmi sunt Belgae.
3. ad eos mercatōres saepe res important.   4. illi popŭli
proxĭmi sunt Germānis.   5. eā de causā Helvetii fortissĭmi
sunt omnium Gallōrum.   6. is locus angustus erat natūrā.
7. consul ipse abĕrat ā proelio.   8. mortem patris mei
ipsam nuntiātis.   9. ad eas res satis[1] est annus.   10. mer-
catōres ipsi res istas in Belgas non important.   11. vinum a
nobīs non importātur.   12. illīus urbis incŏlae res nullas im-
portant.   13. Belgae sunt Galliae popŭlus ultĭmus.   14. om-
nium milĭtum longe erat ille fortissĭmus.

1. These soldiers are braver than you.   2. He levies on
the whole province a large number of soldiers.   3. For
these reasons I shall be present with you.   4. At that time
the journey through the Alps was very difficult.   5. The
road itself is easier than yours.   6. This grain is not ripe.
7. His desire of honor is very great.   8. The height of
that mountain is less than [that] of the Alps.   9. Dum-
norix himself is desirous of a revolution.[2]   10. You are at
home; I am desirous of a return home.   11. I am levying
as many soldiers as possible[3] on the province.   12. They
are fighting with him on the top of the mountain.   13. I
was in that city three months.

XIX.

Demonstrative pronouns; **hĭc, īdem**; Gr. 133–137.

VOCABULARY.

consĭlĭŭm, -ī, *plan.*
castră, -ōrŭm (pl.), *camp.*
nāvĭs, -ĭs, *ship.*
lux, lūcĭs, *light.*

rĕgĭŏ, -ōnĭs, *region, country.*
hĭc, haec, hŏc, *this.*
īdĕm, eădĕm, ĭdĕm, *same.*

EXERCISES.

1. eōdem tempŏre apud vos adĕram. 2. haec via vetus est; illa est nova. 3. eădem nuntiantur ab aliis. 4. in ejusdem flumĭnis ripā urbs erat major. 5. ab iisdem nostra consilia hostĭbus enuntiantur. 6. primā luce ĕgo in summo monte eram. 7. hi milĭtes in Gallia hiĕmant; illi in vicīs Alpium. 8. pacem cum civitatĭbus iisdem confirmāmus. 9. eo die tria millia passuum ab eōrum castris abĕram. 10. habĭto in ripa flumĭnis ejusdem. 11. naves ipsae eōdem in loco erunt. 12. eo tempŏre et ego et ille casu aderāmus. 13. via illa magis angusta quam difficĭlis est. 14. in castris majorĭbus multi milĭtes eo tempŏre ĕrant.

1. The rivers of this region are broad. 2. The other mountain is higher than this. 3. I was present with you in that battle. 4. The depth of these rivers is great. 5. These things are told to me by the enemy. 6. My enemies are very many and their country[1] large. 7. The place was narrow and the road new and difficult. 8. The cities and villages are burned with fire. 9. Three ships of Cæsar himself are burned by the same enemy. 10. There was no hope of peace. 11. I give you my promise. 12. This region is the best part of the land of the Belgians. 13. This mountain is[2] three miles distant[2] from the river. 14. The same men dwell across this river.

XX.

Relative, interrog. and indef. pronoun; Gr. 138–141.

VOCABULARY.

antĕ (prep. w. acc.), *before.*
ăciēs, -ēī, *edge, line of battle.*
effēmĭnō, *I weaken; effeminate.*
    etc.   etc.
quī, quae, quŏd, *who, which, that.*
nunc (adv.), *now.*

factĭō, -ōnĭs, *party, faction.*
părātŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *ready, prepared.*
quĭs, quae, quĭd, *who? which? what?*
quĭs, quae, quĭd, *any, any one.*

EXERCISES.

1. duo legiōnes, quae in castris ĕrant, in silva nunc pugnant. 2. iīdem, qui nobiscum in acie erant, in vicīs Helvetiōrum hiĕmant. 3. quis has res importat? 4. cui victoriă hostium nuntiātur? 5. mihi erit hoc ĭter difficilius quam tibi, qui es junior. 6. Galliae totīus factiōnes sunt duae. 7. omnis Galliae tres sunt partes, quarum una Aquitania appellātur. 8. mercatores ea important quae animos effemĭnant. 9. ad eam rem parāti sŭmus. 10. domum reditiōnis spes non est. 11. popŭli qui trans Rhenum habĭtant fortiōres sunt quam Galliae popŭli.

1. We, who are in camp, are ready for war. 2. There will be a battle in this village. 3. Those things which weaken the courage[1] of the Belgians are not imported. 4. You are seizing more land[2] than the enemy. 5. There is a large number of the enemy on that mountain. 6. Across the same river there is a multitude of our soldiers. 7. Before his return from the war, there will be a battle. 8. Cæsar calls his soldiers friends. 9. They give a promise to each other. 10. On the next day they burn the village which was on the bank of this river. 11. Who is not ready to fight with the enemy? 12. What troops are in the villages? 13. Is any one fighting in the forest? [No.]

XXI.

Inflection of the verb; Gr. 142–190.

XXII.

Incomplete tenses of a-stem verbs; Gr. 191–195.
Moods in independent sentences.

VOCABULARY.

commeŏ, -ārĕ, *go and come;* with **ad**, *visit.*
spectŏ, -ārĕ, *look, look at, see.*
bellŏ, -ārĕ, *make war, war.*
compărŏ, -ārĕ, *prepare, make ready.*

concĭlĭŏ, -ārĕ, *gain, gain over, get.*
praestŏ, -ārĕ, *stand before, excel.*
văgŏr, -ārī (dep.),[1] *wander.*
arbĭtrŏr, -ārī (dep.),[1] *think, judge.*
cōnŏr, -ārī (dep.),[1] *try, attempt.*
incĭtŏ, -ārĕ, *rouse up, excite.*

EXERCISES.

1. mercatōres saepe ad Gallos commeant.　2. Belgae proxĭmi sunt Germānis qui trans Rhenum habĭtant.　3. ea comparāre conābar, quae importantur.　4. conēmur, mei amĭci, urbem occupāre.　5. nuntiāte victoriam, mi pater, tuīs militĭbus.　6. spectant in orientem solem.　7. fĭdes dăbĭtur[2] nobīs.　8. conabantur Orgetŏrix et Helvetii omnīs popŭlos Galliae incitāre.　9. hostes bellandi[3] cupĭdi erant.　10. civitas ob eam rem incitabĭtur.　11. Helvetii mĭnus vagabantur quam alii popŭli Galliae.　12. Belgae extrēmis in finĭbus Galliae habitābant.　13. regnum in civitāte suā occupābit Orgetŏrix, cujus pater nobis amīcus multos aunos ĕrat.

1. Rouse up the men of this city.　2. My sons were trying to rouse up the states of Gaul.　3. The enemy were wandering through the country and cities of the Sequanians.　4. After the death of Orgetorix the Helvetians tried to seize the lands of all Gaul.　5. Orgetorix will be burned with fire by his own state.　6. Call him, my son, the friend of the Roman people.　7. Let us prepare all things for our return home.　8. May you be called brave !　9. May they be burned with fire !　10. May the gods give you glory !　11. In their own language they are called Celts; in ours, Gauls.　12. Traders visit[4] them least often and import wine and other things.

XXIII.

Incomplete tenses of e-stem verbs; Gr. 196–197.

VOCABULARY.

pertĭneŏ, -ērĕ, *pertain, belong, stretch.*

prohĭbeŏ, -ērĕ, *keep out, prohibit, stop.*

hăbeŏ, -ērĕ, *have.*

undĭquĕ (adv.), *on all sides.*

mŏveŏ, -ērĕ, *move.*

vĭdeŏ, -ērĕ, *see.*

obtĭneŏ, -ērĕ, *hold, possess.*

contĭneŏ, -ērĕ, *hold in, bound.*

păteŏ, -ērĕ, *extend.*

Jūră, -ae, *Jura* (a mountain).

quŏd (conj.), *because.*

EXERCISES.

1. Belgae pertĭnent ad inferiōrem partem flumĭnis Rheni.
2. undĭque loci natūrā Helvetii continentur; unā ex parte[1] monte Jurā altissĭmo, qui est inter Sequănos et Helvetios; altera ex parte flumĭne Rheno, altissĭmo et latissĭmo. 3. profectio nostra in annum tertium lege confirmabātur. 4. postĕro die castra ex eo loco movent. 5. Caesar ei legiōni quam secum habēbat copiam frumenti comparābat. 6. haec in Belgas per provinciam importāmus quod aliŭd iter nullum habēmus. 7. urbs extrēma haec est et proxĭma Helvetiōrum finĭbus.

1. There are two routes by which[2] traders will visit[3] us. 2. The Belgians kept traders out of their territories. 3. I will gain the royal power[4] for you with my troops.[2] 4. The territories[5] of the Helvetians were narrow. 5. The Helvetians had narrow territories, which extended two hundred and forty miles in length,[6] one hundred and eighty in breadth.[6] 6. You will attempt the same thing as[7] I. 7. Did he move camp on that day? [No.] 8. Let us keep the enemy[8] out of our territories. 9. Move camp often and report[9] to me the battles you see.[10] 10. The Gauls hold one part of the country; the Belgians, another. 11. Aquitania extended from the Garonne river to the mountains.

XXIV.

Incomplete tenses of consonant-stem and **u**-stem verbs;
Gr. 198, 199.

VOCABULARY.

incŏlŏ, -ĕrĕ, *dwell.*
dīvĭdŏ, -ĕrĕ, *divide, separate.*
gĕrŏ, -ĕrĕ, *manage, carry on, wage.*
praecēdŏ, -ĕrĕ, *precede, surpass.*
ōceănŭs, -ī, *ocean.*
aut (conj.), *or.*
aut . . . aut, *either . . . or.*
perdūcŏ, -ĕrĕ, *lead through, build, construct.*
nēmŏ, -ĭnĭs, *no one.*
fluŏ, fluĕrĕ, *flow.*

contendŏ, -ĕrĕ, *contend, fight, hasten, strive.*
influŏ, -ĕrĕ, *flow into.*
trĭbuŏ, -ĕrĕ, *assign, attribute.*
dēbeŏ, -ērĕ, *owe, ought.*
fĕrē (adv.), *almost.*
quŏtĭdĭānŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *daily.*
fossă, -ae, *ditch.*
mūrŭs, -ī, *wall.*
cŭm (conj.), *when.*

EXERCISES.

1. flumen est quod per fines Sequanōrum fluit. 2. Belgae proxĭmi sunt Germānis, qui trans Rhenum incŏlunt, quā de causā[1] alios virtūte praecēdunt. 3. hujus regiōnis una pars, quam Galli obtĭnent, continētur Garumnā flumĭne, Oceāno, finĭbus Belgārum. 4. Helvetii relĭquos Gallos virtūte praecēdunt, quod fere quotidiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis finĭbus eos prohĭbent aut ipsi in eōrum finĭbus bellum gĕrunt. 5. a lacu, qui in Rhodănum influit, ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanōrum ab Helvetiis divĭdit, murum et fossam perdūcit.

1. I keep all men out from the province; I allow[2] no one a passage.[2] 2. Cæsar hastened into the province by forced[3] marches. 3. He hastens through the Alps with these five legions by the shortest[4] route. 4. We attribute the victory to your courage. 5. He has a large number of soldiers about him.[5] 6. A wall and a ditch were constructed from

the lake to the river by that legion which Cæsar had with
him.[5]   7. There was a hard road[6] between mount Jura and
the river Rhone.   8. May you dwell at home in peace.
9. For this reason I was waging war in the land of the
Germans.   10. The banks of the river which flows through
our city are high.

XXV.

Incomplete tenses of short ĭ-stem verbs; Gr. 200–202.

VOCABULARY.

căpĭŏ, -ĕrĕ, *take, receive.*
suscĭpĭŏ, -ĕrĕ, *undertake.*
ērĭpĭŏ, -ĕrĕ, *rescue.*
dŏlŏr, -ōrĭs, *grief, sorrow.*
nōmĕn, -ĭnĭs, *name.*
frāter, -trĭs, *brother.*
făcĭŏ, -ĕrĕ, *do, make.*

confĭcĭŏ, -ĕrĕ, *do, accomplish,
    finish.*
perfĭcĭŏ, -ĕrĕ, *do, perform.*
affĭcĭŏ, -ĕrĕ, *move, affect.*
septentrĭŏ, -ōnĭs, *north* (usually
    pl.).

EXERCISES.

1. per eos omnēs Orgetŏrix se eripiēbat.   2. post ejus
mortem, Helvetii iter facĕre conabuntur.   3. una pars
initium capit[1] a flumĭne Rhodăno.   4. homĭnes bellandi
cupĭdi magno dolōre afficiebantur.   5. capiāmus urbem.
6. hic locus ē reditiōne exercĭtūs nomen capiet.   7. quas
in partes hostes iter faciunt?   8. ab iisdem nostra consilia
et quae in castris geruntur hostĭbus ēnuntiantur.   9. initium
pugnae Dumnŏrix faciēbat et milĭtes ejus.   10. eripĭte
meum patrem, amīci mei!   11. Belgae spectant in septen-
triōnem et orientem solem.   12. Aquitania spectat inter
occāsum solis et septentriōnes.   13. tune bellum cum
Gallis gĕrēs?

· 1. I am making a journey through the province.   2. These
things will be accomplished by us.   3. On the following day
he undertook the matter.   4. The place takes its name from[2]

the victory of the Roman legions. 5. Does the river take its name from[2] the battle? [No.] 6. In the time of Cæsar many legions were rescued from[2] the hands of the enemy. 7. Let us try to take the city which the enemy rescued from[2] our hands. 8. It is hard to take a city that has a wall and ditch around it.[3] 9. This matter was told to the Helvetians by us. 10. After his death the Helvetians tried to make the journey. 11. Orgetorix will give his daughter in marriage to Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus.

XXVI.

Incomplete tenses of long ī-stem verbs; Gr. 203, 204.

VOCABULARY.

vĕnĭŏ, -īrĕ, come.

commūnĭŏ, -īrĕ, wall, fortify.

ĭnterfĭcĭŏ, -ĕrĕ, kill, slay.

convĕnĭŏ, -īre, come together, assemble.

sī (conj.), if.

pervĕnĭŏ,-īre, come through, arrive.

vīs, vīs (Gr. [115]), violence, force; pl. strength.

ŭbĭ (conj.), when, where.

EXERCISES.

1. ad eam partem, quae in ripa flumĭnis habitābat perveniēbat. 2. eodem die milĭtes ad ripam conveniēbant. 3. venīte ad me, filiae meae! 4. eōdem proelio, quo Helvetii filium interficiēbant, patrem interficiēbant. 5. Caesar uno die id faciet quod nos viginti diēbus facĭmus. 6. pacem cum Caesăre faciāmus! 7. in dolōrem veniātis, hostes! 8. urbs ab hostĭbus magnā vi communiebātur. 9. ea faciēmus quae nobis tribuuntur. 10. pacem cum proxĭmis civitātĭbus confirmāre Helvetii conabantur. 11. postĕro die conveniunt ad ripam Rhodăni et castra in eo loco communiunt. 12. murum et fossam a flumĭne ad lacum perducāmus!

1. Cæsar is fortifying a camp on the top of the mountain.
2. Many soldiers come out of the city which you are fortify-

ing.   3. I shall arrive at the city within[1] the next ten days.
4. The enemy are slaying the traders themselves.   5. The
enemy will burn with fire those who shall be taken in battle.
6. This[2] [news] is told us by the soldiers whom you rescued.
7. If you do[3] violence, I shall stop [you].   8. When that
day comes,[3] I shall allow you a passage through the city.
9. There is one legion [only] in farther Gaul; if the enemy
assemble,[3] they will seize the whole region.   10. The Gauls
are coming across the river and we shall all be slain.

XXVII.

Complete tenses, active voice; Gr. 205–207.

VOCABULARY.

pervĕniŏ, -īrĕ, -vēnī, *come, arrive.*
constĭtuŏ, -tuĕrĕ, -tuī, *determine, decide on.*
spērŏ, spērārĕ, spērāvī, *hope, expect, hope for.*
pōnŏ, pōnĕrĕ, pŏsuī, *place, pitch.*
făciŏ, făcĕrĕ, fēcī, *do,* etc.
paucŭs, -ă, -ŭm (comm. pl.), *few.*
interfĭciŏ, -ĕrĕ, -fēcī, *kill.*
mĭnĭmē (adv.), *least.*

perfĭciŏ, -ĕrĕ, -fēcī, *do, accomplish.*
convĕniŏ,-vĕnīrĕ,-vēnī, *assemble.*
căpiŏ, căpĕrĕ, cēpī, *take,* etc.
hăbeŏ, hăbērĕ, hăbuī, *have,* etc.
dō, dărĕ, dĕdī, *give,* etc.
mĭttŏ, mĭttĕrĕ, mīsī, *send.*
gĕrŏ, gĕrĕrĕ, gessī, *wage,* etc.
hăbĭtŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, *dwell.*
jŭbeŏ, -ērĕ, jussī, *bid, order.*

EXERCISES.

1. post ejus mortem Helvetii id quod constituĕrat facĕre
conabantur.   2. multa mihi dĕdĕras.   3. ad magnam par-
tem legiōnis pervēnĕram, quae tria millia passuum a flumĭne
castra ponēbat.   4. hi hostes consŭlem interfēcĕrant, et
milĭtes ejus cēpĕrant.   5. si vos vim fēcerĭtis, ĕgo prohibēbo.
6. Caesar bellum trans Rhenum gessit.   7. ubi id quod con-
stituisti perfēcĕris, vēni domum ad nos.   8. quae in castris
nostris geruntur, ea hostĭbus ille nuntiābit.   9. hi sunt
trans Rhodănum primi.

1. I had ordered him to seize the city of the enemy.
2. The top of the mountain was occupied[1] by the soldiers.
3. Cæsar had arrived at the same time.   4. He has dwelt among the Sequanians many months.   5. Had you pitched your camp when I arrived?   6. If you assemble[2] at[3] the bank of the river, I will give you a passage[4] through the province.   7. There are few rivers in the Alps, which are very high mountains.   8. Of all these the Belgians are the bravest because traders visit them least often.   9. Aquitania extends from the Garonne river to the mountains and the ocean.   10. This circumstance was told[1] to the Helvetians.

XXVIII.

Verb-forms from the simple stem ; Gr. 208, 209.

VOCABULARY.

pugnŏ, -nārĕ, -nāvī, -nātŭm.

occŭpŏ, -pārĕ, -pāvī, -pātŭm.

importŏ, -tārĕ, -tāvī, -tātŭm.

pertĭneŏ, -nērĕ, -nui.

prohĭbeŏ, -bērĕ, -bui, -bĭtŭm.

mŏveŏ, -vērĕ, mōvī, mōtŭm.

cōnŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs.

vehĕmentĕr (adv.), *greatly, strongly.*

dīvĭdŏ, -dĕrĕ, -vīsī, -vīsŭm.

gĕrŏ, gĕrĕrĕ, gessī, gestŭm.

căpĭŏ, căpĕrĕ, cēpī, captŭm.

făcĭŏ, făcĕrĕ, fēcī, factŭm.

vĕnĭŏ, vĕnīrĕ, vēnī, ventŭm.

fluŏ, fluĕrĕ, fluxī.

trĭbuŏ, -uĕrĕ, -uī, -ūtŭm.

rŏgŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, *ask, ask for.*

EXERCISES.

1. facĭle factu[1] est iter perficĕre.   2. ad consŭles patrem mittit rogātum[2] pacem.   3. bellum gessĕrat in finĭbus hostium.   4. quae est causă belli quod gerĭmus?   5. nobilissĭmi cum Germānis pugnant.   6. milĭtes, ab hostĭbus capti, interficientur.   7. multae res, in Belgas importātae, anĭmos eōrum effeminābant.   8. consul, magis cupiditāte imperii motus quam spe reditiōnis, urbem occŭpat.   9. multae res,

in fines nostros importātae, a militĭbus capiebantur.   10. quĭs haec a finĭbus Gallōrum prohĭbet?   11. nemo, dolōre motus, vim facĕre conabĭtur.   12. multi milĭtes, in proelio interfecti, domum mittebantur ad amīcos suos.

1. The city, having been seized by the legions, was burned.   2. I had come to ask[3] peace.   3. In many places the river flows through large forests.   4. The Belgians, effeminated by[4] imported things, are trying to wage war.   5. May the gods give you those things which you hope for !   6. This journey will be easy to make.[5]   7. I am greatly moved by Cæsar's death.   8. All kingdoms and cities are the gods'.   9. Let us wage war with the legions that have burned our homes.   10. With[4] that legion which he had with him and with[4] the soldiers who had assembled from[6] the province, Cæsar builds a wall from[7] the lake to Mt. Jura, which divides the territories[8] of the Sequanians from the Helvetians.

XXIX.

The periphrastic conjugations; Gr. 210–214.

VOCABULARY.

sŭm, essĕ, fui, fŭtūrŭs.

dō, dăre, dĕdī, dătŭm.

nuntĭō, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm.

appellō, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm.

crĕmō, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm.

ēnuntĭō, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm.

impĕrō, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm.

hăbĭtō, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm.

hĭĕmō, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm.

confirmō, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm.

praecēdō, -dĕrĕ, -dī, -essŭm.

ērĭpĭō, -rĭpĕrĕ, -rĭpuī, -reptŭm.

sperō, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm.

effēmĭnō, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm.

hăbeō, hăbērĕ, hăbuī, hăbĭtŭm.

obtĭneō, -ērĕ, -uī, obtentŭm.

păteō, pătērĕ, pătuī.

commĕō, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm.

spectō, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm.

concĭlĭō, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm.

văgŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs.

incŏlō, -ĕrĕ, -uī.

contendō, -dĕrĕ, -dī, -ntŭm.

commūnĭō, -nīrĕ, -nīvī, -nītŭm.

EXERCISES.

1. iter mihi dătum est ; ĭdem tibi dabĭtur.   2. conātus erat iter per Alpes facĕre.   3. captūrus sum illam urbem. 4. ea legiōne, quam mecum habeo, fines Gallōrum occupārɛ conar.   5. pars hostium Orgetorĭgis victoriā ad bellum mota erat.   6. per Alpes iter faciendum est.   7. Alpes minōres altae sunt.   8. tres legiōnes in Gallia ulteriōre hiemābant.   9. domi futūrus sum.   10. num dătūrus es ĭter per provinciam hostĭbus?   11. fuerasne in vetĕre urbe?

1. All Gaul is divided[1] into three parts.   2. This matter was announced to the Helvetians.   3. Orgetorix rescued himself through his friends.   4. The soldiers whom he had with him had come together out of the province.   5. Three legions which had wintered in Hither Gaul, hastened through the Alps into the province.   6. The Helvetians had killed Piso in the same battle.   7. If you make[2] peace with us, we will winter in Gaul.   8. I intend to winter in Gaul. 9. The•soldiers have been rescued from[3] the hands of the Belgians.   10. The city must be seized by you.   11. A large part of the city had to be burned with fire.

XXX.

Review of verbs.
Irregular verbs ; **sŭm** and compounds ; Gr. 215–222.

VOCABULARY.

adsŭm, ădessĕ, adfuī, adfŭtūrŭs.
absŭm, ăbessĕ, āfuī, āfŭtūrŭs.
prōsŭm, prōdessĕ, prōfuī, prōfŭtūrŭs, *be advantageous, useful.*
possŭm, possĕ, pŏtuī, *be able, can, have power* or *influence.*
praesŭm, praeessĕ, praefuī, praefŭtūrŭs,*be present,*[1] *be first, at the head.*
sŭpersŭm, sŭpĕressĕ, sŭperfuī, sŭperfŭtūrŭs, *be left over, survive.*
dūcŏ, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm, *lead,* (also, *to marry*).
dēbeŏ, dēbērĕ, dēbuī, dēbĭtŭm, *owe, ought.*

EXERCISES.

1. bellum gerĕre non possŭmus, quod a provincia longe absŭmus.   2. omnia quae facĕre potestis, fecistis.   3. quis illud dīcĕre possit[2]?   4. mihi non prodest[3] saepe cum iis qui in ripis flumĭnis habĭtant contendĕre.   5. adesse non facĭle est.   6. Sequănos praesentīs et absentīs incitāre conābar. 7. per provinciam iter vobis dăre non potĕro.   8. num potuĕrunt iter difficĭle facĕre?   9. si potĕro, apud vos adĕro.

1. Dumnorix had very much influence among the Helvetians, because he had married the daughter of Orgetorix from that state.   2. It had been advantageous to him to be able to move camp.   3. Be good and brave, my friends ; our position[4] is advantageous to us.   4. The whole multitude was present.   5. The whole state is divided[5] into four parts.   6. Those who ought to be useful to us have moved camp and are not present.   7. He did in[6] one day what the enemy did in[6] twenty days.   8. The daughter of Orgetorix and one of his sons were taken.[7]   9. One hundred and twenty thousand men[7] survived.

XXXI.

Irregular verbs; ĕdo, fĕro; Gr. 223, 224.

VOCABULARY.

ĕdŏ, ĕdĕrĕ, ēdī, ēsŭm, *eat, consume.*
fĕrŏ, ferrĕ, tŭlī, lātŭm, *carry, bring, bear.*
infĕrŏ, inferrĕ, intŭlī, illātŭm, *carry on, make* (war).
diffĕrŏ, differrĕ, distŭlī, dīlātŭm, *differ.*
confĕro, conferrĕ, contŭlī, collātŭm, *collect, bring together,˙ compare;*
    se conferre, *to betake one's self, go.*
rĕfĕrŏ, rĕferrĕ, rĕtŭlī, rĕlātŭm, *carry back;* pedem referre, *retreat.*
jŭbeŏ, jŭbērĕ, jussī, jussŭm.
impĕdīmentŭm, -ĭ, *hindrance;* pl. *baggage.*
hostĭs, -ĭs (c.), *enemy.*

EXERCISES.

1. bellum inferre non possunt.   2. Dumnŏrix, cujus frater Divitiăcus eo tempŏre principātum in civitāte obtinēbat, idem conāri potĕrat.   3. erat una per Sequănos via, quā īre non pŏtĕrant.   4. frumentum non contulĕrant, quod dăre debēbant.¹   5. ager Germanōrum conferri non potest cum agro Gallōrum.   6. contendēbant pedem referre.   7. jubēbat partem milĭtum impedimenta in unum locum conferre; partem pedem referre.   8. hi omnes inter se² linguā diffĕrunt. 9. trans flumen in agros hostium se contulĕrant.

1. The Helvetians brought their baggage together to one place.   2. He ordered the ships to be brought together into one place.   3. For this reason they could not make war on³ their enemies.   4. I shall bring together many men, and make war on the nations beyond the Rhine.⁴   5. The seventh and tenth legions did not retreat.   6. Let us retreat, soldiers, if the enemy are⁵ many.   7. The baggage will be brought together.   8. . You ought to go to the camp of the Germans.   9. Who can make war on us?   10. A few can stop the soldiers from [their] march in those places.   11. The soldiers that we had levied came together in a few days.

XXXII.

Irregular verbs; **vŏlo, nōlo, mālo**; Gr. 225.

VOCABULARY.

auxĭlĭŭm, -ĭ, *help, aid.*

undĕ (adv.), *whence, from which.*

văcŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, *be empty, be vacant.*

discēdŏ, -dĕrĕ, -cessī, -cessŭm, *depart, go out* or *away.*

vŏlŏ, vellĕ, vŏluī, *to wish, be willing.*

nōlŏ, nollĕ, nōluī, *to be unwilling.*

mālŏ, mallĕ, māluī, *to prefer, choose rather, wish more.*

fŭgă, -ae, *flight.*

EXERCISES.

1. nolēbam pedem referre.   2. noli bellum Romānis, amīcis nostris, inferre.   3. in eam partem Helvetii se conferent, ubi eos esse voluĕris.   4. voluĕrat totam Galliam occupāre.   5. malo trans Rhenum bellum Germānis inferre quam in Galliā.   6. num vis illud suscipĕre?   7. pars milĭtum pedem referre vult.   8. faciāmus omnia quae facĕre volŭmus.   9. quid vultis, amici?   10. maluit ab hostĭbus interfĭci quam pedem referre.   11. ii qui ad ripas venĕrant, pedem referre quam bellum gerĕre malēbant.

1. Dumnorix wished to have great influence[1] with[2] the Sequani.   2. We, who were across the river, were not able to bring help to our [friends].   3. I did not wish to say this to many men.   4. He did not wish that place from which the Helvetians had departed to be empty.   5. Many prisoners[3] were brought into the city.   6. I had rather[4] be taken than save myself by flight.   7. Do you prefer to be slain [rather] than be taken [prisoner]?   8. Many were taken and slain, who were unwilling to rescue themselves by flight.   9. The flight of the enemy had given us the victory.   10. The city which we wished to take was given to us by the consent of the inhabitants.   11. The journey will have to be performed.   12. I am unwilling to retreat; I prefer to fight.

XXXIII.

Irregular verbs; do, eo, fīo; Gr. 226–229.

VOCABULARY.

eŏ, īrĕ, īvī, (iī), ĭtŭm, *go.*

fīŏ, fĭĕrī, (factŭs), *be made, become, happen.*

transeŏ, transīrĕ, transiī, transĭtŭm,[1] *go over, cross.*

lintĕr, -trĭs (c.), *boat, skiff.*

rătĭs, -ĭs, *raft.*

aufĕrŏ, auferrĕ, abstŭlī, ablā- tŭm, *take away.*

ădeŏ, ădīrĕ, ădiī, ădĭtŭm, *go to, go near, approach, visit.*

pāgŭs, -ī, *district, canton.*

EXERCISES.

1. multa fīunt quae non volŭmus. 2. id si fīet magno cum perīcŭlo provinciae erit. 3. iī qui flumen transiĕrant suis[2] auxilium ferre non potĕrant. 4. spes gloriae major facta erat. 5. via per Alpes angusta est; alio itĭnĕre trans- eāmus. 6. in finĭbus Sequanōrum, qui trans Rhodănum incŏlunt, bellum gerēbam. 7. num hostes possunt amīci fiĕri? 8. Caesar popŭlos adīre volēbat, qui trans Rhenum incŏlunt. 9. nolī hostes cum militĭbus adīre.

1. The Helvetians were crossing this river by[3] [means of] boats and rafts. 2. The beginning of that flight was made by Dumnorix and his horsemen. 3. Let us cross this river. 4. The hope of a return home has been taken away. 5. At the beginning of the war, there were large forces in the province. 6. It is very difficult to cross a river by [means of] boats and rafts. 7. A large river, which we were crossing, flows into the lake. 8. Do not cross the Rhine, legions; the enemy are numerous and brave. 9. The whole state is divided into four cantons. 10. There is a river which flows through the territories of the Sequani into the Rhone. 11. If they try[4] to cross, he will be able to prevent [them].

XXXIV.

Impersonal and defective verbs; Gr. 230–235.

VOCABULARY.

lĭcĕt, lĭcērĕ, lĭcŭĭt, *is permitted,*
  one may.
ŏportĕt, -tērĕ, -tuĭt, *is proper,*
  right; one ought, it behooves.
nĕqvĕ (or nĕc), *and not, nor.*

nĕqvĕ ... nĕqvĕ, *neither ... nor.*
ăbeō, -ĭrĕ, -ĭi, -ĭtŭm, *go away,*
  depart.
Haeduī, -ōrŭm, *Hœduans,* (a
  Gallic nation).

EXERCISES.

1. id ·facĕre per me[1] lĭcĕt tibi.   2. oportet cum hostĭbus contendĕre.   3. tres legiōnes in Galliam mittam.   4. Rhodănus in lacum fluit.   5. castra proxĭmo die mōvit.   6. plures hostium capientur.   7. bellum in Haeduis gessĕrat.   8. multa bella gesta erant.   9. ĭter per provinciam non dăbo.   10. si id fecerĭtis, multa millia hominum interficientur.   11. malo id facĕre quam bellum inferre.   12. apud nos fortes sunt milĭtes multi.   13. tres annos in provincia fuĕrat.

1. The land of the Belgians extends many miles to the east.   2. Do[2] not attribute the victory to me, soldiers; the gods have given us victory.   3. Rescue yourselves from[3] the hands of the enemy, if you can, my sons.   4. The consul had taken many cities.   5. Peace will come when the enemy are[4] slain.   6. Let us rescue ourselves, Piṣo.   7. By daily battles one ought to bring peace.   8. It is neither permitted nor proper to make war on[5] friends.   9. You may[6] cross the river, my friends; the enemy have departed.   10. The soldiers whom you had levied did not assemble.   11. The Helvetians are trying to make a march through our province.

EXERCISES ON SYNTAX.

—◆—

XXXV.

Nominative, vocative and accusative cases; Gr. 253–268.

VOCABULARY.

tergŭm, -ī, *back.*

audeŏ, -ērĕ, ausŭs,[1] *dare.*

ītă (adv.), *thus, in this way.*

pollĭceŏr, -ērī, -ĭtŭs, *promise.*

vertŏ, -ĕrĕ, vertī, versŭm, *turn.*

dīcŏ, -ĕrĕ, -xī, -ctŭm, *say.*

hībernŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *of winter, wintry.*

hībernă, -ōrum, *winter quarters.*

auxĭlĭă, -ōrum, *auxiliaries.*

flāgĭtŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, *demand.*

hostĭs, -ĭs, *enemy.*

castră, -ōrŭm, *camp.*

EXERCISES.

1. eōrum qui domum rediērunt census habĭtus est. 2. ita dies circĭter quindĕcim iter fecērunt. 3. tres copiārum partes[2] Helvetii id flumen[3] transduxĕrant. 4. omnes hostes terga vertērunt. 5. relĭquos omnes nostri interfecērunt. 6. Caesar in hiberna in Sequănos[4] exercĭtum deduxit. 7. paucos dies morātur. 8. primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra munīre jussit. 9. hic locus ab hoste circĭter passus sescentos, uti dictum est, abĕrat. 10. salūtem suam Gallōrum equitatui committĕre non audēbat. 11. hunc montem murus arcem effĭcit.

1. He made haste to go to Bibracte. 2. Cæsar demanded of the Hæduans[5] the corn[6] which they had promised. 3. Thus they made [their] march [for] fifteen days. 4. He left two legions and a part of the auxiliaries there. 5. On the same day[6] he moved camp. 6. For[7] five successive days Cæsar led forth his troops in front of his camp. 7. He thought himself able[8] to do this without danger. 8. While he was waiting[9] a few days, a panic seized the whole army. 9. He hastened toward Ariovistus by forced marches.

XXXVI.

Dative case; Gr. 269–272.

VOCABULARY.

contĭnentĕr (adv.), *constantly.*
cūrǎ, -ae, *care.*
summŭs, -ǎ, -ŭm, *highest, greatest.*
collŏquĭŭm, -ī, *conference, talk.*

ūsŭs, -ūs, *use, advantage.*
mūnītĭō, -ōnĭs, *fortification.*
fǎcultās, -ātĭs, *supply.*
ĭtĕrŭm (adv.), *again, a second time.*

EXERCISES.

1. proxĭmi sunt Germānis, qui trans Rhenum incŏlunt, quibuscum[1] continenter bellum gerunt. 2. Helvetiis est in anĭmo[2] per agrum Sequanōrum iter facĕre. 3. ob eas causas ei munitiōni[3] quam fecĕrat T. Labiēnum legātum praefēcit. 4. his omnĭbus rebus unum repugnābat. 5. omnium rerum quae ad bellum usui[4] erant summa erat in eo oppĭdo facultas. 6. decĭma legio per tribūnos milĭtum ei gratias egit. 7. dies colloquio dictus est, ex eo die quintus. 8. is sibi legatiōnem ad civitātes suscēpit. 9. itĕrum colloquio diem constituit. 10. haec mihi sunt curae.

1. This matter will be cared for by Cæsar (lit., will be for a care to C.). 2. We have nothing left[5] except the soil of our land. 3. Dumnorix was in command of the cavalry which the Hœduans had sent to Cæsar's aid.[6] 4. The Helvetians are neighbors of[7] the province and of the Allobroges. 5. What business[8] has Cæsar or the Roman people in my Gaul? 6. The Roman people pardoned the Arverni and did not reduce [them] to a province.[9] 7. Cæsar had favored[10] this legion, and trusted[10] [it] on account[11] of [its] courage. 8. They arrived in the country of the Lingones on the fourth day. 9. Cæsar ordered two lines to repulse the enemy, the third [one] to finish the work.

XXXVII.

Locative case ; Gr. 273, 274.

VOCABULARY.

collis, -is (m.), *hill.*

conscrībō, -ĕrĕ, -psī, -ptŭm, *levy (troops).*

collŏcō, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, *post, place.*

cĕlĕrĭtĕr (adv.), *quickly.*

subdūcŏ, -ĕrĕ, -xī, -ctŭm, *withdraw.*

postquăm (conj.), *after.*

prō (prep. w. abl.), *before, for, in proportion to,* etc.

sōlŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. 71.), *alone.*

EXERCISES.

1. et domi et in relĭqua Gallia plurĭmum potĕrat.[1]   2. postquam id[2] anĭmum advertit, copias suas Caesar in proxĭmum collem subdūcit.   3. in summo jugo duas legiōnes, quas in Gallia citeriōre conscripsĕrat, et omnia auxilia collocāvit. 4. provincia mea haec est Gallia, sicut illa vestra.   5. celerĭter concilium dimittit, Liscum retĭnet ; quaerit ex solo ea[3] quae in conventu dixĕrat.   dicit liberius atque audacius. 6. ob eam causam, quamdiu potui, tacui.   7. pro multitudĭne homĭnum et pro gloria belli atque fortitudĭnis, angustos fines habēmus.

1. On the next day, because two days remained, he hastened to go to Bibracte.   2. There was nothing at home. 3. The number of those who returned home was found out [to be] one hundred and ten thousand.[4] 4. The Sequanians had admitted Ariovistus within their country.   5. The river Dubis as [if] drawn by a pair of compasses surrounds almost the whole town.   6. I came into Gaul earlier than the Roman people [did].   7. The Suevi who had come to the banks of the Rhine began to return home.   8. The kind of fight in which the Germans had trained themselves was this. 9. At sunset Ariovistus led his troops back to camp.

XXXVIII.

Genitive case; source and cause; Gr. 275–284.

VOCABULARY.

āmittŏ, -ĕrĕ, -īsī, -īssŭm, *lose.*
accĭpĭŏ, -ĕrĕ, -cēpī, -ceptŭm, *receive.* ˙
nŭmĕrŭs, -ī, *number.*
pĕdĕs, -ĭtĭs, *foot-soldier.*

cădŏ, -ĕrĕ, cĕcĭdī, cāsŭm, *fall.*
ĕquĕs, -ĭtĭs, *horseman.*
oblīvīscŏr, -īscī, -lītŭs, *forget.*
pellŏ, -ĕrĕ, pĕpŭlī, pulsŭm, *drive, defeat.*

EXERCISES.

1. horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae.   2. tridui[1] viam processērunt hostes.   3. reminiscĕre et vetĕris incommŏdi popŭli Romāni et pristīnae virtūtis Helvetiōrum.   4. vetĕris contumeliae oblivisci volebat.   5. tridui viam processit. 6. pauci de nostris[2] cadunt.   7. equĭtum millia erant sex; totĭdem numĕro[3] pedĭtes velocissimi ac fortissimi.   8. Haedui eorumque clientes semel atque itĕrum[4] cum his contendērunt armis ; magnam calamitātem pulsi accepērunt ; omnem nobilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum amisērunt.

1. All Gaul is divided into three parts, one of which the Belgians inhabit.   2. No one receives more sorrow[5] from[6] that [fact] than I.   3. We are not aware of any wrong. 4. Do not forget the injuries which they have inflicted on the Hæduans and their allies.   5. At first about fifteen thousand of these crossed the Rhine ; they are now in Gaul to the number of one hundred and twenty thousand.   6. He attacked them and slew a large part of them.   7. Our [men] waited three days on account of the wounds of the soldiers. 8. Those through whose country the enemy had gone brought them back.   9. By the panic of these [men] even the soldiers and centurions were disturbed.

XXXIX.

Genitive case; possessive and special uses; Gr. 285–291.

VOCABULARY.

āvertŏ, -ĕrĕ, -tī, -sŭm, *turn away, turn aside.*

cognoscŏ, -ĕrĕ, -ōvī, -ĭtŭm, *learn; perf. know.*

postrīdĭē (adv.), *the next day, on the morrow.*

praemīttŏ, -ĕrĕ, -īsī, -īssŭm, *send ahead.*

ămīcītĭă, -ae, *friendship.*

ĭbĭ (adv.), *there.*

posteā (adv.), *afterwards.*

sĕquŏr; -ī, -cūtŭs, *follow.*

EXERCISES.

1. postridie ejus diēi[1] iter ab Helvetiis avertit.   2. ibi filia Orgetorīgis atque unus e filiis captūs est.[2]   3. ii, qui ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesārem secūti erant, non magnum in re militāri[3] usum habebant.   4. Divitiăci summum in popŭlum Romānum studium cognoverat.   5. P. Considius qui rei militāris peritissimus habebatur et in exercĭtu L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittĭtur. 6. ea res per fugitīvos L. Aemilii, decuriōnis equĭtum Gallorum, nuntiatur.   7. ipse Dumnŏrix rerum novarum cupĭdus est.

1. The place takes its name from the slaughter of the Roman army.   2. The feelings[4] of Divitiacus were hurt by his brother's punishment.   3. Neither his coming nor [that] of Labienus was known.   4. On account of the excellence of the land, the Germans who dwell across the Rhine, will cross over from their own country into the country of the Helvetians.   5. On the next day he hastened to go to Bibracte, the largest town of the Hæduans.   6. I shall not overlook the wrongs of the Hæduans.   7. Cæsar cheered the spirits of the Gauls by his words.   8. Led by the desire of kingly power, Orgetorix made a conspiracy of the nobility. 9. The Helvetians, moved by his sudden arrival, send envoys to him.

XL.

Ablative case proper; Gr. 292–296.

VOCABULARY.

abstĭneŏ, -ērĕ, -uī, -tentŭm, *hold off*, *refrain.*

corpŭs, -ŏrĭs, *body.*

dēsistŏ, -ĕrĕ, dēstĭtī, -stĭtŭm, *cease from, leave off.*

ĭngens, -ntĭs, *great, huge.*

affĕrŏ, -ferrĕ, attŭlī, allātŭm, *bring.*

cōgŏ, cōgĕrĕ, coēgī, coactŭm, *compel.*

ēdūcŏ, -ĕrĕ, -xī, -ctŭm, *lead out.*

mōs, -ōrĭs, *custom, habit.*

EXERCISES.

1. Labiēnus nostros expectabat proelioque abstinebat. 2. a Bibracte, oppido Haeduorum longē maximo, non amplius milibus passuum octodĕcim aberat. 3. moribus suis Orge-torĭgem ex vincŭlis causam dicĕre coëgērunt. 4. Dumnŏrix gratiā et largitione apud Sequănos plurĭmum potĕrat. 5. ne-gotio desistĕre non potĕram. 6. ob eam rem ex civitāte profŭgi et Romam ad senātum vēni. 7. ea res Caesări non minōrem quam ipsa victoria voluptātem attŭlit. 8. duae fuērunt Ariovisti uxōres, una quam domo secum eduxerat, altera quam in Gallia duxerat.

1. They had gone from home. 2. The enemy are trying to keep our army from the march. 3. By their flight the rest of the cavalry was frightened. 4. He was trying to shut Cæsar off from the corn which was supplied from the Sequa-nians and Hæduans. 5. Ariovistus, king of the Germans, has seized a third part of their land, which is the best of all Gaul. 6. He now orders the Sequanians to leave the second third part. 7. Mettius was found and brought back to him. 8. Ariovistus sent sixteen thousand men with all the cavalry. 9. On the next day, Cæsar, according to his custom, led his forces out of both camps. 10. All the enemy turned their backs and did not cease to flee. 11. On the next day they arrived at the Rhine.

XLI.

Instrumental ablative; Gr. 297, 298.

VOCABULARY.

aequŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *equal, level.*
nihĭl (indeclinable), *nothing.*
ŏpŭs, -ĕrĭs, *work.*
tĭmŏr, -ōrĭs, *fear, panic.*
vescŏr, -ī, *feed on, eat.*

ĕtĭăm (adv.), *also, even.*
ōrātĭō, -ōnĭs, *speech, talk.*
tēlŭm, -ĭ, *missile, weapon.*
ūtor, -ĭ, ūsŭs, *use.*
vox, -ōcĭs, *voice, talk, words.*

EXERCISES.

1. hac oratiōne adducti, inter se fidem et jus jurandum dant.   2. ea legiōne quam secum habebat, militibusque, qui ex provincia convenērant, murum fossamque perdūcit. 3. opĕris munitione et milĭtum concursu et telis hostes repulsi sunt.   4. eo frumento[1] quod flumĭne Arăre[2] navibus subvexerat, uti non potĕrat.   5. domi nihil erat quo[1] vesci potĕrant.   6. horum vocibus ac timōre etiam ii qui magnum in castris usum habebant, milĭtes centurionesque quique[3] equitatui[4] praeĕrant perturbabantur.   7. hic locus aequo spatio ab castris Ariovisti et Caesăris abĕrat.

1. Elated by this battle, the Helvetians began to resist more boldly.   2. Induced by the lack of all things, we sent ambassadors to you about a surrender.   3. He filled the whole mountain with men.   4. We do not contend by means of trickery, or depend upon artifice.   5. Our [men] got possession of the baggage and camp.   6. This town was fortified by the nature of [its] situation.   7. The Hæduans did not make use of the help of the Roman people in the wars that they had with me.   8. Much[5] was said by Cæsar. 9. Broken by these defeats, the Hæduans have been compelled to give hostages to the Sequanians.   10. They fought[6] with their swords.   11. We wish Gaul, though conquered in war,[7] to use its own laws.

XLII.

Locative ablative; Gr. 299–303.

VOCABULARY.

cōnātŭs, -ūs, *attempt.*

Inĭmīcŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *unfriendly, hostile.*

nonnullŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *some, a few.*

tempĕrō,-ārĕ,-āvī,-ātŭm,*refrain.*

dējĭcĭŏ, -ĕrĕ, -jēcī, -jectŭm, *cast down.*

injūrĭă, -ae, *wrong, injury.*

pridĭē (adv.), *on the day before.*

vădŭm, -ī, *shoal, ford.*

EXERCISES.

1. hic pagus unus, patrum nostrorum memoriā, L. Cassium, consŭlem interfecerat, et ejus exercĭtum sub jugum miserat.　2. pridie proelium non commiserant.　3. ex eo proelio circĭter millia centum et triginta superfuērunt eāque totā nocte continenter iērunt.　4. totis castris[1] testamenta obsignabantur.　5. inter fines Helvetiorum et Allobrŏgum Rhodănus fluit isque nonnullis locis[1] vado transĭtur.　6. homĭnes inimīci nobīs non temperabunt ab injuria.　7. Helvetii ea spe dejecti, hoc conātu destitērunt.　8. nunc sunt in Gallia multa millia.

1. These all differ from one another[2] in language, customs [and] laws.　2. At daybreak he was not far away from the camp of the enemy.　3. They join battle with the cavalry of the Helvetians in an unfavorable place.　4. On all these days Ariovistus kept his army in camp.[3]　5. Records were found in the camp of the Helvetians and brought to Cæsar.　6. He ordered them to await his arrival in that place.　7. They attacked our [men] on the right flank.[4]　8. On the next day he turned his course from the Helvetians.　9. Early in the night[5] about six thousand men of that canton which is called Verbigenus left the camp of the Helvetians, and hastened toward the Rhine and the country of the Germans.

XLIII.

Comitative ablative; Gr. 304, 306.

VOCABULARY.

anceps, -ĭpĭtĭs (Gr. [115.]), *doubtful.*

consuescō, -ĕrĕ, -ēvī, -ētŭm,[1] *get used, be wont.*

pĕtō, pĕtĕrĕ, pĕtīvī, -ĭtum, *ask, beg.*

dĭū (adv.), *long.*

collŏquŏr, -ī, -cūtŭs, *talk with, converse.*

dux, dŭcĭs, *guide, leader.*

lēnĭtās, -ātĭs, *gentleness, slowness.*

vĭgĭlĭă, -ae, *watch.*

EXERCISES.

1. flumen est Arar, quod per finīs Haeduorum in Rhodănum influit incredibĭli lenitāte.   2. omnes qui adĕrant magno fletu auxilium a Caesăre petere coepērunt.   3. ancipĭti proelio diu pugnatum est.[2]   4. ea omnia injussu[3] Caesăris et civitātis fecerat.   5. per C. Valerium, cui[4] summam omnium rerum fidem[5] habebat, cum eo colloquĭtur. 6. de[6] tertia vigilia T. Labiēnum, cum duābus legionibus et iis ducibus qui iter cognoverant, montem adscendĕre jubet. 7. eo die quo consuerat intervallo[7] hostes sequĭtur et millia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

1. Cæsar hastened to this city by forced marches.   2. Dumnorix, the brother of Divitiacus, was meant by this speech of Liscus.   3. Dumnorix, [a man] of the greatest boldness, is desirous of a revolution.   4. He himself hastened to the enemy in the fourth watch by the same route by which they had gone.   5. At daybreak neither his arrival nor [that] of Labienus, as he afterward learned from prisoners, was known.   6. Meanwhile he drew up a line of battle of the four legions half way up[8] the hill.   7. He was not more than a mile and a half[9] from the enemy's camp.   8. The Sequanians have received Ariovistus into[10] their country, and all their towns are in his power.   9. The Germans are of huge size of body and of incredible courage.

XLIV.

Ablative absolute; ablative with prepositions; Gr. 307,
· 308.

VOCABULARY.

cornū, -ūs, *horn, wing.*

indūcō, -ĕrĕ, -xī, -ctŭm, *lead on,
induce.*

confīdō, -ĕrĕ, -fīsŭs, (Gr. [216]
(*g*)), *trust in, confide.*

nox, noctĭs, *night.*

invĕniō, -īrĕ, -vēnī, -ventŭm,
come upon, find.

prŏfĭcīscŏr, -ī, -fectŭs, *start, set
out.*

EXERCISES.

1. Orgetŏrix, M. Messālā et M. Pisōne consulibus, regni
cupiditate inductus conjurationem nobilitatis fecit.   2. his
rebus cognitis, Caesar Gallorum animos confirmavit.   3. bel-
lo Helvetiorum confecto, totīus fere Galliae legāti ad Caesă-
rem gratulatum[1] convenērunt.   4. nullam partem noctis
itinĕre intermisso in fines Lingŏnum die quarto pervenērunt.
5. eorum satisfactione accepta et itinĕre exquisīto per Divi-
tiăcum, de quarta vigilia profectus est.   6. ipse a dextro
cornu[2] proelium commīsit.   7. perpauci aut viribus[3] confisi
tranare contendērunt aut lintribus inventis sibi salūtem re-
perērunt.

1. They could not go by this way, because the Sequanians
were unwilling.   2. After this council was dismissed the
same chief men of the states returned to Caesar.   3. After
driving[4] back our cavalry, they formed a phalanx and came
up to our first line.   4. After giving this answer, he left.
5. Calling together their chiefs, a large number of whom he
had in camp, he blames them severely.   6. When Caesar's
arrival was known, Ariovistus sent envoys to him.   7. When
the camp had been fortified, he left two legions there; the
remaining four he led back to the larger camp.   8. By the
delivery of this speech[5] the minds of all were changed.
9. He allowed all the rest to surrender after they had de-
livered the hostages, arms and deserters.

XLV.

Use of the tenses; Gr. 309–312.

VOCABULARY.

castellŭm, -ī, *fort, redoubt.*
nondŭm (adv.), *not yet.*
dispōnŏ, -nĕrĕ, -pŏsuī, -pŏsĭtŭm,
  place, post.

princeps, -cĭpĭs, *leading, chief.*
praesĭdĭŭm, -ī, *garrison, defence.*
rĕvertŏ, -ĕrĕ, -vertī, -versŭm,
  return (also deponent).

EXERCISES.

1. ea res enuntiata est. 2. post ejus mortem nihĭlo[1] minus Helvetii id quod constituerant facere conantur. 3. Allobrŏges nondum bono animo[2] in populum Romanum videbantur. 4. milĭtes, quos imperaverat, conveniebant. 5. eo opĕre perfecto praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit. 6. ubi ea dies quam constituerat cum legātis venit, legati ad eum revertērunt. 7. legatos ad eum mittunt, cujus legatiōnis Divĭco princeps fuit, qui dux Helvetiorum fuerat. 8. hac oratione habita, conversae sunt omnium mentes. 9. Helvetii castra movebunt.

1. This district was called Tigurinus; for all the Helvetian state is divided[3] into four districts. 2. The Helvetians were crossing this river. 3. Setting[4] out from camp with three legions, he came to that part which had not yet crossed the river. 4. While this was[5] going on, the horsemen of Ariovistus threw missiles at our men. 5. He began battle on the right wing, because he had noticed these facts. 6. Then at last the Germans from necessity led out their forces from the camp and posted them at equal intervals, tribe by tribe. 7. I dare not go into that part of Gaul without an army. 8. The Sequani must endure all tortures. 9. The enemy charged suddenly and swiftly.

XLVI.

Subjunctive in dependent clauses; Gr. 322–333.

VOCABULARY.

ălĭquĭs, -quă, -quĭd, *some one, any one.*

exeŏ, -īrĕ, -lī, -ĭtŭm, *go out, depart.*

impĕtŭs, -ūs, *attack.*

ŏcŭlŭs, -ī, *eye.*

plăceŏ, -ērĕ, -uī, -ĭtŭm, *please.*

sciŏ, -scīrĕ, -scīvī, -scītum, *know.*

custŏs, -ōdĭs, *guard, sentinel.*

hortŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs, *urge.*

lŏquŏr, -ī, -cūtŭs, *speak, talk.*

persuādeŏ, -ērĕ, -sī, -sŭm, *persuade.*

vĕl, *or.*

vĕl . . . vĕl, *either . . . or.*

EXERCISES.

1. civitati persuāsit ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exīrent.   2. Arar in Rhodănum influit incredibĭli lenitate, ita ut ocŭlis, in utram partem fluat,[1] judicari non possit. 3. placuit ei ut ad Ariovistum legatos mittĕret qui ab eo postulārent uti alĭquem locum colloquio dicĕret.   4. equi-tātum qui sustinēret hostium impĕtum, misit.   5. per eos, ne causam dicĕret, se eripuit.   6. petit atque hortatur ut vel ipse de eo statuat vel civitatem statuĕre jubeat.   7. Dum-norĭgi custōdes ponit ut, quae agat,[1] quibuscum loquatur,[1] scire possit.

1. There was no doubt that[2] the Helvetians were the most powerful of all Gaul.   2. He sent [men] to find out[3] what[4] the character of the mountain was.   3. There were two ways by which they could[4] go out from home.   4. Divitiacus with many tears began to beg Cæsar not to decide on any-thing too severe toward his brother.   5. He warns Dum-norix to avoid all suspicions for the future.   6. He ordered the Allobroges to furnish them a supply of corn.   7. I am the only [one] who could[5] not be brought to take an oath or give my children [as] hostages.   8. Our men attacked the enemy so vigorously when the signal was given, that no room was given for throwing the javelins at the enemy.[6]

XLVII.

Subjunctive in dependent clauses (*continued*).

VOCABULARY.

hōrā, -ae, *hour.*

intellĕgō, -ĕrĕ, -xī, -ctŭm, *know, understand.*

priusquăm (conj.), *before.*

vŏcŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, *call.*

EXERCISES.

1. Helvetii, cum id intellegĕrent, legātos ad eum mittunt. 2. id ubi Caesar resciit, quorum per finīs ierant, his, uti reducĕrent, imperavit. 3. hoc toto proelio, cum[1] ab hora septĭma ad vespĕrum pugnatum sit, aversum[2] hostem vidēre nemo potuit. 4. priusquam quicqvam conarētur, Divitiacum ad se vocavit. 5. diutius cum nostrorum impĕtus sustinēre non possent, alteri, ut coeperant, in montem se recepē-runt; alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulērunt. 6. vehementer eas incusavit quod quaerĕrent[3] quam in par-tem[4] aut quo consilio ducerentur.

1. At daybreak, when the top of the mountain was held by Labienus, Considius runs up to Cæsar. 2. When this had been reported to Cæsar, he hastened to start from the city. 3. When the day which he had set came, he gave no one a passage through the province. 4. When they could not persuade them, they sent ambassadors to Dumnorix the Hæduan, in order to gain their request from the Sequanians through his intercession.[5] 5. He could not use that corn which he had brought up the Arar,[6] because the Helvetians had turned their course from the river. 6. He accuses them strongly, because he is not aided by them. 7. Before he made[7] any attempt he ordered Divitiacus to be summoned to him.

XLVIII.

Infinitive ; Gr. 334–342.

VOCABULARY.

ăgŏ, ăgĕrĕ, ēgī, actŭm, *do, deal,*
  talk.

ŏportĕt, -ērĕ, -ŭĭt, *it is proper, one*
  ought.

pŏtĭŏr, pŏtīrī, potītŭs, (Gr.
  [297]), *get, get control of.*

intĕrĭm (adv.), *meanwhile.*

vălĕŏ, -ērĕ, -uī, -ĭtŭm, *be strong,*
  be able.

auctōrĭtās, -ātĭs, *authority, influ-*
  ence.

sī (conj.), *if.*

plebs, plēbĭs, (Gr. [98]), *people,*
  common people.

EXERCISES.

1. perfacĭle est, cum virtūte omnibus[1] praestēmus, totīus Galliae imperio[2] potiri. 2. intĕrim quotidie Caesar Haeduos frumentum flagitare. 3. Liscus dicit esse nonnullos quorum auctorĭtas apud plebem plurĭmum valeat. 4. Caesări cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, matūrat ab urbe proficisci. 5. Ariovistus respondit, si quid Caesar velit, illum ad se venire oportēre. 6. Ariovistus ad Caesărem legatos mittit velle[3] se de his rebus agere cum eo. 7. pauci, viribus confīsi, tranare contendērunt. 8. per exploratores Caesar cognovit montem a suis tenēri.

1. He did not wish these things to be discussed while more [persons] were present.[4] 2. It is dangerous for the Germans[5] to get used to cross the Rhine. 3. He saw that the Hæduans were held under[6] the sway of the Germans. 4. When Cæsar learned that they kept[7] in camp, he chose a place suitable for a camp six hundred paces beyond them. 5. The Suevi, who had come to the banks of the Rhine, began to return home. 6. Word was brought to Cæsar that the horsemen of Ariovistus were coming nearer to the hill and throwing stones and javelins at our men. 7. Cæsar promised to care[8] for the matter, [saying] that he had great hope that Ariovistus would put an end[9] to his injuries.

XLIX.

Participles; Gr. 343–347.

VOCABULARY.

convertō, -ĕrĕ, -vertī, -versŭm, ōrŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, *beg, pray,*
  turn, change.   *ask.*
fleō, flērĕ, flēvī, flētŭm, *weep.* mens, -ntĭs, *mind, reason.*
prōjĭcĭō,-ĕrĕ,-jēcī,-jectŭm,*throw.* sŏcĭŭs, -ī, *friend, ally.*
tandĕm (adv.), *at last, at length.* vulnŭs, -ĕrĭs, *wound.*
eō (adv.), *thither.* verbŭm, -ī, *word.*

EXERCISES.

1. Bojos, receptos[1] ad se, socios sibi adsciscunt. 2. persuādent finitīmis, uti eodem usi consilio cum iis proficiscantur. 3. haec cum pluribus verbis flens a Caesăre petĕret, Caesar consolatus rogat finem orandi faciat.[2] 4. tandem vulneribus defessi et pedem referre et quod mons subĕrat circĭter mille passuum eo se recipere coepērunt. 5. hoc toto proelio aversum[3] hostem vidēre nemo potuit. 6. Bojos petentibus[4] Haeduis ut in finibus suis collocarent concessit. 7. ea re impetrata, sese omnes flentes Caesāri ad pedes projecērunt.

1. Cæsar learned that Considius, in his fright,[5] had reported to him what he had not seen.[6] 2. After encouraging his men, Cæsar joined battle. 3. The Helvetians who had betaken themselves to the mountain, began again to make a stand, when they saw this.[7] 4. Our [men] having waited three days on account of the wounds of the soldiers and the burial of the slain, could not pursue them. 5. After the lapse[8] of three days he began to follow them himself with all his forces. 6. When he had noticed this, he called[9] a council and severely upbraided them. 7. He treated those who were brought back as enemies.[10] 8. The Ubii, who dwell nearest the Rhine,[11] pursued[12] them [while they were] frightened, and slew a large number of[13] them.

L.

Gerund and gerundive; Gr. 348, 349.

VOCABULARY.

cūrŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, *care for, attend to.*

instruŏ, -uĕrĕ, -uxī, -uctŭm, *draw up, arrange.*

pandŏ, -dĕrĕ, -dī, pansŭm and passŭm, *extend, stretch out.*

servĭtūs, -ūtĭs, *slavery.*

trādŏ, -dĕrĕ, -dĭdī, -dĭtŭm, *give over, surrender.*

inĭtĭŭm, -ĭ, *beginning.*

mŭlĭĕr, -ĕrĭs, *woman.*

pons, -ntĭs, *bridge.*

pŏtestās, -ātĭs, *power, opportunity.*

EXERCISES.

1. mercatores ea important quae ad effeminandos anĭmos pertĭnent.   2. pontem in Arăre faciendum curat.   3. colloquendi Caesări causa visa non est.   4. reperiebat in quaerendo[1] Caesar initium ejus fugae factum esse a Dumnorĭge, atque ejus equitĭbus.   5. ad eas res conficiendas, Orgetŏrix delegĭtur.   6. mulĭĕres in proelium proficiscentis milites passis manĭbus flentes implorabant ne se in servitūtem Romanis tradĕrent.   7. P. Crassus tertiam aciem nostris subsidio misit.   8. aciem instruxit hostibusque pugnandi potestātem fecit.[2]   9. dixit id se sui muniendi non Galliae impugnandae causa facere.

1. As the hope of returning home had been lost,[3] we were the more prepared to undergo[4] all dangers.   2. The highest zeal and eagerness for waging war sprang up.   3. The tenth legion affirmed that it was perfectly ready to wage war.   4. Cæsar stops[5] speaking and returns to his [men].   5. Cæsar went to Nearer Gaul to hold the assizes.[6]   6. The enemy charged so suddenly and quickly that no room was given for throwing[7] their javelins at the enemy.   7. The town was so fortified by the nature of its position that it gave a great opportunity for prolonging a war.   8. He said that he ought to suspect that Cæsar, because he had an army in Gaul, had [it] to crush him.[8]

LI.

Supine; Gr. 350–352.

VOCABULARY.

conspĭcĭŏ, -ĕrĕ, -exī, -ectŭm, *see, perceive.*

existĭmŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, *think, believe.*

fortūnă, -ae, *fortune.*

sŭpĕrŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, *conquer, overcome.*

indĕ (adv.), *thence, from there.*

tentŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, *try, test.*

EXERCISES.

1. Haedui, cum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesārem mittunt rogatum auxilium. 2. perfacĭle factu esse illis probat conata perficere. 3. eos cum apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset, conclamavit, quid ad se venīrent.[1] 4. Ariovistus respondit Haeduos sibi quoniam belli fortunam tentassent et armis superati essent stipendiarios esse factos. 5. legati veniebant questum sese ne obsidibus quidem[2] datis pacem redimere potuisse. 6. neque sibi homines feros ac barbăros temperatūros[3] existimabat, quin,[3] cum omnem Galliam occupassent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fecissent, in provinciam exīrent atque inde in Italiam contenderent.

1. The Hæduans came to complain because the Harudes, who had lately been brought over into Gaul, were laying[4] waste their country. 2. I fled from the state and came to Rome to ask help. 3. He blamed them severely, [saying that] Ariovistus had most eagerly sought the friendship of the Roman people, when he was consul.[5] 4. He resolved to send[6] envoys to Ariovistus to ask him to name some place for a conference, [saying] that he wished to treat with him about the most important interests of each. 5. Cæsar promised to care[7] for this matter, [saying] that he had great hope that Ariovistus, led by his kindness and influence, would put[7] a stop to his wrongs.

LII.

Forms of conditional sentences; Gr. 446–456.

EXERCISES.

1. si quid vultis, ad Idus Aprilis revertimini.   2. si vim facere conentur, prohibeat Caesar.   3. id si fiet, magno cum periculo provinciae erit.   4. id si fiat, magno cum periculo provinciae sit.   5. id si factum esset, magno cum periculo provinciae fuisset.   6. si Romani superent, nobis libertatem eripiant.   7. si Romani superabunt, nobis libertatem eripient.   8. si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem regni obtinendi Dumnorix venit.[1]   9. si quid mihi[2] a Caesare opus esset, ego ad eum venissem ; si quid ille me vult, illum ad me venire oportet.   10. si nemo sequatur, tamen ego cum sola decima legione eam.

1. If they try to cross against my will, I shall stop them. 2. If they should try to cross, I should stop them.   3. If they were trying to cross, I should stop them.   4. If they had tried to cross, I should have stopped them.   5. I will make peace with you, if hostages are given me by you. 6. If hostages had been given me, I should have made peace with the enemy.   7. If anything happens to him, no one will think that it has not been done by my consent.   8. If anything were happening, all would think that it was done by my consent.   9. If you wish to be free from blame, bring back the fugitives.   10. If this be told, we shall come into the severest torture.   11. If this should be told to Ariovistus, I do not doubt[3] that[4] he would inflict[5] punishment on the hostages.   12. If this had been told me, I should have inflicted punishment on you.   13. A wall, put around this mountain, makes [it] a fort.   14. Considius says that the mountain which Cæsar wished to be seized by Labienus is held by the enemy.

LIII.

Indirect discourse; Gr. 457–478.

EXERCISES.

1. tres jam copiarum partes Helvetii id flumen[1] transduxerunt.

Caesar certior factus est tres jam copiarum partes Helvetios id flumen transduxisse.

2. sunt nonnulli quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valet.

Liscus dicit esse nonnullos quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat.

3. scio illa esse vera nec quisquam ex eo plus quam ego doloris capit.

Divitiacus dixit scire se illa esse vera nec quenquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere.

4. mons quem a Labieno occupari voluisti ab hostibus tenetur; id a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovi.

Considius dicit montem quem a Labieno occupari voluerit ab hostibus teneri; id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse.

———————

1. They are trying to march through our province.

Word was brought to Cæsar that they were trying to march through our province.

2. We intend to march through the province without any[2] harm, because we have no other road.

They sent ambassadors to him to say that they intended to march through the province without any harm because they had no other road.

3. Men of hostile spirit, if the privilege of marching through the province be given, will not refrain from wrong and harm.

He did not think that men of hostile spirit, if the privilege of marching through the province were given, would refrain[3] from wrong and harm.

LIV.

Indirect discourse (*continued*).

EXERCISES.

1. si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciet in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt ubi tu eos constitueris[1] atque esse volueris;[1] sin bello persequi perseverabis, reminiscere et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum.

is ita cum Caesare agit; si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum.

2. eo mihi minus dubitationis datur quod eas res quas vos commemoravistis memoria teneo.

his Caesar ita respondit; eo sibi minus dubitationis dari quod eas res quas legati Helvetii commemorassent memoria teneret.

---

1. Do not cause this place where we stand[2] to take [its] name from the defeat of the Roman people and the slaughter of [their] army.

[He told him] not to cause that place where they stood to take its name from the defeat of the Roman people and the slaughter of their army.

2. The Helvetians have been taught by their forefathers to be[3] in the habit of receiving[4] hostages, not of giving; of that fact the Roman nation is a witness.

Divico answered that the Helvetians had been taught by their forefathers to be in the habit of receiving hostages, not of giving; that the Roman nation was a witness of that fact.

LV.

Indirect discourse (*continued*).

EXERCISES.

1. Caesari renunciatur Helvetiis esse in animo per agrum Sequanorum et Haeduorum iter in Santonum fines facere qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt[1] quae civitas est[1] in provincia.

2. Liscus dicit hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem deterrere ne frumentum conferant quod praestare debeant.

3. Caesar reperit Dumnorigem odisse Romanos quod eorum adventu potentia ejus deminuta et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus.

4. eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte consedisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus qui cognoscerent misit. renunciatum est facilem esse.

1. Divitiacus the Hæduan spoke for[2] them, [saying] that all Gaul was divided into two parties[3]; that the Hæduans held the leadership of one of these, the Arverni of the other; that after these had fought[4] with each other for[5] the power many years, it came to pass that the Germans were hired[6] by the Arverni; that at first about fifteen thousand of these crossed the Rhine; that now there were in Gaul one hundred and twenty thousand.

2. He said that he was the only one out of the whole state of the Hæduans who could not be brought to take the oath, or give his children as hostages; that for this reason[7] he had fled from the state, and had come to Rome to the senate to ask aid, because he alone was not held either[8] by an oath or by hostages.

LVI.

Relations of place.

Place where; locative, Gr. 273; ablative, Gr. 299; with prepositions, Gr. 308.

Place to which; accusative, Gr. 265; with prepositions, Gr. 268.

Place from which; ablative, Gr. 293; with prepositions, Gr. 308.

EXERCISE.

1. Belgae a cultu atque humanitate longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe commeant.   2. aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. 3. civitati persuasit ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent.   4. trium mensium molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre jubent.   5. Rhodanus nonnullis locis vado transitur.   6. ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet.   7. Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari,[1] maturat ab urbe proficisci et quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit et ad[2] Genuam pervenit.   provinciae toti quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat — erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore legio una — pontem, qui erat ad Genuam, jubet rescindi. 8. interea ea legione quam secum habebat, militibusque, qui ex provincia convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, millia passuum decem novem murum in altitudinem pedum sedecim fossamque perducit.   9. eo autem frumento quod flumine[3] Arare navibus subvexerat propterea minus[4] uti poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvetii averterant a quibus discedere nolebat.   10. non solum domi sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter potest.   11. Divitiacus dixit ob eam rem se ex civitate profugisse et Romam ad senatum venisse auxilium postulatum.

LVII.

Relations of place (*continued*).

EXERCISE.

1. hic locus aequo fere spatio ab castris Ariovisti et Caesaris aberat. eo, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium venerunt. legionem Caesar, quam equis devexerat, passibus ducentis ab eo loco constituit. 2. ultra eum locum, quo in loco Germani consederant, circiter passus sescentos ab iis, castris idoneum locum delegit acieque triplici instructa ad eum locum venit. 3. ipse a dextro cornu, quod eam partem minime firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. 4. hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiato Suevi, qui ad ripas Rheni venerant, domum reverti coeperant; quos Ubii, qui proximi Rhenum incolunt, perterritos insecuti magnum ex his numerum occiderunt. Caesar una aestate duobus maximis bellis confectis maturius paulo quam tempus anni postulabat, in hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit; hibernis Labienum praeposuit; ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos profectus est. 5. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni, spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes et eam partem oceani, quae est ad[1] Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones. 6. biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit; velle se de his rebus quae inter eos agi coeptae neque perfectae essent agere cum eo; uti aut iterum colloquio diem constitueret, aut, si id minus vellet, e suis legatis aliquem ad se mitteret. colloquendi Caesari causa visa non est, et eo magis, quod pridie ejus diei Germani retineri non poterant quin in nostros tela conjicerent. legatum e suis sese magno cum periculo ad eum missurum et hominibus feris objecturum existimabat. commodissimum visum est C. Valerium Procillum ad eum mittere.

LVIII.

Relations of time.

Time when or within which; Gr. 301.
Time during which; Gr. 266, 302.
Dates; Gr. 487–497.
Ablative absolute; Gr. 307.
Temporal clauses; Gr. 330.

EXERCISE.

1. die constituta causae dictionis, Orgetorix omnem suam familiam undique coegit.   2. cum civitas jus suum exsequi conaretur, Orgetorix mortuus[1] est.   3. ubi jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, vicos incendunt.   4. diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam omnes conveniant. is dies erat a. d.[2] V. Kal. Apr. L. Pisone, A. Gabinio consulibus.   5. ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milites quos imperaverat convenirent,[3] legatis respondit diem[4] se ad deliberandum sumpturum; si quid vellent ad[5] Id. Apr. reverterentur. 6. in fines Vocontiorum die septimo pervenit.   7. legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano[6] dux Helvetiorum fuerat.   8. ita dies circiter quindecim iter fecerunt. 9. pluribus praesentibus eas res jactari nolebat.   10. itaque prius quam quicquam conaretur,[7] Divitiacum ad se vocari jubet.   11. de tertia vigilia T. Labienum summum jugum montis adscendere jubet.   12. post quam id animum advertit copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit.   13. hoc toto proelio, cum ab hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit.   14. ea tota nocte continenter ierunt; nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso in fines Lingonum die quarto pervenerunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepulturam occisorum nostri triduum morati eos sequi non potuissent.

LIX.

Relations of time (*continued*).

EXERCISE.

1. prima[1] nocte e castris Helvetiorum egressi ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum contenderunt.   2. paucis mensibus ante Harudum millia hominum xxiii ad eum venerant. 3. futurum est[2] paucis annis ut omnes ex Galliae finibus pellantur.   4. dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae commeatusque causa moratur, timor omnem exercitum occupavit.   5. haec cum animadvertisset, vehementer eos incusavit.   6. dixit Ariovistum se consule cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam appetisse.   7. factum ejus hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria ; factum etiam nuper in Italia servili tumultu.   8. septimo die, cum iter non intermitteret, ab exploratoribus certior factus est Ariovisti copias a nostris millibus passuum quattuor et viginti, abesse. 9. biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit.   10. ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas non deesset.   Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris continuit.   11. ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit.   tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum, quae castra minora oppugnaret,[3] misit.   acriter utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnatum est.   solis occasu suas copias Ariovistus multis et inlatis et acceptis vulneribus in castra reduxit.   12. ubi eum castris se tenere Caesar intellexit, ne diutius commeatu prohiberetur, ultra eum locum quo in loco Germani consederant, circiter passus sescentos ab iis, castris idoneum locum delegit acieque triplici instructa ad eum locum venit.   primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra munire jussit.

LX.

For miscellaneous questions in review.

EXERCISE.

CAESAR, BELL. GALL. I., CAP. I.–IV.

I. Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres ; quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitania, tertium qui[1] ipsorum[2] lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit.[3] horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, important, proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. qua de causa[4] Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. eorum una pars quam Gallos obtinere dictum est,[5] initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur[6] Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum ; attingit etiam ab[7] Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum ; vergit[8] ad septentriones. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni, spectant[9] in septentrionem et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes et eam partem Oceani, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones.[10]

II. Apud[11] Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is M. Messala et M. Pisone consulibus regni cupiditate inductus conjurationem nobilitatis fecit et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent ; perfacile esse,[12] cum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Gal-

liae imperio[13] potiri.   id hoc[14] facilius eis persuasit quod
undique loci natura Helvetii continentur; una ex[15] parte
flumine Rheno latissimo et altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium
a Germanis dividit; altera ex parte monte Jura altissimo qui
est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertia lacu Lemanno et
flumine Rhodano, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis
dividit.   his rebus[16] fiebat, ut et minus late vagarentur, et
minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; qua de causa
homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore adficiebantur.   pro[17]
multitudine autem hominum et pro gloria belli atque forti-
tudinis angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, qui in longi-
tudinem millia passuum CCXL in latitudinem CLXXX patebant.

III. His rebus adducti et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti
constituerunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent compa-
rare, jumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum
coëmere, sementes quam maximas facere, ut in itinere copia
frumenti suppeteret, cum proximis civitatibus pacem et ami-
citiam confirmare.   ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi
satis esse duxerunt, in tertium annum profectionem lege
confirmant.   ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur.
is sibi[18] legationem ad civitates suscepit.   in eo itinere per-
suadet Castico, Catamantaloedis filio, Sequano, cujus pater
regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat et a senatu
populi Romani amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate
sua occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumno-
rigi Haeduo, fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore principatum in
civitate obtinebat ac maxime plebi acceptus[19] erat, ut idem
conaretur persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat.
perfacile factu esse illis probat conata perficere, propterea
quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset; non esse
dubium, quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent; se
suis copiis suoque exercitu illis regna conciliaturum con-
firmat.   hac oratione adducti inter se fidem et jus jurandum
dant et regno occupato[20] per tres potentissimos ac firmissi-
mos populos totius Galliae[21] sese potiri posse sperant.

IV. Ea res Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata. moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinclis causam dicere[22] coëgerunt. damnatum[23] poenam sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur. die constituta causae dictionis[24] Orgetorix ad judicium omnem suam familiam,[25] ad hominum milia decem, undique coëgit et omnes clientes obaeratosque suos quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit; per eos ne[26] causam diceret, se eripuit. cum civitas ob eam rem incitata armis jus suum exsequi conaretur multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistratus cogerent, Orgetorix mortuus est;[27] neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.[28]

NOTES.

———◦◦◦———

[The exercises are numbered for convenience of reference, but it is not intended that each shall be a separate lesson, though most of them will be found of the proper length for a single recitation. Some, however, contain matter which should be slowly learned and digested. Such are the topics included under the head of "Preliminary" and of "Inflection of the Verb." In all cases, however, the teacher should divide the work according to the needs and capabilities of his class.

The references to the Grammar at the head of each exercise include only the head matter in larger print, which should be thoroughly and completely memorized. In connection with each lesson the notes should be carefully read over, and, when necessary, explained and illustrated by the teacher. In particular, the teacher should assure himself that all the technical terms of grammar employed are made perfectly clear to the pupils by repeated definition and explanation. Such terms often suggest only the vaguest ideas to a beginner, and time spent in giving an exact knowledge of them is spent to the best advantage possible. In some cases, especially in the lessons on syntax, portions of the notes should be memorized. Such cases are left to the judgment of the teacher, as no directions can be given that will suit all classes.

Besides the references to the Grammar, the pupil should be required to commit to memory the vocabularies, giving the Latin word when the teacher gives the English, or *vice versa*. The English sentences should be written out in Latin, copied on the blackboard, corrected, and given orally as a review along with the following lesson. Such a method is a very exacting one for both teacher and pupil, but is after all the shortest, since it brings in the end far better results with far less work. All the words used in the exercises on forms are given in the vocabularies, that the pupil may have as much time as possible to gain a perfect mastery of the inflections; words used in the exercises on syntax

must often be looked for in the index at the end of the book. The omission is intentional, its object being to give the pupil practice in finding words in an alphabetical vocabulary. Few teachers are aware how large a part of the two or three hours spent in translating a page of a Latin author is spent by the beginner in the mechanical task of searching out words in his lexicon. A little more expertness in finding a word will certainly be no loss to the pupil when he takes up his Cæsar or Cicero.

The teacher should not confine himself to the exercises given here, but should give various oral exercises, taking a short sentence and varying it; changing the number or person of the subject, the tense, mood or voice of the verb, etc. That there should be constant practice in repeating and writing inflectional forms is so self-evident that it is unnecessary to dwell upon it here. Moreover, from the very first the pupil should be trained to notice the ending of the inflected words. Such a habit, formed at the beginning, will do much to prevent the blundering in translation that always results from a disregard of the meaning and force of flectional syllables. Too great stress cannot be given at the beginning to the difference between English and Latin in their methods of expressing the relation of words to one another, the former chiefly by prefixing something to the significant word; the latter, by adding something. The pupil should be made to see at the very beginning that in *virtutis*, for example, it is the final syllable that expresses the relation which is expressed in English by the preposition " of "; and the rest of the word which gives the meaning " courage."]

I.

The preliminary definitions and principles should be taken slowly and carefully, and special pains should be taken with pronunciation and accent. As soon as the pupil has memorized the rules of quantity and accent, he should be given practice in pronouncing words, pointing out long and short syllables, etc. Any page of the exercises will furnish material for such training. The teacher may, if he chooses, assign certain portions to be read over in advance as a part of the lesson, and require the pupil to point out all syllables, the quantity of which can be determined by inspection.

The rules of euphony of vowels and consonants may properly be omitted in the reading of the notes, until flectional forms, that serve to illustrate them, are reached. Such will be found chiefly in the consonant-declension and the verb.

II.

RULES OF SYNTAX. (To be carefully memorized.)

The nominative is used as the subject of a finite verb.

The finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

The predicate-noun agrees with the subject in case.

(The teacher should assure himself that every pupil has a clear and definite idea of the meaning of "subject," "finite verb," "agrees," "predicate-noun," etc.)

1. ē stands only before consonants; **ex** before both consonants and vowels. — 2. **nōn** precedes the word it limits. — 3. The Latin has no articles. **causa,** for example, may be translated *cause, a cause,* or *the cause,* as the sense of the passage requires. — 4. The verb of a Latin sentence is more commonly at the end. — 5. Words in brackets are to be omitted in translating into Latin. — 6. The Latin has no words corresponding to the English introductory *there* and *it.* These words should therefore be omitted in translating into Latin. "There is no cause" becomes in Latin "cause is not" (i.e. does not exist).

III.

1. **causā** (abl.) means *"for the sake,"* and stands after the genitive that limits it; e.g. **gloriae causā,** *for glory's sake, for the sake of glory.* — 2. *You* may be translated into Latin by either the singular or the plural. In the earlier exercises the pupil should write both forms. — 3. use **cum.**

IV.

Questions answered by *yes* or *no* are indicated in Latin, not as in English, by putting the verb before the subject, but by the use of the interrogative particles -**nĕ** and **nŭm.**

A question is asked by appending -**nĕ** to the prominent or emphatic word, which is regularly put first in the sentence; e.g. **estne causa?** "*Is* there a cause?" **causane est?** "Is there a *cause?*"

The insertion of a negative word, as in English, shows that the answer *yes* is expected. -**nĕ** is appended to the negative as the prominent word. **nōnne causa est?** "Is there not a cause?"

Num is used when the answer *no* is expected. It stands regularly at the beginning of the sentence. **num causa est?** "Is there a cause?" (= There is no cause, is there?).

Answers are usually given by repeating some words of the question.

1. ā stands only before consonants; **ăb** before both vowels and consonants. — 2. Abl. without a prep. Compare No. 7 of the Latin exercise.

V.

RULES OF SYNTAX.

The adjective agrees with the noun it limits in gender, number and case.
The accusative is used as the direct object of an action.

The inflection of an a-stem verb in the pres. ind. act. is given in the vocabulary. The pupil should carefully learn the endings. Take notice that **occupo** and **importo** are inflected in the same way as **pugno.** The pres. infin. act. (ending -**ārĕ**) is also given.

The Latin has no progressive or emphatic forms of conjugation. **pugnat** may be translated *"he fights," "he is fighting,"* or *"he does fight,"* according to the connection.

1. Adjectives are often used substantively as in English; e.g. **amīcus** = a friendly man; i.e. a friend. — **2. populī** may be either gen. sg. or nom. pl. here. Translate the sentence in both ways. — **3.** Translate **amīcī** in this sentence as an adjective, but in the following one as a noun.

VI.

RULE OF SYNTAX.

The dative is used as the indirect object.

(The teacher should make the meaning of "indirect object" perfectly clear by repeated illustration.)

1. alius . . . alius = one ... . another; **aliī . . . aliī** = some . . . others; **alter . . . alter** = the one . . . the other. — **2. do** is peculiar in having **ă** in the endings -**ămŭs, -ătĭs,** while other a-stem verbs have -**āmŭs, -ātĭs.** So in the infin. **dărĕ.** — **3.** i.e. *to my son ;* indirect object.

VII.

RULE OF SYNTAX

The vocative is used to denote the person or thing spoken to.

1. Verbs meaning "call," "name," etc., take two direct objects as in English, one of which becomes subject when the verb is passive; the other a predicate-noun. — **2.** "They are called," etc. **Gallī** is the predicate-noun, not the subject. — **3.** "On the next day." — **4.** See VI., note 1. — **5.** Compare No. 1 of the Latin exercise. — **6.** The nominative is regularly used for the vocative in the plural, and in the singular when there is no separate vocative form. — **7.** Use **ob.** — **8.** Compare No. 9 of the Latin exercise. — **9.** Use the plural.

VIII.

Rule of Syntax.

The appositive agrees with the noun it limits in case.

Before going on with the exercises, the pupil should thoroughly master this lesson, and be able to inflect any consonant stem, on knowing the nom. and gen. sg. and the gender.

1. adsŭm and **absŭm** are inflected like **sŭm ; ăd** or **ăb** being prefixed to each form.— **2.** Compare VI., note 1, and notice that **alter,** not **alĭus,** is used when only two things are spoken of.— **3.** Compare No. 1 of the Latin sentences.

IX.

1. Less of corn; i.e. less corn.— **2.** "Many and great " = the English "many great," etc.— **3.** Hither Gaul; i.e. nearer Gaul,— the valley of the Po.— **4.** "Old " must agree with the understood noun, "war."

X.

Rule of Syntax.

The accusative is used to denote extent of time or space.

This lesson also needs special care. The teacher should require the pupil to tell the class of each ĭ-stem; to repeat the endings until they are entirely familiar, and to consult the lists in [99] whenever a new ĭ-stem is met with, to determine its form in doubtful cases.

1. Use pl. of **fīnĭs.**

XI.

1. "Orders to the province," i.e. levies on, etc.; orders the province to furnish.— **2.** "Is burning," i.e. is being burned. Use passive.

XII.

1. inter se, "mutually." Translate *each other* or *one another,* preceded by *to, for, from,* or any preposition that the English idiom requires.— **2.** See Gr. [99].— **3.** Translate *"for marriage " ; in* with acc.— **4.** Use abl. without a prep.

XIII.

Time will be saved by stopping on the review of the declensions until the pupils have thoroughly mastered them.

The irregularities of the words given in the vocabulary should be learned from [115] and [116]; other irregular nouns should be learned in the same way as they are met with hereafter.

1. Translate "from" or "because of." — 2. Translate "much of blood." Compare IX., note 1. — 3. At home; **domi**, locative. — 4. Use **in**.

XIV.

The first ten numerals should be learned, also *centum* and *mille*, and the method of formation of the others noticed.

1. The acc. **domum** means "home," "homeward"; the locative **domi**, "at home." — 2. Use **abest.** — 3. Use **in** w. acc. — 4. Abl. without a prep.

XV.

1. "On one side." — 2. "Very high." The superlative often means "very." — 3. "It is very hard, etc." Literally, "to import, etc., is very hard." The infinitive is used, as in English, as subject, but there is no introductory word. Compare II., note 6. An infinitive thus used, being an indeclinable noun, is neuter, and the predicate-adjective must agree with it in the neuter singular.

XVI.

1. **exterus, inferus** and **superus** are rarely found in the positive. — 2. **quam** before a superlative emphasizes it; e.g. **quam maximus,** "the very greatest," "the greatest possible." — 3. "Three fourths." — 4. "The nearest route," i.e. shortest. — 5. **summus mons** = "top of the mountain." So **imus mons** = foot of the mountain. — 6. Translate "nearest cities." — 7. Translate "many and large."

XVII.

1. **et ... et** = both ... and. — 2. **ego et tu** is the usual order of the personal pronouns in Latin. — 3. **cum** is appended to the ablative case of the personal pronouns; **vobiscum = cum vobis.** — 4. Express *too* by using the comparative. — Use **abest.** — 6. **inter se;** see XII., note 1. — 7. Use **fines.**

XVIII.

When used adjectively **is, ille** and **iste** correspond nearly to the English *this* or *that*; **ipse** to self (*myself, himself,* etc., according to the word it limits). All of them are often used substantively, and are translated by *he, she* or *it;* **ipse**, being emphatic, may be translated by emphasizing the English pronoun, or by adding *self.*

1. **satis** is often used with the verb *"be"* as an indeclinable predicate-adjective. — 2. **res novae,** "new things," a change in government, revolution. — 3. See XVI., note 2.

XIX.

Hic, when used adjectively, means *this;* **idem,** *same.* Both are often used substantively, and, like **is** and **ille,** have the general force of personal pronouns; *he, she, it.*

1. Use **fines.** — 2. Use **absum.**

XX.

RULE OF SYNTAX.

The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number and person.

1. Translate " minds." — 2. Translate " more of land,". plus **agri.**

XXI.

The preliminary lessons on verbal inflections may be taken in connection with Lessons XXII. to XXIX., instead of memorizing the whole at once. But the teacher should see that all of this preliminary matter is thoroughly mastered before leaving the verb and passing to the exercises in Syntax.

The lessons that follow on the verb-forms should not be taken too rapidly. The pupil should master the lists of verbal endings thoroughly, and the teacher should give him practice in repeating these rather than in repeating the model verb given in the foot-notes. There should be constant practice in analyzing the verb-forms into their elements of stem, sign, and suffix, until the pupil can tell any one of them at a glance. Constant practice in writing inflections on the board is of course indispensable.

XXII.

RULES OF SYNTAX.

The indicative is used to make a statement directly.
The indicative is used to ask a question directly.
The imperative is used to give a command directly.
The subjunctive is used to make a statement doubtfully.
The subjunctive is used to ask a question doubtfully.
The subjunctive is used to give a command doubtfully (e.g. in *exhortations, wishes, requests,* or *mild commands*).

1. Deponent verbs are to be translated as active forms. — 2. **do, dăre,** has short **ă** as stem vowel. Gr. 226. — 3. The gerund corresponds to the English verbal noun in -*ing.* — 4. visit, **commeo ad;** lit. " travel to."

XXIII.

1. See XV., note 1. — 2. Abl. without a prep. — 3. See XXII., note 4. — 4. royal power; **regnum.** — 5. **fines.** — 6. Use **in** w. acc. — 7. "The same thing which I" [attempt] ; **Idem quod,** etc. — 8. Use plur. — 9. **nuntio.** — 10. Use fut. In English the present tense is often used, as here, of actions really future in time, especially in subordinate clauses. The Latin is more exact in the use of the tenses. Notice also that the relative pronoun is omitted in this sentence in English, but must be inserted in the Latin; "battles which you shall see."

XXIV.

1. "for which reason," or simply "therefore." — 2. "give a journey." — 3. "great marches." — 4. "nearest route." — 5. "him" refers to the subject; use the proper case of **sui.** The prep. **cum** is appended to the abl. case of the personal pronouns. See XVII., note 3. — 6. Use **iter.**

XXV.

1. "Takes its beginning from "; i.e. begins at . . . — 2. Use **c** or **ex.** — 3. Compare XXIV., note 5.

XXVI.

1. Use ablative without a prep. — 2. "This news " = these things, **haec.** — 3. Use future. Compare XXIII., note 10.

XXVII.

The forms of verbs given in the vocabulary are the first three of the "principal parts." See Gr. 168, 169.

1. Use imperf. tense. — 2. Use future perf. The "assembling" is to be finished before the "giving." — 3. "to the bank"; **ad** w. acc. — 4. See XXIV., note 2.

XXVIII.

The force and construction of the forms from the simple stem cannot be clearly given until the pupil has gone further, as most of them have no corresponding forms in English. Meanwhile the supine may be translated by the English infinitive, and the fut. act. participle by " about to." The perf. pass. participle corresponds to the English pass. participle ; e.g. **dătus** = " given," or *"having been given"; datūrus,* " about to give," etc.

From this point the teacher should require the principal parts of all verbs, and the form of each stem, with the manner of formation of

the present and perfect stems as shown in the Gr. 158–162 and 164–167. Verbs in the vocabularies, without any meaning added, have been already defined in preceding vocabularies.

1. "easy to do." — 2. "to ask for." — 3. Compare the second Latin sentence. — 4. Abl. without a prep. — 5. **factu.** — 6. Use **e.** — 7. Use **a.** — 8. **fines.**

XXIX.

1. i.e. is now divided; has been divided. Use the perf. tense. The present would mean "is being divided," "is now undergoing division." — 2. Use future perf. Compare XXIII., note 10, and XXVII., note 2. — 3. Use **e.**

XXX.

1. The pres. part. **praesens** usually means "present," perhaps because **adsum** lacks the participle. — 2. "would be able"; see Gr. 317. — 3. "it is not advantageous, etc." — 4. **locus.** — 5. Perfect tense. — 6. Abl. without a prep. — 7. Use the singular. A finite verb sometimes agrees with the nearest subject, and is understood with the others. — 8. "One hundred and twenty thousands of men."

XXXI.

1. **debebant,** "were under obligation." As the English *ought* has no past tense, some other expression of the same force must be used here. — 2. "from one another." — 3. Use dative case to express *on* here. — 4. Translate "nations which are beyond the Rhine." — 5. Use fut. tense.

XXXII.

1. Translate "to be able very much" **(plurimum).** — 2. "with," **apud.** — 3. "many taken enemies." — 4. Pres. **malo,** I prefer. Translate "rather . . . than" by **quam.**

XXXIII.

1. Compounds of **eo** almost always drop the **v** of the perfect stem. See Gr. [12] (*c*). — 2. "to their friends." — 3. Abl. without a prep. — 4. Future tense.

XXXIV.

1. **per me,** "for all of me," "as far as I am concerned." — 2. Use **nolite** with the infin., "be unwilling to, etc." — 3. Use **e.** — 4. Use future perf. — 5. Compare XXXI., note 3. — 6. "you may" = "it is permitted to you."

<div align="center">EXERCISES ON SYNTAX.</div>

[The exercises on syntax given here are not enough to give the pupil a thorough training, but are intended to cover the more important and common constructions, and give him enough familiarity with them to begin the translation of a Latin author. The teacher should keep in mind the fact that constant repetition is the only way to make a principle familiar to the learner, and also that pupils find such repetition and training much less irksome at the beginning of their study than later.]

<div align="center">XXXV.</div>

1. **audeo** is semi-deponent; see Gr. [216] (*g*). — 2. **tres partes** = three-fourths. — 3. See Gr. [268]. — 4. Translate **in Sequanos** "among the Sequani." — 5. See Gr. [262], end. — 6. Abl. without a prep. — 7. "For" is often used in English to express extent of time and space. — 8. Translate "thought himself to be able," etc. — 9. Use **dum** with present tense.

<div align="center">XXXVI.</div>

1. **quibuscum;** see XVII, note 3. — 2. "The Helvetians have in mind," Gr. 270. — 3. Dat. with a compound of **prae,** Gr. [269], end. — 4. "advantageous," lit. "for an advantage." Gr. [272]. — 5. Translate "nothing of left," i.e. of remainder, **nihil reliqui.** — 6. "for an aid to Cæsar." — 7. "neighboring to." — 8. "what of business." — 9. "into a province," **in** with acc. — 10. See Gr. [269]. — 11. "on account of," **propter.**

<div align="center">XXXVII.</div>

1. ("was able very much," i.e.) "had great influence." — 2. See Gr. [268]. — 3. ("asks from him alone those things," i.e.) questions him privately about, etc. — 4. Translate "one hundred and ten of thousands."

<div align="center">XXXVIII.</div>

1. **tridui,** see Gr. [284]. — 2. See Gr. [284], near end. — 3. (foot-soldiers equally many in number, i.e.) "the same number of foot-soldiers." — 4. "once and again" i.e. repeatedly, several times. — 5. Translate "more of sorrow." — 6. Use **ex.**

<div align="center">XXXIX.</div>

1. See Gr. [285], end. — 2. See Gr. [257]. — 3. **res militaris** = warfare. — 4. feelings; **animus,** lit. soul, mind.

<div align="center">XLI.</div>

1. See Gr. [297]. — 2. See Gr. [297], end. — 3. "and those who." The antecedent is often implied in the relative. — 4. See Gr. [269], end.

— 5. Translate "many things," **muita.** — 6. Translate " it was fought." See Gr. [234]. — 7. "In war." **bello;** lit. "by war."

XLII.

1. See Gr. [299]. — 2. **inter se.** — 3. Use abl. without a prep. The Latin uses an abl. of means; " kept in his army by means of the camp." — 4. **aperto latere;** "on the open (i.e. undefended) side." The left side was covered by the shield. — 5. **prima nocte;** in the first part of the night.

XLIII.

1. The perfect means "am wont"; plup. "was wont," etc. — 2. See Gr. [234]. — 3. **injussu** (found only in the abl.) means " with the *no-order*," i.e. without the order of, etc. — 4. Translate "in whom." — 5. "faith of all things," i.e. confidence in all matters. — 6. " in the third watch." — 7. " at what interval he was wont," i.e. at the interval, at which, etc. — 8. **in colle medio;** lit. on the middle of the hill. **Medius,** like **summus, imus, primus,** etc., sometimes refers to a part of the word it limits. Compare XVI., note 5. — 9. " a thousand and five hundred paces." — 10. **intra fines.**

XLIV.

The pupil should carefully read Gr. [307] and take note of the different ways of translating the ablative absolute. The absolute construction, though not common in English, is a favorite one in Latin. In some of the sentences given in the exercise more than one way of translation is possible, and the teacher should require the pupil to give them all, and tell the modification expressed, — time, cause, concession, etc.

1. **gratulatum** is supine. — 2. on the right. wing. — 3. **viribus** may be dative (Gr. [269]) or ablative (Gr. [297]). Both cases are found with **confido.** — 4. Active forms in English must often be changed to the passive in translating into Latin, since the Latin has no perfect active participle. So here, translate " our cavalry having been driven back." — 5. " This speech having been delivered."

XLV.

Illustrations of " sequence of tenses " will come in the next exercise and the following, when the subjunctive in subordinate clauses has been introduced.

1. **nihil** is usually found only in nom. and acc., but a regularly declined o-stem is found in the old Latin, and the abl. **nihilo** occurs with

minus to denote degree of difference. — 2. Supply **esse.** Certain forms of **sum** are often omitted. For **bono animo,** see Gr. 305. — 3. Use perf. — 4. Translate "having set out." The Latin is more exact than the English in the use of tenses. The perfect must be used here, because the *setting out* takes place before the *coming.* A present participle would imply that it took place at the same time. — 5. Use present. See Gr. [309].

XLVI.

[The exercises given in this and the next lesson are too few to give the necessary training on subjunctive uses, but the following lessons will contain illustrations, and the teacher should require a reason for every subjunctive met with from this time forth. Subjunctives in conditional sentences are purposely omitted, that the various forms of conditional sentences may be given together in a later lesson.

The pupil should take notice that the English usually expresses purpose by the infinitive, and should translate accordingly. Most of the explanation necessary is left to the teacher, who should give minute and patient training on the moods until the pupil has formed the habit of noticing the force of a subjunctive, and the modification of thought expressed by its use.]

1. See Gr. 323. — 2. **quin.** See Gr. [326]. — 3. Use rel. pr. and compare No. 3 of the Latin exercise. — 4. Use **qualis.** — 5. Subj. A clause of characteristic. See Gr. [326]. — 6. "room of throwing . . . was not given."

XLVII.

1. "although." — 2. an enemy turned away, i.e. an enemy fleeing. — 3. What difference of meaning would the indicative give ? See Gr. [328]. — 4. "In what direction." — 5. Translate "he [being] intercessor"; abl. abs. — 6. Abl. See Gr. [297], end. — 7. Compare No. 4 of the Latin exercise.

XLVIII.

1. See Gr. [269], end. — 2. See Gr. [297]. — 3. **velle** is the object of a verb of saying implied in **legatos mittit.** Insert "saying" in translation. — 4. Use abl. abs. — 5. i.e. "that the Germans should get used," etc. Notice the use of "for" in English before an infinitive phrase. The sentence can mean also that crossing is dangerous for the Germans, in which case "Germans" would be dative. Write it in both ways. — 6. Translate "in the sway." — 7. i.e. kept themselves there. Translate accordingly. — 8. After verbs of *promising,* etc., the exactness of the Latin

requires the future. As there is no future infinitive, the pres. infin. of the act. periphrastic conjugation must be used, as it is nearly equivalent to a future. Translate " that the matter was going to be for a care to him." — 9. Translate " make an end for his injuries," and notice that a future form, as in the first part, is required.

XLIX.

1. Translate **receptos** as an independent clause. So **usi**, in the next sentence, as if in the same construction as **proficiscantur.** — 2. **ut** is omitted. See Gr. [325], mid. — 3. " a fleeing enemy." The participle is equivalent to a simple adjective. — 4. Translate **petentibus** by a relative clause. — 5. Translate " frightened." — 6. Subj. See Gr. 322. — 7. " having seen this," **conspicati.** — 8. " three days having intervened." — 9. " a council having been called together, he upbraided," etc. — 10. Translate " held the brought-back [ones] in the number of enemies." — 11. See Gr. [268], end. — 12. " having pursued . . . slew," etc. — 13. of them ; **ex his.**

L.

1. " in the course of his inquiry." The abl. without a prep. would mean " by inquiring." — 2. " made the enemy a chance," or in English idiom, " gave them a chance to fight." — 3. Use abl. abs. " The hope of a return home having been taken away." — 4. " for undergoing," **ad** with gerundive. — 5. " makes an end of speaking." — 6. **ad** with gerundive ; a common way of expressing purpose. — 7. Translate " room of throwing." — 8. **sui opprimendi causā.** The genitive of the gerund or gerundive, with **causā**, is often used to express purpose. For **sui**, see Gr. [348].

LI.

1. In translating, insert " asking " before the last clause. It is implied in **conclamavit.** For the mood, see Gr. 323. — 2. **quidem** emphasizes the word before it. Translate " not even by giving hostages." — 3. Translate " refrain from going on, etc." — 4. Subj. See Gr. [328]. — 5. Use abl. abs. Translate " he " by **se.** Why ? — 6. **placuit ei ut mitteret ;** lit. it pleased him to send. — 7. See XLVIII., note 8.

LII.

1. **venit in spem,** " entertains a hope." Notice that expressions of *hoping, doubting,* etc., are modified by the same form of condition as hypothetical statements. — 2. " if I had any need." Gr. 270. — 3. See note 1 above. — 4. Use **quin ;** Gr. [326].

LIII.

The left-hand column in this exercise, and the following, contains sentences in the direct form; the other contains the same sentences made dependent on verbs of *saying*, etc. The teacher should call the attention of the pupil to the changes of tense required by the rule of sequence, as well as the changes of mood.— 1. See Gr. [268].— 2. Use **ullus.**— 3. When a fut. indic. becomes infin. the act. periphrastic infin. must be used, as the future lacks the infin.

LIV.

1. These verbs are fut. perf.— 2. Perf. " where we have taken our stand"; **constitimus.**— 3. **ut** w. subj.— 4. infinitive.

LV.

The pupil should be required to change all the sentences of these exercises to the direct form.

1. Notice that the relative clauses at the end are not a part of what is said to Cæsar, but are remarks added by the writer. They are in the indicative, therefore. See Gr. [322], end.— 2. pro.— 3. Translate " that there were two parties of all Gaul."— 4. Use impf. " When they [had fought and] were [still] fighting many years.— 5. de, concerning.— 6. " summoned by means of pay."— 7. " on account of this thing."— 8. " bound neither by an oath, nor," etc.

[The remaining lessons, LVI. to LX., are intended to give additional drill on the various ways of expressing time and place in Latin, and at the same time to serve as a general review of the more common constructions of syntax. Many of the sentences in them are repeated from previous lessons. Not only the head matter, but also the notes of the Grammar, should be studied in connection with them.]

LVI.

1. See Gr. 339.— 2. **ad** with the name of a town means *to* or *in* the vicinity of.— 3. See Gr. [297], end.— 4. **minus** often has the same force as **non.**

LVII.

1. See LVI., note 2.

LVIII.

1. The adj. **mortuus,** dead, with the verb **sum,** supplies the lacking tenses of **morior.**— 2. a. d. = **ante diem.**— 3. See Gr. [330].—

4. "a while."—**5. ad** with dates means *about.*—**6.** Cassian war, i.e. war with Cassius. —**7.** See Gr. [330], mid.

LIX.

1. "early in the night." —**2.** "it will come to pass." —**3.** See Gr. 325.

LX.

1. qui = ii qui, as often. "those who." —**ipsorum** = an emphatic "their." —**3.** See Gr. [267], end.—**4.** "for this reason." The rel. clause is the favorite construction in Latin, and is often used where the English idiom requires a demonstrative. —**5.** "which it has been said that the Gaul's occupy."—**6.** "is bounded."—**7.** "off the Sequani"; i.e. on that side of the country where the Sequani dwell. So **a dextra** means "on the right," etc.—**8.** "slopes"; i.e. extends.—**9.** "they look to the north"; i.e. their country stretches away in a northerly direction.—**10.** The whole phrase means "north-west."—**11. apud** before the name of a man means "at the house of"; before the name of a people, "in the country of," "among."—**12.** Insert "saying" which is implied in **persuasit.**—**13.** See Gr. [297].—**14. hoc ... quod,** "for the reason that."—**15.** "on" one side.—**16.** See Gr. 295.—**17.** "in proportion to," "considering."—**18. sibi suscepit,** "took on himself."—**19.** See Gr. 344. **plebi acceptus** = popular. —**20.** "when they have seized," or "after seizing," abl. abs. expressing time. See Gr. [307].—**21.** See Gr. [290].—**22.** "compel him to plead in chains," i.e. arrest and bring to trial.—**23. damnatum** limits the understood object of **sequi.** "it was right that the punishment should overtake the condemned [criminal], i.e. the law required this punishment to be inflicted on him if he were found guilty. —**24.** "appointed day of the pleading," i.e. day set for the pleading, or for his trial. —**25. familia,** slaves; not family in the English sense. —**26.** escaped trial, lit. rescued himself in order not to plead his case. —**27.** died. The adj. **mortuus** supplies the place of the lacking participle of **morior,** and with the verb **sum** has the same meaning as the complete tenses. —**28.** The Latin expression for "committed suicide."

LATIN INDEX.

A.

A. = Aulŭs.

ā (prep. w. abl.), *from, away from; by* (to denote the agent); **a dextro cornu,** *on the right wing.*

ăb (prep. w. abl.), *from, away from, by.*

ăbeŏ, -īrĕ, -iī, -ĭtŭm, to *go away, depart.*

abstĭneŏ, -tĭnērĕ, -tĭnuī, -tentŭm, to *hold off, abstain, refrain.*

absŭm, ăbessĕ, āfuī, āfŭtūrŭs, to *be away, be absent, be distant.*

ac (conj.), *and.*

acceptŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *acceptable;* **plēbī acceptŭs,** *popular.*

accĭdŏ, -cĭdĕrĕ, -cĭdī, to *happen.*

accĭpĭŏ, -cĭpĕrĕ, -cēpī, -ceptŭm, to *receive.*

ăciēs, -ēī, *edge; line* (of battle); *army* (in order of battle).

acrĭtĕr (adv.), *sharply, fiercely.*

ăd (prep. w. acc.), *to, toward; for; near, adjoining.*

addūcŏ, -dūcĕrĕ, -duxī, -ductŭm, to *lead, move, influence.*

ădeŏ, -īrĕ, -iī, -ĭtŭm, to *go to, go near, approach, visit.*

adfĕrŏ, -ferrĕ, -tŭlī, -lātŭm, to *bring, bring on.*

adfĭcĭŏ, -fĭcĕrĕ, -fēcī, -fectŭm, to *affect.*

adscendŏ, -scendĕrĕ, -scendī, -scensŭm, to *ascend.*

adsciscŏ, -sciscĕrĕ, -scīvī, -scītŭm, to *take to, join to* (one's self).

adsŭm, ădessĕ, adfuī, adfŭtūrŭs, to *be present, be by.*

adventŭs, -ūs, *coming, arrival.*

advertŏ, -vertĕrĕ, -vertī, -versŭm (Gr. [268]), to *turn to;* **ănĭmŭm advertĕrĕ,** to *turn the mind to, notice.*

Aemŭlĭŭs, -ī, *Æmilius.*

aequŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *equal, even, level.*

aestās, -ātĭs, *summer.*

affĕrŏ; see **adfĕrŏ.**

affĭcĭŏ, -fĭcĕrĕ, -fēcī, -fectŭm, see **adfĭcĭŏ.**

ăgĕr, agrī (Gr. 66), *land, farm-land, country.*

ăgŏ, ăgĕrĕ, ēgī, actŭm, to *do, deal, to hold, conduct, to talk.*

ălĭquĭs, -quă, -quĭd (Gr. 141), *some one.*

ălĭŭs, -ă, -ŭd (Gr. 71), *another;* **ălĭŭs . . . ălĭŭs,** *one . . . another,* **ălĭī . . . ălĭī,** *some . . . others.*

Allŏbrŏgēs, -ŭm, *Allobroges* (a Gallic tribe).

Alpēs, -ĭŭm (F.), *Alps.*

altĕr, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. 71), *the other;* **altĕr . . . altĕr,** *the one . . . the other;* pl. **altĕrī . . . altĕrī,** *one party . . . the other party.*

altĭtūdŏ, -ĭnĭs, *height, depth.*

altŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *high, deep.*

ămĭcĭtĭă, -ae, *friendship.*

ămĭcŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *friendly,* often as a noun, **amicus,** *friend.*

āmittŏ, -mittĕrĕ, -mīsī, -missŭm, to *lose.*

ămŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *love.*

amplius (adv.), *more*.

anceps, -cĭpĭtĭs (Gr. [115]), *double, doubtful*.

angustŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *narrow*.

ănĭmadvertŏ, -vertĕrĕ, -vertĭ, -versŭm, to *notice*.

ănĭmŭs, -ĭ, *spirit, mind, courage*.

annŭs, -ĭ, *year*.

antĕ (prep. w. acc.), *before*.

antĕ (adv.), *before, formerly*.

antĕ dĭĕm (Gr. [268]), *the day before*.

antĭquŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *ancient, old*.

appellŏ, -ārĕ, -āvĭ, -ātŭm, to *call*.

appĕtŏ, -pĕtĕrĕ, -pĕtīvĭ, -pĕtītŭm, to *seek*.

Aprīlĭs, -ĭs, *April*; ĭdūs aprīlēs, *Apr.* 13 (Gr. 496).

ăpŭd (prep. w. acc.), *among, with*.

Aquĭtānĭă, -ae, *Aquitania* (S. W. France).

Aquĭtānŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *Aquitanian*.

Arăr, -ărĭs (Gr. [102]), the *Arar* (river, now *Saone*).

arbĭtrŏr, -ārĭ, -ātŭs, to *think, judge*.

Arĭovistŭs, -ĭ, *Ariovistus* (a German king).

armă, -ōrŭm, *arms*.

arx, arcĭs, *fort, citadel*.

ascendŏ, -scendĕrĕ, -scendĭ, ascensŭm ; see adscendŏ.

ascensŭs, -ūs, *ascent*.

atquĕ (conj.), *and*.

attingŏ, -tingĕrĕ, -tĭgĭ, -tactŭm, to *reach to, touch*.

auctōrĭtās, -ātĭs, *authority, influence*.

audācĭŭs (adv.), *more boldly*.

audĕŏ, audērĕ, ausŭs (Gr. [216]), to *dare*.

aufĕrŏ, auferrĕ, abstŭlĭ, ablātŭm, to *take away*.

aut (conj.), *or*; aut . . . aut, *either . . . or*.

autĕm (conj.), *but, moreover*.

auxĭlĭŭm, -ĭ, *help, aid*; pl. auxĭlĭă, *auxiliary troops*.

ăvertŏ, -vertĕrĕ, -vertĭ, -versŭm, to *turn away, turn aside*; ăversŭs, *turned away, fleeing*.

B.

barbărŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *barbarous*.

Belgae, -ārŭm, *Belgians*.

bellŏ, -ārĕ, -āvĭ, -ātŭm, to *war, make war*.

bellŭm, -ĭ, *war*.

Bibractĕ, -ĭs (N.) (Gr. [100]), *Bibracte* (a town).

bĭduŭm, -ĭ, *two days*.

bienniŭm, -ĭ, *two years*.

Bojĭ, -ōrŭm, *Boii* (a tribe).

bŏnŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. [123]), *good*.

C.

C. = Gaĭus.

cădŏ, cădĕrĕ, cĕcĭdĭ, cāsum, to *fall, happen*.

Caesăr, -ărĭs, *Cæsar*.

călămĭtās, -ātĭs, *defeat, misfortune*.

căpĭŏ, căpĕrĕ, cēpĭ, captŭm, to *take, receive*.

carrŭs, -ĭ, *cart*.

Cassĭānŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *Cassian, of Cassius*.

Cassĭŭs, -ĭ, *Cassius*.

castellŭm, -ĭ, *fort, redoubt*.

Castĭcŭs, -ĭ, *Casticus*.

castră, -ōrŭm, *camp*.

cāsŭs, -ūs, *fall, chance, accident*.

Catamantaloedĭs, -ĭs, *Catamantaloedis*.

causă, -ae, *cause, reason*; abl. causā, *for the sake*; causam dicere, to *plead one's cause, be tried*.

cĕlĕrĭtĕr (adv.), *quickly*.

Celtae, -ārŭm, *Celts*.

censŭs, -ūs, *census, count*.

centŭm, *hundred.*

centŭriŏ, -ōnĭs, *centurion.*

certiŏr, -iŭs, *more certain;* certiŏrĕm făcĕrĕ, *to make* (one) *more certain,* to *inform;* certiŏr fĭĕrĭ, *to be informed.*

cĭbārĭă, -ōrŭm, *food;* cĭbārĭă mōlĭtă, *ground food;* i.e. *meal.*

Cimbrī, -ōrŭm, *Cimbri.*

circĭtĕr (adv.), *about.*

circuĭtŭs, -ūs, *circuit.*

circŭm (prep. w. acc.), *around, about.*

cĭtĕriŏr, -iŭs (Gr. [123]), *nearer.*

cīvĭtās, -ātĭs, *state.*

clĭens, -ntĭs, *client.*

coĕmŏ, -ĕmĕrĕ, -ēmī, -ēmptum, to *buy up, buy.*

[coepĭŏ, coepĕrĕ], coepī, coeptŭm, to *begin.* (The incomplete tenses are found only in old Latin.)

cognoscŏ, -noscĕrĕ, -nōvī, -nĭtŭm, to *learn;* perf. cognōvī, to *know.*

cōgŏ, cōgĕrĕ, coēgī, coactŭm, to *collect, compel.* ·

collĭs, -ĭs (*m.*), *hill.*

collŏcŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *place, post, settle* (a colony).

collŏquŏr, -lŏquī, -lŏcūtŭs, to *talk with, converse.*

collŏquĭŭm, -ī, *conversation, conference.*

commeātŭs, -ūs, *provisions, supplies.*

commĕmŏrŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *tell, relate.*

commĕŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *go and come;* commeo ad, to *visit.*

committŏ, -mittĕrĕ, -mīsī, -missŭm, to *entrust, commit,* to *join* (battle).

commŏdŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *fit, useful, proper.*

commūnĭŏ, -īrĕ, -īvī, -ītŭm, to *wall in, fortify.*

compărŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *prepare, make ready.*

cōnātŭm, -ī (a thing attempted). *attempt.*

cōnātŭs, -ūs, *attempt.*

concēdŏ, -cēdĕrĕ, -cessī, -cessŭm, to *grant, allow.*

concĭliŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *gain, gain over, get.*

concĭliŭm, -ī, *council.*

conclāmŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *cry out.*

concursŭs, -ūs, *assembling, coming together.*

condūcŏ, -dū cĕrĕ, -duxī -ductŭm, to *bring together, bring along.*

confĕrŏ, -ferrĕ, -tŭlī, -lātŭm, to *collect, bring together,* to *compare;* sē conferrĕ, to *betake one's self, go.*

confĭciŏ, -fĭcĕrĕ, -fēcī, -fectŭm, to *do, accomplish, finish.*

confīdŏ, -fīdĕrĕ, -fīsŭs (Gr. [216]), to *trust, confide in.*

confirmŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *fix, appoint;* to *strengthen, encourage;* to *make* (peace) ; to *assure, promise.*

conjĭciŏ, -jĭcĕrĕ, -jēcī, -jectum, to *throw;* se conjicere, *betake one's self.*

conjūrātĭŏ, -ōnĭs, *conspiracy, league.*

cōnŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs, to *try, attempt.*

conscĭscŏ, -sciscĕrĕ, -scīvī, -scītŭm ; sĭbī mortĕm conscĭscĕrĕ, to *kill one's self.*

conscrībŏ, -scrībĕrĕ, -scripsī, -scriptŭm, to *levy* (troops).

Considiŭs, -ī, *Considius.*

consīdŏ, -sīdĕrĕ, -sēdī, -sessŭm, to *settle, encamp.*

consĭliŭm, -ī, *plan.*

consōlŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs, to *console, cheer, encourage.*

conspĭcĭŏ,-spĭcĕrĕ,-spexĭ,-spec-
tŭm, to see, perceive.

constĭtuŏ, -uĕrĕ, -uĭ, -ūtŭm, to
determine, decide on, appoint,
place.

consuescŏ, -suescĕrĕ, -suĕvĭ,
suētŭm, to get used; perf. con-
suevi, to be wont.

consŭl, -ŭlĭs, consul.

contendŏ, -tendĕrĕ,-tendĭ, -ten-
tŭm, to strive, hasten; to con-
tend, fight.

contĭnentĕr (adv), continually,
constantly.

contĭneŏ, -tĭnērĕ, -tĭnuĭ, to hold
in, bound, keep in.

contĭnuŭs, -ă, -ŭm, successive.

contŭmēlĭă, -ae, insult.

convĕnĭŏ, -vĕnīrĕ, -vēnĭ, -ven-
tŭm, to come together, meet,
assemble.

conventŭs, -ūs, meeting, assem-
bly ; pl. assizes.

convertŏ, -vertĕrĕ, -vertĭ, -ver-
sŭm, to turn, change.

cōpĭă, -ae, plenty, supply. In pl.
copiae, forces, troops.

cornū,-ūs,horn, wing(of an army).

corpŭs, -ŏrĭs, body.

cōtĭdĭānŭs, -ă, -ŭm ; see quotid.

Crassŭs, -ĭ, Crassus.

crĕmŏ, -ărĕ, -ăvĭ, -ătŭm, to
burn, set on fire.

cultŭs, -ūs, civilization, refine-
ment.

cŭm (prep. w. abl.), with, along
with.

cŭm (conj.) (Gr. [328], [329], [330]),
when, since, because, although.

cŭpĭdissĭmē (adv.), most eagerly.

cŭpĭdĭtās, -ātĭs, desire, greed.

cŭpĭdŭs, -ă, -ŭm, desirous, fond.

cūră, -ae, care.

cūrŏ, -ărĕ, -ăvĭ, -ătŭm, to care
for, attend to.

custōs, -ōdĭs, guard, sentinel.

D.

damnŏ, -ărĕ, -ăvĭ, -ătŭm, to con-
demn.

dē (prep. w. abl.), down from,
from, concerning, about; dē
quartā vĭgĭlĭā, in the fourth
watch, in the course of . . .

dēbeŏ, -ērĕ, -uĭ, -ĭtŭm, to owe,
ought.

dĕcĕm, ten.

dĕcĭmŭs, -ă, -ŭm, tenth.

dĕcŭrĭŏ, -ōnĭs, decurion (a mili-
tary officer).

dēdūcŏ, -dūcĕrĕ, -duxĭ, -duc-
tŭm, to lead, lead down.

dēfendŏ, -fendĕrĕ, -fendĭ, -fen-
sŭm, to defend.

dēfĕtiscŏr, -fĕtiscĭ, -fessŭs, to
grow weary; part. dēfessŭs,
tired, worn out.

dējĭcĭŏ, -jĭcĕrĕ, -jēcĭ, -jectŭm,
to cast down, throw away; partic.
dējectŭs, disappointed.

dēlĕgŏ, -lĕgĕrĕ, -lēgĭ, -lectŭm,
to choose.

dēlībĕrŏ, -ărĕ, -ăvĭ, -ătŭm, to
deliberate, consider.

dēlĭgŏ ; see dēlĕgŏ.

dēmĭnuŏ, -uĕrĕ, -uĭ, -ūtŭm, to
lessen.

dēmŭm (adv.), at last, at length.

dēsistŏ, -sistĕrĕ, -stĭtĭ, destĭ-
tŭm,to cease from,leave off, desist.

dēsŭm, deessĕ, dēfuĭ, dēfŭtū-
rŭs, to be wanting, be lacking.

dēterreŏ, -ērĕ, -uĭ, -ĭtŭm, to
frighten ; to hinder.

deŭs, -ĭ (Gr. 68), god.

dēvehŏ, -vehĕrĕ, -vexĭ, -vec-
tŭm, to bring down, bring.

dextĕr, -ă, -ŭm ; also, -tra, -trum,
right, on the right hand; as a
noun, dextră, the right hand,
the right side or flank.

dīcŏ, dīcĕrĕ, dixĭ, dictŭm, to say,
tell, appoint, plead (one's cause).

dictĭō, -ōnĭs, *pleading.*

diēs, ēī (c.), *day ; a while.*

diffĕrō, -ferrĕ, -distŭlī, -dīlā-tŭm, to *differ.*

diffĭcĭlĭs, -ĕ (Gr. 121), *hard, diffi-cult.*

dĭmĭttŏ, -mĭttĕrĕ, -mĭsī, mis-sŭm, to *dismiss.*

dĭs, dĭtĭs, *rich.*

discēdŏ, -cēdĕrĕ, -cessī, -ces-sŭm, to *depart, go out* or *away.*

dispōnŏ, -pōnĕrĕ, -pŏsuī, -pŏsĭ-tŭm, to *arrange, place, post.*

dĭū (adv.), *long.*

dĭūtĭŭs (adv.), *longer.*

Dīvĭcŏ, -ōnĭs, *Divico.*

dīvĭdŏ, -vĭdĕrĕ, -vīsī, -vĭsŭm, to *divide, separate.*

Dīvĭtĭăcŭs, -ī, *Divitiacus.*

dŏ, dărĕ, dĕdī, dătŭm (Gr. 226), to *give, grant.*

dŏlŏr, -ōrĭs, *grief, sorrow.*

dŏmŭs, -ūs (F.) (Gr. [115]), *house, home ;* dŏmī, *at home ;* dŏmŭm, *home, homewards.* (Gr.[273] and [265].)

dŭbĭtātĭō, -ōnĭs, *doubt.*

dŭbĭŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *doubtful ;* non est dubium, *there is no doubt.*

dŭcentĭ, -ae, -ă, *two hundred.*

dŭcŏ, dūcĕrĕ, duxī, ductŭm, to *lead, bring ;* to *think, regard ;* dūcĕrĕ ĭn mātrĭmōnĭŭm, or often dūcĕrĕ alone, to *marry* (said of the man).

dŭm (conj.) (Gr. [330]), *while.*

Dumnŏrix, -ĭgĭs, *Dumnorix.*

duŏ, -ae, -ŏ (Gr. [72]), *two.*

dux, dŭcĭs, *guide, leader.*

E.

ē (prep. w. abl.), *out of, from.*

ĕdŏ, ĕdĕrĕ, ēdī, ēsŭm (Gr. 223), to *eat, consume.*

ēdūcŏ, -dūcĕrĕ, -duxī, -ductŭm, to *lead out, lead forth, bring.*

effēmĭnŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *weaken, effeminate.*

effĕrŏ, -ferrĕ, extŭlī, ēlātŭm, to *bring forth, bring.*

effĭcĭŏ, -fĭcĕrĕ, -fēcī, -fectŭm; to *make, render.*

ĕgŏ (Gr. 125), *I, me.*

ēgrĕdĭŏr, -grĕdī, -gressŭs, to *go out, set forth.*

ēnuntĭŏ, -ārĕ, āvī, -ātŭm, to *an-nounce, tell, bring news of.*

eŏ, īrĕ, īvī or ĭī, ĭtŭm (Gr. 227), to *go.*

eō (adv.), *thither.*

eōdĕm (adv.), *to the same place.*

ĕquĕs, -ĭtĭs, *horseman, horse-sol-dier.*

ĕquĭtātŭs, -ūs, *cavalry.*

ērĭpĭŏ, -rĭpĕrĕ, -rĭpuī, -reptŭm, to *take away ;* to *rescue.*

ĕt (conj.), *and ;* ĕt . . . ĕt, *both . . . and.*

ĕtĭăm (adv.), *also, even.*

ex (prep. w. abl.), *out of, from.*

exeŏ, -īrĕ, -ĭī, -ĭtŭm, to *go out, go forth, depart.*

exercĭtātĭŏ, -ōnĭs, *training, skill.*

exercĭtŭs, -ūs, *army.*

existĭmŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *think, believe.*

expectŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *wait for.*

explōrātŏr, -ōrĭs, *spy, scout.*

exquĭrŏ, -quĭrĕrĕ, -quĭsĭvī, -quĭ-sĭtŭm, to *search out, inquire, in-quire into.*

exsĕquŏr, -sĕquī, -sĕcūtŭs, to *carry out, execute.*

extĕrŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. [123]), *out-side, outer.*

extĭmŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. [123]), *out-ermost, farthest.*

extrēmŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. [123]), *out-ermost, farthest.*

F.

făcĭlĕ (adv.), *easily.*

făcĭlĭs, -ĕ (Gr. 121), *easy.*

făcĭlĭŭs (adv.), *more easily.*

făcĭŏ, făcĕrĕ, fēcī, factŭm, to *make, do.*

factĭŏ, -ōnĭs, *party, faction.*

făcultās, -ātĭs, *supply.*

fămĭlĭă, -ae (Gr. [54]), *household.*

fĕrē (adv.), *almost, nearly.*

fĕrŏ, ferrĕ, tŭlī, lātŭm (Gr. 224), to *bear, bring, carry.*

fĕrŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *wild, savage.*

fĭdēs, ĕī, *faith, belief, promise.*

fīlĭă, -ae (Gr. [54]), *daughter.*

fīlĭŭs, -ī (Gr. 67), *son.*

fīnĭs, -ĭs (c.) (Gr. [99]), *end;* pl. fīnēs, *bounds, land, territories, country.*

fīnĭtĭmŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *neighboring;* as a noun, *neighbor.*

fīo, fĭĕrī [factŭs] (Gr. 229), to *be made, become, happen.*

fīrmŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *firm, strong.*

flăgĭtŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *demand, ask for.*

fleŏ, flērĕ, flēvī, flētŭm, to *weep.*

flētŭs, -ūs, *weeping.*

flūmĕn, -ĭnĭs, *river.*

fluŏ, fluĕrĕ, fluxī, to *flow.*

fortĭs, -ĕ, *bold, brave.*

fortĭtŭdŏ, -ĭnĭs, *courage, fortitude.*

fortūnă, -ae, *luck, fortune.*

fossă, -ae, *ditch, moat.*

frātĕr, -trĭs (Gr. 80), *brother.*

frūmentārĭŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *of corn;* rēs frūmentārĭă, *corn supply.*

frūmentŭm, -ī, *corn, grain.*

fŭgă, -ae, *flight.*

fŭgĭtīvŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *fleeing;* as a noun, fŭgĭtīvŭs, *deserter, runaway.*

G.

Găbīnĭŭs, -ī, *Gabinius.*

Gallŭs, -ī, *a Gaul;* pl. Gallī, *the Gauls.*

Gallĭă, -ae, *Gaul (now France).*

Gallĭcŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *Gallic.*

Gărumnă, -ae (m.), *the Garonne (river).*

Gĕnŭă, -ae, *Geneva.*

Germānĭă, -ae, *Germany.*

Germānŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *German;* usually pl. Germānī, *the Germans.*

gĕrŏ, gĕrĕrĕ, gessī, gestŭm, to *manage, carry on, wage (war).*

glōrĭă, -ae, *glory, honor.*

grātĭă, -ae, *favor, popularity;* pl. grātĭae, *thanks;* grātĭās ăgĕrĕ, to *give thanks, thank.*

grātŭlŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs (Gr. [269]), to *congratulate.*

H.

hăbeŏ, -ērĕ, -uī, -ĭtŭm, to *have, hold; deliver (a speech).*

hăbĭtŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *dwell.*

Haeduŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *Hæduan;* pl. Haeduī, *the Hæduans (a Gallic tribe).*

Harūdēs, -ŭm, *Harudes.*

Helvētĭŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *Helvetian;* pl. Helvetiī, *the Helvetians.*

hībernă, -ōrŭm (neut. pl. of hībernŭs), *winter quarters.*

hībernŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *of winter, wintry.*

hīc, haec, hŏc (Gr. 134), *this; he, she, &c.*

hĭĕmŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *winter.*

Hispānĭă, -ae, *Spain.*

hŏmŏ, -ĭnĭs, *man, human being.*

hŏnŏr, -ōrĭs, *honor.*

hōră, -ae, *hour.*

hortŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs, to *urge.*

hostĭs, -ĭs, *enemy.*

hūmānĭtās, -ātĭs, *culture, refinement.*

I.

ĭbĭ (adv.), *there, in that place.*

īdĕm, ĕădĕm, ĭdĕm (Gr. 137), *same.*

ĭdōneŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *fit, suitable.*

īdūs, -uŭm (F.), *Ides* (Gr. 490).

ignĭs, -ĭs (Gr. [99]), *fire.*

illĕ, illă, illŭd (Gr. 131), *that, he, she,* &c.

impĕdīmentŭm, -ī, *hindrance;* pl. impedimenta, *baggage.*

impĕrĭŭm, -ī, *power, sway, military authority.*

impĕrŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *order, command, levy* (troops).

impĕtrŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *gain, gain a request.*

impĕtŭs, -ūs, *attack.*

implōrŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *beg, pray.*

importŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *import, bring in.*

imprŏbŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *bad, wicked.*

impugnŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *attack.*

ĭn (prep.) w. abl., *in, on, among;* w. acc., *into, to, toward, for.*

incendŏ, -cendĕrĕ, -cendī, -censŭm, to *set fire to, burn.*

incĭtŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *rouse up, excite.*

incŏlă, -ae, *inhabitant.*

incŏlŏ, -cŏlĕrĕ, -cŏluī, to *dwell.*

incommŏdŭm, -ī, *misfortune, defeat.*

incrēdĭbĭlĭs, -ĕ, *incredible.*

incūsŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *blame.*

indĕ (adv.), *thence, from there.*

indĭcĭŭm, -ī, *information.*

indūcŏ, -dūcĕrĕ, -duxī, -ductŭm, to *lead on, induce; lead.*

infĕrĭŏr, -ĭŭs (Gr. [123]), *lower.*

infĕrŏ, -ferrĕ, -tŭlī, -lātŭm, to *carry on, wage* (war); to *inflict* (wounds).

infĕrŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. [123]), *lower, inferior.*

influŏ, -fluĕrĕ, -fluxī, to *flow into, empty* (of a river).

ingens, -ntĭs, *huge, great.*

ĭnĭmīcŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *unfriendly, hostile.*

ĭnĭtĭŭm, -ī, *beginning.*

injūrĭă, -ae, *wrong, injury.*

injussū, *without orders.*

insĕquŏr, -sĕquī, -sĕcūtŭs, to *pursue, attack.*

insignĭă, -ĭŭm, *equipments, insignia.*

instĭtūtŭm, -ī, *custom.*

instruŏ, -struĕrĕ, -struxī, -structŭm, to *draw up, arrange.*

intellĕgŏ, -lĕgĕrĕ, -lexī, -lectŭm, to *know, understand.*

intĕr (prep. w. acc.), *between, among;* intĕr sĕ, *mutually, with each other, with one another,* &c. See XII. note 1.

intercēdŏ, -cēdĕrĕ, -cessī, -cessŭm, to *intervene.*

intĕreă (adv.), *meanwhile.*

interfĭcĭŏ, -fĭcĕrĕ, -fēcī, -fectŭm, to *slay, kill.*

intĕrīm (adv.), *meanwhile.*

intĕrĭŏr, -ĭŭs (Gr. [123]), *inner, interior.*

intermittŏ, -mittĕrĕ, -mīsī, -missŭm, to *leave off.*

intervallŭm, -ī, *interval, distance.*

intĭmŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. [123]), *inmost.*

invĕnĭŏ, -vĕnīrĕ, -vēnī, -ventŭm, to *come upon, find.*

ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsŭm (Gr. 132), *self, he himself,* &c.

īre, to *go;* see eo.

ĭs, eă, ĭd (Gr. 129), *this* or *that, he,* &c.

istĕ, istă, istŭd (Gr. 130), *that, he.*

Ită (adv.), *thus, in this way, so;* ita ut, *so that.*

Ităquĕ (conj.), *therefore.*

Ităliă, -ae, *Italy.*

Itĕm (adv.), *also, likewise.*

Itĕr, Itĭnĕrĭs (Gr. [115]), *journey, march, route.*

Itĕrŭm (adv.), *again, a second time.*

J.

jactŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *discuss.*

jăm (adv.), *already, at length.*

jŭbeŏ, jŭbērĕ, jussī, jussŭm, to *bid, order.*

jŭdĭcĭŭm, -ī, *trial.*

jŭdĭcŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *judge, decide.*

jŭgŭm, -ī, *yoke, ridge* (of a hill), *hill.*

jŭmentŭm, -ī, *yoke animal, beast of burden.*

jŭnĭŏr (Gr. [123]), *younger.*

Jūră, -ae, *Jura* (a mountain).

jūrŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *swear.*

jūs, jūrĭs, *right;* jus jurandum, *oath.*

jŭvĕnĭs, -ĭs (Gr. [96], [123]), *young;* as a noun, a *youth.*

K.

Kal. = Kalendae, *Calends* (first day of the month, Gr. 490).

L.

L. = Lūcĭŭs.

Lăbiēnŭs, -ī, *Labienus.*

lăcŭs, -ūs (Gr. [110]), *lake.*

largĭtĕr (adv.), *largely;* largiter posse, to *have great power or influence.*

largĭtĭŏ, -ōnĭs, *free giving, liberality; bribery.*

lātē (adv.), *widely.*

lātĭtūdŏ, -ĭnĭs, *breadth, width.*

lātŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *broad, wide.*

lătŭs, -ĕrĭs, *side, flank.*

lēgātĭŏ, -ōnĭs, *embassy.*

lēgātŭs, -ī, *deputy; lieutenant, envoy, embassador.*

lĕgĭŏ, -ōnĭs, *legion.*

Lēmannŭs, -ī (Lake) *Leman; Lake of Geneva.*

lēnĭtās, -ātĭs, *gentleness, slowness.*

lex, lēgĭs, *law.*

lībĕrĭŭs (adv.), *more freely.*

lībertās, -ātĭs, *freedom.*

līcet, līcērĕ, līcuĭt, līcĭtŭm, *it is permitted, one may.*

Lingŏnēs, -ŭm, *Lingones.*

linguă, -ae, *tongue, speech, language.*

lintĕr, -trĭs (c.) (Gr. 102), *boat, skiff.*

Liscŭs, -ī, *Liscus.*

lŏcŭs, -ī (Gr. [116]), *place, position, situation.*

longē (adv.), *far, by far.*

longissĭmē (adv.), *farthest, very far.*

longĭtūdŏ, -ĭnĭs, *length.*

lŏquŏr, lŏquī, lŏcūtŭs, to *speak, talk.*

lux, lūcĭs, *light;* prīmă lux, *daybreak.*

M.

M. = Marcus.

măgĭs (adv.), *more.*

măgĭstrātŭs, -ūs, *magistrate.*

magnĭtūdŏ, -ĭnĭs, *size.*

magnŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. [123]), *great, large.*

măjŏr, -ŭs (Gr. [123]), *larger, greater.*

mălŏ, mallĕ, măluī (Gr. 225), to *prefer, choose, wish more.*

mălŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. [123]), *bad.*

mănŭs, -ūs (F.), *hand.*

mātrĭmōnĭŭm, -ī, *marriage;* in matrimonium ducere, *to marry.*

Matrŏnă -ae (m.), *Marne* (river).

mātūriŭs (adv.), *earlier*.

mātūrŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *make haste, hasten*.

mātūrŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. [121]), *ripe*.

maxĭmĕ (adv.), *most, very*.

maxĭmŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. [123]), *greatest, very great*.

mĕlĭŏr, -ĭŭs (Gr. [123]), *better*.

mĕmŏrĭă, -ae, *memory*.

mens, -ntĭs, *mind, reason*.

mensĭs, -ĭs (Gr. [96]), *month*.

mercātŏr, -ōrĭs, *trader, merchant*.

mĕrĭdĭēs, -ēī (m.), *noon, midday*.

Messālă, -ae, *Messala*.

meŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. 126), *my, mine*.

mīlĕs, -ĭtĭs, *soldier*.

mīlĭtārĭs, -e, *military;* res mīlitarĭs, *military matters, warfare*.

millĕ (Gr. [118]), *thousand;* millĕ passuŭm (a thousand paces), *a mile*.

mĭnĭmē (adv.), *least*.

mĭnĭmŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. [123]), *least, smallest*.

mĭnŏr, -ŭs (Gr. [123]), *less, smaller*.

mĭnŭs (adv.), *less*.

mittŏ, mittĕrĕ, mīsī, missŭm, to *send*.

mŏlŏ, -ĕrĕ, -uī, -ĭtum, to *grind*.

mons, -ntĭs (m.), *mountain, mount*.

mŏrŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs, to *wait*.

mors, -rtĭs, *death*.

mortuŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *dead*.

mōs, mōrĭs, *custom, usage*.

mŏveŏ, mŏvērĕ, mōvī, mōtŭm, to *move*.

mŭlĭĕr, -ĕrĭs, *woman*.

multĭtūdŏ, -ĭnĭs, *multitude, great number*.

multŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. [123]), *much;* pl. *many*.

mūnĭŏ, -īrĕ, -īvī, -ītŭm, to *fortify, defend*.

mūnītĭŏ, -ōnĭs, *fortification*.

mūrŭs, -ī, *wall*.

N.

nātūră, -ae, *nature, character*.

nāvĭs, -ĭs (Gr. [99]), *ship*.

nĕ (adv. and conj.), *not;* ne ... quidem, *not even;* as conj. w. subj., *in order that ... not, lest*. (See Gr. [325], 424).

nĕ (interrog. particle) (Gr. 427).

nĕc (conj.), *nor.* See neque.

nĕgōtĭŭm, -ī, *business, task*.

nēmŏ, -ĭnĭs, *no one*.

nĕquĕ (conj.), *and not, nor;* ne-que ... neque, *neither ... nor*.

nĭhĭl (indeclinable), *nothing*.

nĭhĭlŭm, -ī (rare), *nothing;* abl. nihilo minus, *nevertheless*.

nōbĭlĭs, -ĕ, *noble, of good birth*.

nōbĭlĭtās, -ātĭs, *nobility*.

nōlŏ, nollĕ, nōluī (Gr. 225), to *be unwilling*.

nōmĕn, -ĭnĭs, *name*.

nōn (adv.), *not*.

nōndŭm (adv.), *not yet*.

nōnnullŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *some, a few*.

nostĕr, -tră, -trŭm, *our, ours*.

nŏvĕm, *nine*.

nŏvŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *new;* res novae, a *revolution, change of govern-ment*.

nox, noctĭs, *night*.

nullŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. 71), *no, no one*.

nŭm (interrog. particle), (see Gr. 429).

nŭmĕrŭs, -ī, *number*.

nunc (adv.), *now*.

nuntĭŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *an-nounce, tell, report*.

nūpĕr (adv.), *lately, recently*.

O.

ŏb (prep. w. acc.), *on account of, because of, for*.

ŏbaerātŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *indebted;* as subst., *a debtor*.

oblĭviscŏr, oblĭviscī, oblītŭs
(Gr. 280), to *forget*.

obsĕs, -ĭdĭs, *hostage*.

obsignŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to
seal, make (a will).

obtĭneŏ, -tĭnĕrĕ, -tĭnuī, -tentŭm,
to *hold, possess ; to get, obtain*.

occāsŭs, -ūs, *fall, setting* (of the
sun); occasus solis, *sunset, west*.

occīdŏ, -cīdĕrĕ, -cīdī, -cīsŭm, to
slay, kill ; occīsī, *the slain, the
dead*.

occŭpŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to
seize, occupy.

ŏceănŭs, -ī; *ocean*.

octŏ, *eight*.

octŏdĕcim, *eighteen*.

ŏcŭlŭs, -ī, *eye*.

ŏdī, ŏdissĕ, ŏsŭs (Gr. [235]), to
hate.

omnīnŏ (adv.), *altogether, in all,
only*.

omnĭs, -ĕ, *all, every*.

ŏportĕt, ŏportĕrĕ, ŏportuĭt, *it
is proper, it behooves, one ought*.

oppĭdŭm, -ī, *town, walled town*.

oppugnŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to
attack.

optĭmŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. [123]), *best*.

ŏpŭs, -ĕrĭs, *work*.

ŏpŭs (indecl.) (Gr. [297]), *need*.

ŏrātĭŏ, -ŏnĭs, *speech, talk*.

Orgetŏrix, -ĭgĭs, *Orgetorix*.

ŏriens, -ntĭs, *rising ;* oriens sol,
east.

ŏriŏr, -īrī, ortŭs (Gr. [216] (*h*)),
to *rise ;* to *begin*.

ŏrŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *beg, pray,
ask*.

P.

P. = Publiŭs.

pāgŭs, -ī, *district, canton*.

pandŏ, pandĕrĕ, pandī, passŭm
and pansŭm, to *stretch out, ex-
tend*.

părātŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *prepared, ready*.

pars, -rtĭs, *part ;* ĭn utrăm par-
tĕm, *in which direction, which
way*.

parvŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *small*.

passŭs, -ūs, *pace, step*.

pătĕŏ, pătērĕ, pătuī, to *lie open,
extend, stretch*.

pătĕr, -trĭs (Gr. 80), *father*.

paucŭs, -ă, -ŭm (usually pl.), *few*.

paulŏ (adv.), *a little*.

pax, pācĭs, *peace*.

pĕdĕs, -ĭtĭs, *footman, foot-soldier*.

pējŏr, -ŭs (Gr. [123]), *worse*.

pellŏ, pellĕrĕ, pĕpŭlī, pulsŭm,
to *drive, repulse, defeat ; drive
out*.

pĕr (prep. w. acc.), *through, by
means of*.

perdūcŏ, -dūcĕrĕ, -duxī, -duc-
tŭm, to *lead through, build, con-
struct* (e.g., a wall).

perfăcĭlĭs, -ĕ, *very easy*.

perfĭcĭŏ, -fĭcĕrĕ, -fēcī, -fectŭm,
to *do, perform, accomplish*.

pĕrīcŭlŭm, -ī, *trial, test ; danger*.

pĕrītŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *knowing* (of),
skilled (in).

permŏveŏ, -mŏvērī, -mŏvī, -mŏ-
tŭm, to *move strongly, move*.

perpaucŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *very few*.

persĕquŏr, -sĕquī, -sĕcūtŭs, to
follow, pursue.

persĕvērŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to
persevere, continue.

persuādĕŏ, -suādĕrĕ, -suāsī,
-suāsŭm (Gr. [269]), to *persuade*.

perterreŏ, -ērĕ, -uī, -ĭtŭm, to
frighten.

pertĭneŏ, -tĭnērĕ, -tĭnuī, to
*stretch, extend ; to pertain, be-
long*.

perturbŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to
disturb, frighten.

pervĕniŏ, -vĕnīrĕ, -vēnī, -ven-
tŭm, to *come through, arrive*.

pēs, pĕdĭs, *foot;* pedem referre, to *retreat.*

pessĭmŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. [123]), *worse*

pĕtŏ, pĕtĕrĕ, pĕtīvī, pĕtītŭm, to *ask, beg, seek.*

Pīsŏ, -ōnĭs, *Piso.*

plăceŏ, -ērĕ, -uī, -ĭtŭm (Gr. [269]), to *please;* placuit ei, *he resolved.*

plebs, plēbĭs, *common people, people.*

plūrĭmŭm (adv.), *very much, greatly.*

plūrĭmŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. 123), *most.*

plūs (Gr. [92] and [123]), *more, or often simply many.*

poenă, -ae, *penalty, punishment.*

pollĭceŏr, -ērī, -ĭtŭs, to *promise.*

pōnŏ, pōnĕrĕ, pōsuī, pŏsĭtŭm, to *place, pitch* (a camp).

pons, -ntĭs (M.), *bridge.*

pŏpŭlŭs, -ī, a *people,* a *nation.*

possŭm, possĕ, pŏtuī (Gr. [222]), to *be powerful, have influence, be able, can.*

post (prep. w. acc.), *after.*

post (adv.), *afterwards.*

posteā (adv.), *afterwards.*

postĕrŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. [123]), *following, next after.*

postquăm or post quam (conj.), *after.*

postrēmŭs, -ă, -ŭm(Gr.[123]), *last.*

postrīdiē (adv.), *on the next day, on the morrow.*

postŭlŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *demand, ask; require.*

postŭmŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. [123]), *last.*

pŏtens, -ntĭs, *powerful.*

pŏtentiă, -ae, *power, might.*

pŏtestās, -ātĭs, *power; opportunity.*

pŏtĭŏr, pŏtīrī, pŏtītŭs (Gr. [216] (h)), to *get control of, get, gain.*

praecēdŏ, -cēdĕrĕ, -cessī, -cessŭm, to *precede, surpass.*

praefĭcĭŏ, -fĭcĕrĕ, -fēcī, -fectŭm, to *put over, put in charge of.*

praemittŏ, -mittĕrĕ, -mīsī, -missŭm, to *send ahead.*

praepōnŏ, -pōnĕrĕ, -pōsuī, -pōsĭtŭm, to *put in charge, place in command.*

praesens, -ntĭs, *present.*

praesĭdiŭm, -ī, *garrison, defence.*

praestŏ, -stārĕ, -stĭtī, -stĭtŭm or -stătŭm, to *stand before, excel; to furnish.*

praesŭm, -essĕ, -fuī, -fŭtūrŭs, to *be ahead, be first, be present, be in command of.*

prīdiē (adv.), *on the day before.*

prīmŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. [123]), *first.*

princeps, -cĭpĭs, *leading, chief;* as a noun, princeps, a *chief.*

princĭpātŭs, -ŭs, *leadership; highest office.*

priŏr, -iŭs (Gr. [123]), *former.*

pristĭnŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *ancient.*

priŭs quăm, or priusquăm(conj.), *sooner than, before.*

prō (prep. w. abl.), *before, for, in behalf of, in proportion to.*

prŏbŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *prove.*

prōcēdŏ, -cēdĕrĕ, -cessī, -cessŭm, to *go forward, advance, proceed.*

Procillŭs, -ī, *Procillus.*

prōdeŏ, -īrĕ, -iī, -ĭtŭm, to *come out, go forth.*

prōdūcŏ, -dūcĕrĕ, -duxī, -ductŭm, to *lead out, lead forth.*

proeliŭm, -ī, *battle.*

prōfectĭŏ, -ōnĭs, *departure, start.*

prōfĭciscŏr, -fĭciscī, -fectŭs, to *start, set out, advance.*

prōfŭgiŏ, -fŭgĕrĕ, -fŭgī, to *flee.*

prohĭbeŏ, -hĭbĕrĕ, -hĭbuī, -hĭbĭtŭm, to *keep out, prohibit, stop.*

prōjĭciŏ, -jĭcĕrĕ, -jēcī, -jectŭm, to *throw.*

prŏpiŏr, -iŭs (Gr. [123]), *nearer.*

proptĕr (prep.), *on account of.*

proptĕreā (adv.), *for this reason;* proptĕreā quŏd, *for the reason that, because.*

prōsŭm, prōdessĕ, prōfuī, prōfŭtūrŭs (Gr. [269]], to *be useful, be advantageous.*

prŏvinciă, -ae, *province.*

proxĭmŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. [123]), *nearest, next;* proximum ĭter, *shortest route.*

pugnŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *fight.*

Pȳrēnaeī montēs, *the Pyrenees.*

Q.

quaerŏ, quaerĕrĕ, quaesīvī, quaesītŭm, to *ask, inquire.*

quālĭs, -ĕ, *such as; what kind of, what.*

quăm (conj. and adv.), *than;* with superlatives it emphasizes the meaning; quăm maxĭmŭs, *the very greatest, the greatest possible.*

quamdiū (conj.), *as long as, while.*

quartŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *fourth.*

quattuŏr, *four.*

-quĕ (conj.), *and.*

quĕrŏr, quĕrī, questŭs, to *complain.*

quī, quae, quŏd (Gr. 138), *who, which, that, what.*

quĭd (adv.), *why?*

quĭdĕm (adv.), *even;* ne . . . quĭdĕm, *not even.*

quĭn (conj.), *that, but that.*

quindĕcĭm, *fifteen.*

quinquĕ, *five.*

quintŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *fifth.*

quĭs, quae, quĭd (Gr. 139), *who? which? what?* (Gr. 140); *any one, any thing.*

quisquăm, quicquăm, or quidquăm (Gr. 141), *any one, any thing.*

quisquĕ, quaequĕ, quidquĕ (Gr. 141), *every, each.*

quŏd (conj.), *because.*

quŏquĕ (adv.), *also.*

quŏtĭdiānŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *daily.*

quŏtĭdiē (adv.), *daily.*

R.

ratĭs, -ĭs, *raft.*

rĕcĭpiŏ, -cĭpĕrĕ, -cēpī, -ceptŭm, to *take back, receive;* sē rĕcĭpĕrĕ, to *betake one's self, retreat.*

rĕdeŏ, -īrĕ, -iī, -ĭtŭm, to *go back, return.*

rĕdĭmŏ, -ĭmĕrĕ, -ēmī, -emptŭm, to *buy, purchase.*

rĕdĭtiŏ, -ōnĭs, *return.*

rĕdūcŏ, -dūcĕrĕ, -duxī, -ductŭm, to *bring back.*

rĕfĕrŏ, rĕferrĕ, rettŭlī, rĕlātŭm, to *carry back;* pĕdĕm rĕferrĕ, to *retreat.*

rĕgiŏ, -ōnĭs, *region, country.*

regnŭm, -ī, *kingdom, kingly power.* [*rest of.*

rĕlĭquŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *remaining; the*

rĕmĭniscŏr, -scī (Gr. 280), to *remember, recall, call to mind.*

rĕnunciŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *announce, tell, bring word.*

renuntio = renuncio.

rĕpellŏ, rĕpellĕrĕ, reppŭlī, repulsŭm, to *drive back, drive off, repulse.*

rĕpĕriŏ, rĕpĕrīrĕ, reppĕrī, rĕpertŭm, to *find, gain; to find out, learn.*

rĕpugnŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to *oppose, be opposed to.*

rēs, rēī, *thing, matter, circumstance;* res mīlitarĭs, *warfare.*

rescindŏ, -scindĕrĕ, -scĭdī, -scissŭm, to *break down, destroy.*

resciscŏ, -sciscĕrĕ, -scīvī, or -sciī, -scītŭm, to *learn, find out.*

respondeŏ, -spondĕrĕ, -spondī, -sponsŭm, to *answer.*

restĭtuŏ, -uĕrĕ, -uī, -ūtŭm, to *restore, re-establish.*

rětĭneŏ, -tĭnĕrĕ, -tĭnuĭ, -tentŭm, to *keep*, *retain*.

rĕvertŏ, -vertĕrĕ, -vertĭ, -versŭm, to *return* (also pass. rĕvertŏr, with the same meaning).

Rhēnŭs, -ĭ, the *Rhine* (river).

Rhŏdănŭs, -ĭ, the *Rhone* (river).

rīpă, -ae, *bank* (of a river).

rŏgŏ, -ārĕ, -āvĭ, -ātŭm, to *ask*, *ask for*.

Rōmă, -ae, *Rome*.

Rōmānŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *Roman*; pl. Rōmānĭ, the *Romans*.

S.

saepĕ (adv.), *often*.

sălŭs, -ūtĭs, *safety*.

sanguĭs, -ĭnĭs (M.) (Gr. [115]), *blood*.

Santŏnēs, -ŭm, the *Santones*.

sătĭs (adv. and indeclinable adj.), *enough*.

sătisfactĭŏ, -ōnĭs, *excuse*.

sciŏ, scīrĕ, scīvĭ, scītŭm, to *know*.

sĕcundŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *second*.

sĕd (conj.), *but*.

sēdĕcĭm, *sixteen*.

sēdītĭōsŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *seditious*, *quarrelsome*.

sĕmĕl (adv.), *once*; sĕmĕl atquĕ ĭtĕrŭm, *once and again*, *repeatedly*.

sēmentĭs, -ĭs, *sowing* (of grain).

sĕnātŭs, -ūs, *senate*.

sĕnex, sĕnĭs (Gr. [115]), *old*.

sĕnĭŏr (Gr. [123]), *older*.

septentrĭŏ, -ōnĭs, *north* (usually pl.).

septĭmŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *seventh*.

sĕpultūră, -ae, *burial*.

Sēquănă, -ae (F.), *Seine* (river).

Sēquănŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *Sequanian*; pl. Sēquănĭ, the *Sequanians*.

sĕquŏr, sĕquĭ, sĕcūtŭs, to *follow*; *to be inflicted* (said of punishment).

servīlĭs, -ĕ, *of slaves*; servīlĭs tŭmultŭs, *slave insurrection*.

servĭtŭs, -ūtĭs, *slavery*.

sescentĭ, -ae, -ă, *six hundred*.

sex, *six*.

sĭ (conj.), *if*.

sīcŭt (conj.), *as*, *just as*.

silvă, -ae, *wood*, *forest*.

sīn (conj.), *but if*.

sŏcĭŭs, -ĭ, *friend*, *ally*.

sōl, sōlĭs, *sun*.

sōlum (adv.), *only*; nōn sōlŭm ... sĕd ĕtĭăm, *not only ... but also*.

sōlŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. 71), *alone*.

spătĭŭm, -ĭ, *space*, *distance*; *time*.

spectŏ, -ārĕ, -āvĭ, -ātŭm, to *look*, *look at*, *see*.

spērŏ, -ārĕ, -āvĭ, -ātŭm, to *hope*, *expect*, *hope for*.

spēs, spēĭ, *hope*; ĭn spĕm vĕnīrĕ, "*come into hope*," *entertain a hope*.

stătuŏ, -uĕrĕ, -uĭ, -ūtŭm, to *decide*, *determine*.

stĭpendĭārĭŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *tributary*.

stŭdĭŭm, -ĭ, *zeal*, *friendship*.

sŭb (prep. w. acc. and abl.), *under*.

subdūcŏ, -dūcĕrĕ, -duxĭ, -ductŭm, to *withdraw*, *draw off*.

subsĭdĭŭm, -ĭ, *reinforcement*, *help*.

subsŭm, -essĕ, -fuĭ, -fŭtūrŭs, to *be near*, *be at hand*.

subvĕhŏ, -vehĕrĕ, -vexĭ, -vectŭm, to *bring up*.

Suēvĭ, -ōrum, the *Suevi*, *Swabians*.

suĭ (Gr. 125), *himself*, *herself*, etc.; *themselves*; ĭntĕr sē; see inter.

Sullă, -ae, *Sulla*.

sŭm, essĕ, fuĭ, fŭtūrŭs (Gr. 221), to *be*.

summŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. [123]), *highest*; summŭs mons, *top of the mountain*; so in similar expressions.

sūmŏ, sūmĕrĕ, sumpsĭ, sumptŭm, to *take*.

sŭpĕrŏ, -ārĕ, -āvĭ, -ātŭm, to *overcome, conquer.*

sŭpersŭm, -essĕ, -fuĭ, -fŭtūrŭs, to *be left over, survive.*

sŭpĕrŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. [123]), *upper.*

suppĕtŏ, -pĕtĕrĕ, -pĕtīvĭ, -pĕtĭtŭm, to *be on hand, be in store.*

suscĭpĭŏ, -cĭpĕrĕ, -cēpĭ, -ceptŭm, to *undertake;* **sĭbĭ suscĭpere,** to *take on one's self.*

suspĭcĭŏ, -ōnĭs, *suspicion.*

sustĭneŏ, -tĭnērĕ, -tĭnuĭ, -tentŭm, to *hold out against, withstand.*

suŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *his own, his, her, its,* etc.

T.

T. = Titus.

tăceŏ, -tăcērĕ, tăcuĭ, tăcĭtŭm, to *keep silent, hold one's peace.*

tandĕm (adv.), *at last, at length.*

tēlŭm, -ĭ, *missile, javelin.*

tempĕrŏ, -ārĕ, -āvĭ, -ātŭm, to *refrain.*

tempŭs, -ŏrĭs, *time.*

tĕneŏ, tĕnērĕ, tĕnuĭ, tentŭm, to *hold.*

tentŏ, -ārĕ, -āvĭ, -ātŭm, to *try, attempt, test.*

tergŭm, -ĭ, *back.*

tertiŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *third.*

testāmentŭm, -ĭ, *will.*

Teutŏnĭ, -ōrŭm, the *Teutoni.*

tĭmŏr, -ōrĭs, *fear, panic.*

Tolōsātēs, -ĭŭm, the *Tolosates.*

tŏtĭdĕm (indeclinable adj.), *as many, the same number of.*

tŏtŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. 71), *whole, all.*

trādŏ, -dĕrĕ, -dĭdĭ, -dĭtŭm, to *give over, surrender.*

trănŏ, -ārĕ, -āvĭ, -ātŭm, to *swim across.*

trans (prep. w. acc.), *over, across, beyond.*

transdūcŏ, -dūcĕrĕ, -duxĭ, -ductŭm (Gr. [268]), to *lead over, transport.*

transeŏ, -īrĕ, -iĭ, -ĭtŭm, to *go over, cross.*

trēs, triă (Gr. 118), *three.*

trĭbūnŭs, -ĭ, *tribune.*

trĭbuŏ, -uĕrĕ, -uĭ, -ūtŭm, to *assign, attribute.*

trĭduŭm, -ĭ, *three days.*

trĭgintă, *thirty.*

trĭplex, -ĭcĭs (Gr. [108]), *triple.*

tū (Gr. 125), *thou, thee;* often translated by Eng. *you.*

tŭm (adv.), *then.*

tŭmultŭs, -ūs, *uproar, broil; insurrection.*

tuŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *thy, thine.*

U.

ŭbĭ (conj.), *where, when.*

Ubiĭ, -ōrŭm, the *Ubii.*

ultĕrĭŏr, -iŭs (Gr. [123]), *farther, later.*

ultĭmŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. [123]), *farthest, last.*

ultrā (prep.), *beyond.*

undĕ (conj.), *whence, from which.*

undēvīgintĭ, *eighteen.*

undĭquĕ (adv.), *on all sides, from all sides.*

ūnŭs, -ă, -ŭm (Gr. 71), *one, only, alone.*

urbs, -bĭs, *city.*

usquĕ ăd, *up to, until.*

ūsŭs, -ūs, *use, experience, advantage;* dat. **ūsuĭ** (Gr. [272]), *advantageous, useful.*

ŭt (conj.), *as;* w. subj., *in order that, that, so that.*

ŭtĕr, -tră, -trŭm (Gr. 71), *which* (of two).

ŭtĭ (conj.), *as; that* (the same as **ut**).

ūtŏr, ūtĭ, ūsŭs (Gr. [297]), to *use, employ, enjoy.*

utrimquĕ (adv.), *on both sides.*

uxŏr, -ŏrĭs, *spouse; husband or wife.*

V.

văcŏ, -ārĕ, -āvĭ, -ātŭm, *to be empty, be vacant.*

vădŭm, -ĭ, *shoal, ford.*

văgŏr, -ārĭ, -ātŭs, *to wander.*

văleŏ, vălērĕ, vălŭĭ, vălĭtŭm, *to be strong, be able, have influence.*

Vălērĭŭs, -ĭ, *Valerius.*

vehĕmentĕr (adv.), *greatly, strongly.*

vĕl (conj.), *or;* vĕl . . . vĕl, *either . . . or.*

vēlox, -ōcĭs, *swift.*

vĕniŏ, vĕnĭrĕ, vēnĭ, ventŭm, *to come.*

verbŭm, -ĭ, *word.*

vergŏ, vergĕrĕ, *to slope, extend.*

vertŏ, vertĕrĕ, vertĭ, versŭm, *to turn.*

vērŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *true.*

vescŏr, vescĭ (Gr. [297]), *feed on, eat.*

Vĕsontĭŏ, -ōnĭs, *Vesontio.*

vespĕr, -ĭ (Gr. [115]), *evening.*

vestĕr, -tră, -trŭm, *your, yours.*

vĕtŭs, -ĕrĭs, *old, ancient.*

vĭă, -ae, *way, road, path, journey.*

victōrĭă, -ae, *victory.*

vīcŭs, -ĭ, *village.*

vĭdeŏ, vĭdērĕ, vĭdĭ, vīsŭm, *to see;* pass. vĭdērĭ, *to seem.*

vĭgĭlĭă, -ae, *watch.*

vĭgĭntĭ, *twenty.*

vinclŭm = vinculum.

vincŭlŭm, -ĭ, *chain, fetter.*

vīnŭm, -ĭ, *wine.*

virtŭs, -ūtĭs, *manhood, merit, courage.*

vīs, vīs (Gr. [115]), *violence, force;* pl. vīres, *strength.*

vŏcŏ, -ārĕ, -āvĭ, -ātŭm, *to call.*

Vŏcontĭĭ, -ōrŭm, *the Vocontii.*

vŏlŏ, vellĕ, vŏlŭĭ (Gr. 225), *to wish, be willing.*

vŏluntăs, -ātĭs, *wish, consent.*

vŏluptăs, -ātĭs, *pleasure.*

vox, vōcĭs, *voice, talk, words.*

vulnŭs, -ĕrĭs, *wound.*

ENGLISH INDEX.

———◇◇◇———

A.

a (not expressed in Latin).
able; to be able, *possum, posse, potui; valeo, valēre, valui.*
about (adv.), *circĭter;* prep. *circum; de* (= concerning).
absent, to be absent, *absum, abesse, afui, afutūrus.*
accomplish, *conficio, -ficĕre, -fēci, -fectum.*
according to (expressed by abl. case).
account; on account of, *ob; propter.*
accuse, *accūso, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*
across, *trans.*
admit, *recipio, -cipĕre, -cēpi, -ceptum.*
advantageous, to be adv., *prosum, prodesse, profui.*
affirm, *confirmo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*
after (conj.), *postquam;* often expressed by abl. abs.
after (prep.), *post.*
afterward, *postea.*
again, *rursus.*
against my will, *me invito.*
aid (noun), *auxilium, -i.*
aid (verb), *sublĕvo,-āre,-āvi,-ātum.*
all, *totus,-a,-um* (Gr. 71); *omnis,-e.*
ally, *socius,-i.*
Allobroges, *Allobrŏges, -um.*
allow, *do, dare, dedi, datum;* allow to surrender = receive into surrender, *accipĕre in deditiōnem.*
almost, *paene.*

alone, *solus, -a, -um* (Gr. 71).
Alps, *Alpes, -ium* (F.).
ambassador, *legātus, -i.*
among, *in* w. abl., *apud.*
an (not expressed in Latin).
and, *et; -que; atque* or *ac.*
announce, *nuntio, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; enuntio, renuntio.*
another, *alius, -a, -ud;* one another; see one.
answer, *responsum, -i.*
any, *alĭquis, -qua, -quid;* after *si, nisi, ne, num; quis, qua, quid;* in neg. sentences,*quisquam* or *ullus.*
anything, *alĭquid;* after *ne,* etc., *quid* (Gr. [140]).
Aquitania, *Aquitania, -ae.*
Arar, *Arar, -ăris.*
Ariovistus, *Ariovistus, -ĭ.*
arms, *arma, -ōrum.*
army, *exercĭtus, -us.*
around, *circum.*
arrival, *adventus, -us.*
arrive, *venio, -īre, vēni, ventum; pervenio.*
artifice, *insidiae, -ārum.*
Arverni, *Arverni, -ōrum.*
as (rel. pr.), *qui, quae, quod.*
as possible, *quam,* w. superl.
ask for, *rogo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; postŭlo, -are, -āvi, -ātum.*
assemble, *convenio, -īre, -vēni, -ventum.*
assign, *tribuo, -uĕre, -ui, -ūtum.*
assizes, *conventus, -uum.*
at, expressed by abl. or loc. case; at home, *domi;* (= to) *ad.*

attack, *adgredior, -grĕdi, -gres-sum; impĕtum facio, facĕre, fecĭ, factum*, w. prep. *in* w. acc.
attempt (verb), *conor, -āri, -ātus.*
attempt (noun); **make any attempt** = attempt anything, *quicquam conāri.*
attribute, *tribuo, -uĕre, -ui, -ūtum.*
auxiliaries, *auxilia, -ōrum.*
avoid, *vito, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*
await, *expecto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*
aware, *conscius, -a, -um.*
away, be away, *absum, abesse, afui, afutūrus;* **take away**; see **take**.

B.

back, *tergum, -i.*
back (adv.); see **lead, bring**, etc.
bad, *malus, -a, -um.*
baggage, *impedimenta, -ōrum.*
bank, *ripa, -ae.*
battle, *proelium, -i.*
be, *sum, esse, fui, futūrus;* **be, able, advantageous, absent**, etc.; see **under able**, etc.
bear, *fero, ferre, tuli, latum.*
because, *quod* (Gr. [328]); expressed also by abl. abs.
before (prep.), *ante.*
before (conj.), *prĭus . . . quam.*
beg, *obsĕcro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*
begin [*coepio, coepĕre*], *coepi, coeptum;* **begin** (battle), *committo, -mittĕre, -misi, -missum.*
beginning, *initium, -i.*
Belgians, *Belgae, -ārum.*
best, *optĭmus, -a, -um* (Gr. [123]).
betake one's self, *se recipio, -cĭpĕre, -cēpi, -ceptum.*
better, *melior, -ius* (Gr. [123]).
between, *inter.*
beyond, *ultra;* (= **across**), *trans.*
Bibracte, *Bĭbracte, -is* (N.).
bid, *jubeo, jubēre, jussi, jussum.*

blame, *accūso, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;* *incuso.*
blame, free from; see **free**.
blood, *sanguis, -ĭnis* (Gr. [115]).
boat, *linter, -tris* (C.).
body, *corpus, -ŏris.*
Boii, *Boii, -ōrum.*
boldly, more boldly, *audacius.*
boldness, *audacia, -ae.*
both, *uterque, -trăque, -trumque.*
brave, *fortis, -e.*
b r e a d t h, *latitūdo, -ĭnis;* **in breadth**, *in latitudĭnem.*
bring, *fero, ferre, tuli, latum, refĕro;* **bring together**, *confĕro;* **bring back**, *redūco, -ducĕre, -duxi, -ductum;* **bring** (= induce), *addūco;* **bring up** (a river), *subveho, -vehĕre, -vexi, -vectum;* **bring word**, *nuntio, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;* **bring over**, *transporto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*
broad, *latus, -a, -um.*
broken, *fractus, -a, -um.*
brother, *frater, -tris.*
build, *perdūco, -ducĕre, -duxi, -ductum.*
burial, *sepultūra, -ae.*
burn, *cremo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*
business, *negotium, -i.*
by, *a, ab* (to denote the doer); often expressed by abl. case.

C.

Cæsar, *Caesar, -ăris.*
call, *appello, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; voco, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;* **call together**, *convŏco.*
camp, *castra, -ōrum.*
can, *possum, posse, potui.*
canton, *pagus, -i.*
care, *cura, -ae.*
cause (noun), *causa, -ae.*
cause (verb), *committo, -mittĕre, -misi, -missum;* followed by a result-clause, *ut* w. subj.

cavalry, *equitātus, -us.*
cease, *desisto,-sistĕre,-stĭti,-stĭtum.*
Celts, *Celtae, -ārum.*
centurion, *centurio, -ōnis.*
chance, *casus, -us.*
change, *converto, -vertĕre, -verti, -versum.*
character, *natūra, -ae.*
charge, *procurro, -currĕre, -curri, -cursum.*
cheer, *confirmo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*
chief, *princeps, -ĭpis;* chief men, *princĭpes.*
children, *libĕri, -ōrum.* [*tum.*
choose, *delĕgo, -legĕre, -lēgi, -lec-*
circumstance, *res, rei.*
city, *urbs, -bis.*
come, *venio, -ĭre, veni, ventum;* come together, *convenio;* come up to, *succēdo, -cedĕre, -cessi, -cessum,* w. prep. *sub;* come nearer, *propius accēdo;* come to pass, *fio, fiĕri, factus.*
coming, *adventus, -us.*
command, be in command of, *praesum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus* (Gr. [269]).
compasses; see pair.
compel, *cogo, cogĕre, coēgi, coac-tum.*
complain, *queror, queri, questus.*
conference, *colloquium, -i.*
conquer, *vinco, vincĕre, vici, vic-tum.*
consent, *voluntas, -ātis.*
Considius, *Considius, -i.*
conspiracy, *conjuratio, -ōnis.*
construct, *perdūco,-ducĕre, -duxi, -ductum.*
consul, *consul, -ŭlis.*
contend, *contendo,-tendĕre,-tendi, -tentum.*
corn, *frumentum, -i;* or pl. *fru-menta.*
council, *concilium, -i.*
country, *fines, -ium.*

courage, *ănĭmus, -i; virtus, -ūtis.*
course, *iter, itinĕris* (Gr. [115]).
cross, *transeo, -īre, -ii, -ĭtum.*
crush, *opprĭmo, -primĕre, -pressi, -pressum.*
culture, *humanĭtas, -ātis.*
custom, *institūtum, -i.*

D.

daily (adv.), *quotidie;* (adj.) *quo-tidiānus, -a, -um* (or *cotidianus*).
danger *perĭcŭlum, -i.*
dangerous, *periculōsus, -a, -um.*
dare, *audeo, -ēre, ausus* (Gr. [216], (*g*)).
daughter, *filia, -ae.*
day, *dies, -ēi* (c.); two days, *biduum,-i.*
daybreak, *prima lux.*
death, *mors, -rtis.*
decide on, *statuo, -uĕre, -ui, -ūtum.*
deep, *altus, -a, -um.*
defeat, *calamĭtas, -ātis.*
deliver (a speech), *habeo, -ēre, -ui, -ĭtum.*
demand, *flagĭto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*
depart, *discēdo, -cedĕre, -cessi, -cessum.*
departure, *profectio, -ōnis.*
depend, *nitor, niti, nisus* or *nixus.*
depth, *altitūdo, -ĭnis.*
deserter, *perfŭga, -ae.*
desire, *cupidĭtas, -ātis.*
desirous, *cupĭdus, -a, -um.*
differ, *diffĕro, -ferre, distŭli, dilā-tum.*
difficult, *diffĭcĭlis, -e* (Gr. 121).
discuss, *jacto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*
dismiss, *dimitto, -mittĕre, -misi, -missum.*
distant, to be distant, *absum.*
district, *pagus, -i.*
disturb, *perturbo,-āre, -āvi, -ātum.*
ditch, *fossa, -ae.*
Divico, *Divico, -ōnis.*

divide, *divǐdo, -vidĕre, -visi, -vi-sum.*

Divitiacus, *Divitiǎcus, -i.*

do, *facio, facĕre, feci, factum;* (as an auxiliary, not expressed in Latin).

doubt (noun), **there is no doubt,** *non est dubium.*

doubt (verb), *dubǐto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*

draw, *circumdūco, -ducĕre, -duxi -ductum;* **draw up** (troops), *in-struo, -struĕre, -struxi, -structum.*

drive back, *rejicio, -jicĕre, -jēci, -jectum.*

Dubis, *Dubis, -ǐs.*

Dumnorix, *Dumnǒrix, -ǐgis.*

dwell, *habǐto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; incǒlo, -colĕre, -colui, -cultum.*

E.

each, *uterque, -trǎque, -trumque* (Gr. 71); **to each other,** *inter se.*

eagerly, most eagerly, *cupidis-sǐme.*

eagerness, *cupidǐtas, -ātis.*

earlier than, *prius . . . quam.*

early, early in the night, *prima nocte.*

east, *oriens sol.*

easy, *facǐlis, -e.*

effeminate, *effemǐno, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*

eighty, *octoginta.*

elated, *sublātus, -a, -um.*

empty, to be empty, *vaco, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*

encourage, *cohortor, -āri, -ātus.*

end, *finis, -is* (c.).

endure, *perfĕro, -ferre, -tǔli, -lātum.*

enemy, *hostis, -is.*

envoy, *legātus, -i.*

equal, *par, -is* (Gr. [108]).

even, *etiam.*

exact, *sumo, sumĕre, sumpsi, sumptum.*

excellence, *bonǐtas, -ātis.*

except, *praeter.*

extend, *pateo, -ēre, -ui.*

F.

fact, *res, rei;* often expressed also by neut. adj., e.g., *hæc,* these **facts.**

faith, *fǐdes, -ěi.*

far (adv.), *longe.*

farther, *ulterior, -ius.*

father, *pater, -tris.*

favor, *indulgeo, -lgēre, -lsi* (Gr. [269]).

feelings, *anǐmus, -i.*

few, pl. of *paucus, -a, -um.*

fifteen, *quindĕcim.*

fight, *pugna, -ae.*

fight, *pugno, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; contendo, -tendĕre, -tendi, -ten-tum.*

fill, *compleo, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum.*

find, find out, *reperio, -ire, rep-pĕri, repertum.*

finish, *perfǐcio, -fǐcĕre, -fēci, -fec-tum.*

fire, *ignis, -is.*

first, *primus, -a, -um* (Gr. [123]); **at first,** *primo.*

five, *quinque.*

fix, *confirmo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*

flank, *latus, -ěris;* **right flank,** *latus apertum* (open side).

flee, *fugio, fugĕre, fūgi, fugǐtum; profugio.*

flight, *fuga, -ae.*

flow, *fluo, -uěre, -uxi.*

follow, *sequor, sequi, secūtus.*

following, *postĕrus, -a, -um.*

for (on account of), *ob;* **for the sake,** see **sake; in behalf of,** *pro.*

forces, *copiae, -ārum.*

forced marches = **great marches.**

forefathers, *majōres, -um.*

forest, *silva, -ae.*

forget, *obliviscor, -livisci, -litus* (Gr. 280).

form, *facio, facĕre, feci, factum.*

former, *prior, -ius* (Gr. [123]).

fort, *arx, arcis.*

fortify, *munio, -ire, -ivi, -itum; communio.*

forty, *quadraginta.*

four, *quattuor.*

fourth, *quartus, -a, -um.*

free from blame, *purgātus, -a, -um.*

friend, *amīcus, -i.*

friendly, *amicus, -a, -um.*

friendship, *amicitia, -ae.*

frighten, *perterreo, -ēre, -ui, -itum.*

from, *de;* (away from), *a, ab;* (out from), *e, ex;* from which, *unde;* from one another, *inter se.*

front, in front of, *pro.*

fugitive, *fugitivus, -i.*

furnish, *facio, facĕre, feci, factum.*

future, for the future, *in reliquum tempus.*

G.

gain, *concilio, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;* gain a request, *impĕtro, -āre, -avi, -ātum.*

Garonne (river), *Garumna, -ae.*

Gaul, *Gallia, -ae.*

Gaul, a Gaul, *Gallus;* the Gauls, *Galli.*

German, *Germānus, -a, -um;* the Germans, *Germani.*

get, get possession of, *potior, -iri, -itus* (Gr. [297]); get used, *consuesco, -suescĕre, -suēvi, -suētum.*

give, *do, dare, dedi, datum.*

glory, *gloria, -ae.*

go, *eo, ire, ivi,* or *ii, itum; se confĕro, -ferre, -tŭli, -lātum; profi-*

ciscor, -ficisci, -fectus; go on = be carried on, pass. of *gero, gerĕre, gessi, gestum.*

god, *deus, -i* (Gr. 68).

good, *bonus, -a, -um* (Gr. [123]).

grain, *frumentum, -i;* or pl., *frumenta.*

great, *magnus, -a, -um* (Gr. [123]).

greatly, *vehemcnter.*

greediness, *cupidĭtas, -ātis.*

H.

habit, be in the habit, complete tenses of *consuesco, -suescĕre, -suēvi, -suētum.*

Hæduan, *Haeduus, -a, -um.*

half, half way up the hill, *in colle medio;* a mile and a half = "one thousand and five hundred paces."

hand, *manus, -us* (F.).

happen, *accĭdo, -cidĕre, -cĭdi.*

hard, *diffĭcĭlis, -e* (Gr. [123]).

harm, *maleficium, -i.*

Harudes, *Harudes, -um.*

haste, make haste = hasten.

hasten, *contendo, -dĕre, -di, -tum; matūro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*

have, *habeo, -ēre, -ui, -ĭtum;* expressed also by dat. of possessor; have to (= must), expressed by pass. periphr. conj.; I had rather, *malo, malle, malui.*

he, *is, ille, &c.;* in nom. usually expressed by the verb-ending.

height, *altĭtūdo, -ĭnis.*

help, *auxilium, -i.*

Helvetian, *Helvetius, -a, -um;* the Helvetians, *Helvetii.*

high, *altus, -a, -um.*

hill, *collis, -is* (M.).

himself, *ipse,* &c. (ref.) *sui,* &c.

hire, *mercēde arcesso, -essĕre, -essīvi, -essītum;* (lit. summon by pay); gen. of *is, ille,* &c. (ref.) *suus, -a, -um.*

hither, **Hither Gaul,** *Gallia ci-*
terior.
hold, *teneo, -ēre, -ui, -tum ;* (**hold**
assizes), *ago, agĕre, egi, ac-*
tum.
home, *domus, -us* (Gr. [115]); **at**
home, *domi ;* **homeward,** *do-*
mum.
honor, *honor, -ōris.*
hope, *spes, spĕi.*
hope, **hope for,** *spero, -āre, -āvi,*
-ātum.
horseman, *eques, -ĭtis.*
hostage, *obses, -ĭdis.*
hostile, *inimīcus, -a, -um.*
house, *domus, -us* (Gr. [115]).
huge, *ingens, -ntis.*
hundred, *centum.*
hurt, *offendo, -fendĕre, -fendi,*
-fensum.

I.

I, *ego* (Gr. 124); often expressed by
the verb-ending.
import, *importo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*
important, **most important,**
summus, -a, -um (highest).
in, *in* w. abl.; often expressed by
abl. or loc. case.
incredible, *incredibĭlis, -e.*
induce, *addūco, -ducĕre, -duxi,*
-ductum.
inflict, *infĕro, -ferre, -tŭli, -lātum ;*
inflict punishment on, *suppli-*
cium sumĕre de (exact punish-
ment from).
influence, *auctorĭtas, -ātis ;* **to**
have influence, *possum.*
inhabit, *incŏlo, -ĕre, -ui.*
inhabitant, *incŏla, -ae.*
injury, *injuria, -ae.*
intend = have in mind, *esse alicui*
in anĭmo ; also expressed by act.
periphr. conj.
intercessor, *deprecātor, -ōris.*
interests, *res, rerum.*

interval, *intervallum, -i.*
intervene, passive of *intermitto,*
-mittĕre, -misi, -missum.
into, *in* w. acc.
it, *sui ; is, ea, id; ille,* &c.
itself, *ipse, ipsa, ipsum.*

J.

javelin, *pilum, -i.*
join (battle), *committo, -mittĕre,*
-misi, -missum.
journey, *iter, itinĕris* (Gr. [115]).
Jura, *Jura, -ae.*

K.

keep, **keep out,** *prohibeo, -ēre,*
-ui, -ĭtum ; **keep in,** *contineo,*
-tinēre, -tinui ; (= **stay**), *se teneo,*
-ēre, -ui, -tum.
know, *cognosco, -noscĕre, -nōvi,*
-nĭtum.
known, **to make known,** *nuntio,*
-āre, -āvi, -ātum.
kill, *interficio, -ficĕre, -fēci, -fec-*
tum.
kind, *genus, -ĕris.*
kindness, *beneficium, -i.*
king, *rex, regis.*
kingdom, *regnum, -i.*
kingly power, *regnum, -i.*

L.

Labienus, *Labiēnus, -i.*
lack, *inopia, -ae.*
lake, *lacus, -us* (Gr. [110]).
land, *ager, -gri ;* **lands** (= coun-
try), *fines, -ium.*
language, *lingua, -ae.*
lapse, **after a lapse of three**
days, *triduo intermisso.*
large, *magnus, -a, -um.*
larger, *major, -us* (Gr. [123]).
largest, *maxĭmus, -a, -um* (Gr.
[123]).
last, **then at last;** see then.

lately, *nuper.*

law, *lex, legis.*

lay waste, *popŭlor, -āri, -ātus.*

lead, *duco, ducĕrc, duxi, ductum;* lead forth or out, *edūco;* lead back, *redūco;* lead (= induce), *indūco.*

leadership, *principātus, -us.*

learn, *comperio, -perīre, -pĕri, -pertum; intellĕgo, -legĕre, -lexi, -lectum; cognosco, -noscĕre, -nŏvi, -nĭtum.*

least, *minĭmus, -a, -um;* (adv.) *minĭme.*

leave, *relinquo, -linquĕre, -liqui, -lictum;* (= go away) *decēdo, -cedĕre, -cessi, -cessum,* w. prep. *de; discēdo; egredior, -grĕdi, -gressus,* w. prep. *e.*

left, *relĭquus, -a, -um.*

legion, *legio, -ōnis.*

length, *longitūdo,-ĭnis;* in length, *in longitudinem.*

. less (adj.), *minor, -us.* .

less (adv.), *minus.*

let, in hortatory sentences; expressed in Latin by the subj.

levy, *impĕro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*

line (of battle), *acies, -ēi.*

Lingones, *Lingŏnes, -um.*

Liscus, *Liscus, -i.*

lost, *sublātus, -a, -um* (taken away).

M.

make, *facio, facĕre, feci, factum;* make (war), *infĕro, gero;* make use of, *utor, uti, usus;* make (= render, cause to be), *efficio, -ficĕre, -fēci, -fectum;* make a stand; see stand.

man, *homo, -ĭnis; vir, viri.* "Men" is often expressed by using a masculine adjective.

many, pl. of *multus, -a, -um.*

march (noun), *iter, itinĕris* (Gr. [115]).

march (verb) = make a march; *iter facio, facĕre, feci, factum.*

marriage, *matrimonium;* in marriage, *in matrimonium.*

marry, *in matrimonium duco, ducĕre, duxi, ductum;* also *duco* alone.

matter, *res, rei.*

may, in wishes expressed by subj.; may (= one is permitted), *licet, licēre, licuit, licĭtum.*

mean, *designo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*

meanwhile, *intĕrim.*

Messala, *Messāla, -ae.*

Mettius, *Mettius, -i.*

mile, *mille passuum.*

mind, *mens, -ntis.*

missile, *telum, -i.*

month, *mensis, -is.*

more, *plus* (Gr. [92] and [123]).

most, to be most powerful, *plurimum possum.*

mountain, *mons, -ntis.*

move, *moveo, -ēre, movi, motum; commoveo.*

much, *multus, -a, -um;* much (= many things), *multa.*

multitude, *multitūdo, -ĭnis.*

must, expressed by pass. peri. conj.

my, *meus, -a, -um.*

N.

name, *nomen, -ĭnis.*

narrow, *angustus, -a, -um.*

nation, *popŭlus, -i.*

nature, *natūra, -ae.*

nearer, *citerior, -ius* (Gr. [123]).

nearer (adv.), *propius* (Gr. [123]).

nearest, *proxĭmus, -a, -um* (Gr. [123] and [268]).

necessity, from necessity, *necessario* (adv.).

neighbor, *finitĭmus, -i.*

neighboring, *proxĭmus, -a, -um* (Gr. [123]).

neither, *neque* or *nec.*

new, *novus, -a, -um.*

next (following), *postĕrus, -a, -um; proxĭmus, -a, -um;* **on the next day,** *postridie* or *postridie ejus diēi* (Gr. [285]).

no, *nullus, -a, -um;* **no one,** *nemo, -ĭnis; nullus.*

nobility, *nobilĭtas, -ātis.*

noble, *nobĭlis, -e.*

nor, *neque* or *nec;* **neither ... nor,** *neque ... neque* or *nec ... nec.*

not, *non;* **not yet,** *nondum.*

nothing, *nihil* (indecl.).

notice, *anĭmum adverto, -vertĕre, -verti, -versum,* or *animadverto.*

number, *numĕrus, -i;* **large number,** *magna copia.*

numerous, *multi, -ae, -a.*

O.

oath, *jusjurandum, jurisjurandi;* **take an oath,** *juro, -are, -avi, -atum.*

occupy, *occŭpo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*

of, expressed by gen. case.

off, shut off; see **shut.**

often, *saepe.*

old, *vetus, -ĕris; senex, senis.*

on, *in* w. abl.; often expressed by abl. or dat. case; **on the right wing,** *a dextro cornu.*

one, *unus, -a, -um* (Gr. 71); **the one ... the other,** *alter ... alter;* **one another, with, for, to,** &c., **one another,** *inter se.*

only, *unus, -a, -um* (Gr. 71).

opportunity, *facultas, -ātis.*

or, *aut.*

order, *jubeo, -ere, jussi, jussum.*

Orgetorix, *Orgetŏrix, -ĭgis.*

other, *alius, -a, -ud;* **the other** (of two), *alter, -a, -um.*

ought, *debeo, -ēre, -ui, -ĭtum;* also expressed by pass. periph. conj.

our, *noster, -tra, -trum.*

out, out of, out from, *e* or *ex;* **go out,** *exeo, exire, exii, exĭtum.*

over, cross over = cross.

overlook, *neglĕgo, -legĕre, -lexi, -lectum.*

own, *suus, -a, -um;* also expressed by gen. case of *ipse.*

P.

pace, *passus, -us.*

pair of compasses, *circĭnus, -i.*

panic, *timor, -ōris.*

pardon, *ignosco, -noscĕre, -nōvi, -nōtum* (Gr. [269]).

part, *pars, -rtis.*

party, *factio, -ōnis.*

pass, come to pass, *fio, fiĕri, factus.*

passage, *iter, itinĕris* (Gr. [115]).

peace, *pax, pacis.*

people (a nation), *popŭlus, -i.*

perfectly, expressed by superlative.

perform, *facio, facĕre, feci, factum; confĭcio, perfĭcio.*

permit, it is permitted, *licet, licēre, licuit, licĭtum.*

persuade, *persuadeo, -ēre, -suāsi, -suāsum.*

phalanx, *phalanx, -ngis.*

Piso, *Piso, -ōnis.*

pitch (a camp), *pono, ponĕre, posui, posĭtum.*

place, *locus, -i* (Gr. [116]).

plenty, *copia, -ae.*

popularity, *gratia, -ae.*

position, *locus, -i* (Gr. [116]).

possession, get possession; see **get.**

possible, as possible, *quam* w. superl.

post, *constituo, -uĕre, -ui, -ūtum.*

power, *potestas, -ātis;* (= sway, upper hand), *potentātus, -us;* **kingly power,** *regnum.*

Sequanian, *Sequănus, -a, -um.*

set, *constituo, -uěre, -ui, -ūtum;* **set out,** *proficiscor, -ficisci, -fectus.*

seventh, *septǐmus, -a, -um.*

severe, *gravis, -e;* **severest** (= greatest), *summus, -a, -um.*

severely, *gravǐter, vehementer.*

ship, *navis, -is* (Gr. [99]).

shortest, *proxǐmus, -a, -um.*

shut off, *interclūdo, -cluděre, -clūsi, -clūsum.*

signal, *signum, -i.*

situation, *locus, -i* (Gr. [116]).

six, *sex.*

six hundred, *sescenti, -ae, -a.*

sixteen, *seděcim.*

size, *magnitūdo, -ǐnis.*

slain, the slain, *occisi, -ōrum.*

slaughter, *internecio, -ōnis.*

slay, *interficio, -ficěre, -fēci, -fectum; concido, -ciděre, -cidi.*

small, *parvus, -a, -um.*

smaller, *minor, -us* (Gr. [123]).

so, *ita.*

soil, *solum, -i.*

soldier, *miles, -ǐtis.*

some, *nonnullus, -a, -um;* **some . . . others,** *alii . . . alii.*

son, *filius, -i.*

sorrow, *dolor, -ōris.*

space, *spatium.*

speak, *loquor, loqui, locūtus.*

speech, *oratio, -ōnis.*

spirit, *anǐmus, -i.*

spring up, *innascor, -nasci, -nātus.*

stand, make a stand, *insto, -stāre, -instǐti;* **take a stand,** *consisto, -sistěre, -stǐti, -stǐtum.*

start, *proficiscor, -ficisci, -fectus.*

state, *civitas, -ātis.*

stone, *lapis, -ǐdis* (c.).

stop, *prohibeo, -ēre, -ui, -ǐtum;* (= make an end), *finem facio, facere, feci, factum.*

strongly, *gravǐter.*

successive, *continuus, -a, -um.*

sudden, *subǐtus, -a, -um.*

suddenly, *repente.*

Suevi, *Suevi, -ōrum.*

suitable, *idoneus, -a, -um.*

summon, *voco, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*

sunset, *solis occāsus, -us.*

supply (noun), *copia, -ae.*

supply (verb), *supporto, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*

surrender, *deditio, -ōnis.*

surround, *cingo, cingěre, cinxi, cinctum.*

survive, *supersum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus.*

suspect, *suspǐcor, -āri, -ātus.*

suspicion, *suspicio, -ōnis.*

sway, *imperium, -i; dicio, -ōnis.*

swiftly, *celerǐter.*

sword, *gladius, -i.*

T.

take, *capio, capěre, cepi, captum;* **take away,** *aufěro, -ferre, abstǔli, ablātum; tollo, tollěre, sustǔli, sublātum;* **take an oath,** *juro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*

teach, *instituo, -uěre, -ui, -ūtum.*

tear, *lacrǐma, -ae.*

tell, *nuntio, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; enuntio, renuntio;* (= order), *jubeo, jubēre, jussi, jussum.*

ten, *decem.*

tenth, *decǐmus, -a, -um.*

territories, *fines, -ium.*

than, *quam;* also expressed by abl. case.

that (demon.), *is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud; iste, ista, istud;* (relat.), *qui, quae, quod.*

that (conj.), *ut, quin;* **that not,** *ne;* **but that,** *quin.* The English conj. *that* in indirect quotations is omitted in Latin, where the infin. is used.

the, omitted in Latin.

their, *suus, -a, -um;* when not re-
flexive, expressed by the gen. case
of a pronoun, *eōrum, illōrum,*
&c.

themselves, *sui; ipse.*

then, *tum;* then at last, *tum de-
mum.*

there (introductory), not expressed
in Latin.

there (adv. = in that place), *ibi.*

these; see this.

thing, *res, rei;* often expressed by
a neuter adjective; e.g. *haec,*
these things; *multa,* many
things.

think, *existĭmo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*

third, *tertius, -a, -um.*

thirteen, *tredĕcim.*

this, *hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id.*

those, *ii, eae, ea,* &c.; *illi, illae,
illa,* &c.

thousand, *mille* (Gr. [118]).

three, *tres, tria;* three days, *tri-
duum.*

through, *per.*

throw, *jacio, jacĕre, jeci, jactum;*
conjicio, -jicĕre, -jēci, -jectum.

thus, *ita.*

Tigurinus, *Tigurinus, -i.*

time, *tempus, -ŏris.*

to, *ad, in;* often expressed by dat.
or acc. case.

together, usually expressed by
con-; e.g. *convŏco,* call to-
gether, &c.

too, expressed by comparative.

top, expressed by *summus* in agree-
ment.

torture, *cruciātus, -us.*

toward, *ad.*

town, *oppĭdum, -i.*

trader, *mercātor, -ōris.*

train, *exerceo, -ēre, -ui, -ĭtum.*

treat, *ago, agĕre, egi, actum;* treat
as enemies = hold in the num-
ber of enemies.

tribe, tribe by tribe, *generātim*
(adv. "tribewise").

trickery, *dolus, -i.*

troops, *copiae, -ārum.*

trust, *confĭdo, -fīdĕre, -fīsus,* w.
dat. (Gr. [269]) or abl. (Gr. 295).

try, *conor, -āri, -ātus.*

turn, *verto, vertĕre, verti, versum;*
turn away, *averto.*

twenty, *viginti.*

two, *duo, -ae, -o* (Gr. 72); two
days, *biduum, -i.*

two hundred, *ducenti, -ae, -a.*

U.

Ubii, *Ubii, -orum.*

under, *sub;* under the sway, *in
diciōne.*

undergo, *subeo, -īre, -ii, -ĭtum.*

undertake, *suscipio, -cipĕre, -cēpi,
-ceptum.*

unfavorable, *aliēnus, -a, -um.*

unwilling, *invĭtus, -a, -um;* to be
unwilling, *nolo, nolle, nolui.*

upbraid, *incūso, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*

use, *ūtor, uti, usus* (Gr. [297]).

used, get used; see get.

useful, to be useful, *prosum,
prodesse, profui, profutūrus.*

V.

Verbigenus, *Verbigenus, -i.*

very, expressed by the superlative.

victory, *victoria, -ae.*

vigorously, *acrĭter.*

village, *vicus, -i.*

violence, *vis, vis* (Gr. [115]).

visit, *commeo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;*
w. prep. *ad.*

W.

wage, *gero, gerĕre, gessi, gestum.*

wait, *moror, -āri, -ātus.*

wall, *murus, -i.*

wander, *vagor, -āri, -ātus.*

war, *bellum, -i.*

warn, *moneo, -ēre, -ui, -ĭtum.*

waste, lay waste ; see **lay.**

watch, *vigilia, -ae.*

way, *via, -ae;* **half way up;** see **half.**

we, *nos;* often expressed in verb-ending.

weaken, *effemĭno, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*

what, *qualis, -e; qui, quae, quod.*

which (relat.), *qui, quae, quŏd; •* from **which,** *unde.*

while, *dum;* often expressed by abl. abs.

who (rel.), *qui, quae, quod;* (interrog.), *quis? quae? quid?*

whole, *totus, -a, -um* (Gr. 71); *omnis, -e.*

will (vb.), expressed by future tense).

will, against my will, = I [being] unwilling, abl. abs.

wine, *vinum, -i.*

wing, *cornu, -us.*

winter, *hiĕmo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*

wish, *volo, velle, volui.*

with, *cum, apud;* often expressed by abl. case.

within, *intra* (time within which expressed by abl. case).

without, *sine.*

witness, *testis, -is.*

word, *verbum, -i;* **bring word;** see **bring.**

work, *opus, -ĕris.*

wound, *vulnus, -ĕris.*

wrong, *injuria, -ae.*

Y.

year, *annus, -i.*

yet, not yet, *nondum.*

you, *tu, te* or *vos ;* often expressed by verb-ending.

younger, *junior* (Gr. [123]).

your, *tuus, -a, -um; vester, -tra, -trum.*

yourselves, *vos.*

Z.

zeal, *alacrĭtas, -ātis.*

[For Allen & Greenough's Cæsar; four books with vocabulary.]

PARALLEL REFERENCES TO BLACKBURN'S "ESSENTIALS OF LATIN GRAMMAR."

[Unbracketed references are to the head matter. The corresponding note should always be read also, and the illustrations studied.
Bracketed references are to the notes. When a note contains more than one paragraph, a small figure at the right is used to show the paragraph referred to.]

BOOK I.

CHAP. I. est divisa, [344]. — lingua, 300. — dividit, [257]². — horum, 283. — effeminandos, 349, [349]². — Germanis, 271. — qua de causa, 443. — quam . . . dictum est, [322]², 337.

CHAP. II. Messala, etc., 487, 307. — civitati persuasit, [269]³. — ut exirent, [325]⁷. — cum praestarent, [328]. — imperio, [297]². — hoc, 298. — id, [269]³. — fiebat, [309]³. — ut . . . possent, [326]⁵. — bellandi, [288]. — adficiebantur, [12] (ƒ).

CHAP. III. quae pertinerent, [322]⁵. — comparare, 338. — ut occuparet, [325]⁷, [269]³, [311]². — perfacile factu, 352. — non esse dubium quin, [326]¹. — regno occupato, 307, [346]. — Galliae, [290].

CHAP. IV. ut cremaretur, [326]⁵. — igni, [99]⁴. — die constituta, 60, 301. — causae, 288. — cum conaretur, [330]¹.

CHAP. V. arbitrati sunt, [330]¹. — domum, 265. — receptos, [346].

CHAP. VI. possent, 316. — singuli, [118]. — locis, [299]. — a. d. v. Kal. Apr., [268]², 496.

CHAP. VII. qui dicerent, 325. — sibi, 270. — ut liceat, [325]⁷. — Cassium . . . occisum, 338. — concedendum, [348]. — animo, 305. — itineris faciundi, 349. — dum convenirent, [330]⁴. — reverterentur, 324.

CHAP. VIII. quo . . . possit, 325, [325]³. — si . . . possent, 323.

CHAP. IX. novis rebus, [269]³.

CHAP. X. ut haberet, [326]⁴, [326]⁵.

CHAP. XI. depopulatis agris, [346].

CHAP. XII. flumen, [268]. — Ararim, [99]¹. — mandarunt, 215.

CHAP. XIII. pontem faciendum, [349]². — intelligerent, [330]¹. — diebus, 301. — incommodi, 280.

CHAP. XIV. eo . . . quo, [298]². — quod si, [267]. — vexassent, 322. — cum, [329].

CHAP. XVI. cotidie, [12]². — Haeduos frumentum, [262]⁵. — flagitare, 342.

CHAP. XVII. ne . . . conferat, [325]². — dubitare quin, [326]. — Haeduis, [269]².

CHAP. XIX. conaretur, [330]⁵.

CHAP. XX. futurum uti, 476. — faciat, [325]⁵. — tanti, 274.

CHAP. XXI. qui cognoscerent, 325.

CHAP. XXII. milia, 266.   CHAP. XXIII. diei, [285]³.

CHAP. XXIV. qui sustineret, 325.   CHAP. XXV. impedimento, 272.

CHAP. XXVI. coniciebant, [12] (c). — Lingonas, [74]².

CHAP. XXXI. Caesari, [269]. — adamassent, 215. — quo minus essent, [325]³. — hanc consuetudinem, 440. — vicerit, 322. — quin sumat, [326]¹. — Rhenum, [268].

CHAP. XXXII. Sequanis, 270.

CHAP. XXXIII. curae, 272. — ut fecissent, 333. — quibus rebus, [269]⁴.

CHAP. XXXVI. qui faceret, [328].

CHAP. XXXVII. qui . . . essent, 322. — resisti, 234, [235], end.

CHAP. XXXIX. quam diceret, [322]⁵. — ut . . . posset, [325]⁷.

· BOOK II.

BOOK III.

BOOK IV.

[For Allen & Greenough's Cicero.]

PARALLEL REFERENCES TO BLACKBURN'S "ESSENTIALS

OF LATIN GRAMMAR."

[Unbracketed references are to the head matter. The corresponding note should always be read also, and the illustrations studied.

Bracketed references are to the notes. When a note contains more than one paragraph, a small figure at the right is used to show the paragraph referred to.]

DEFENCE OF ROSCIUS.

1. Mirari . . . surrexerim, etc., 468–475; for the order, see 479–482. cum sedeant, [328]. sim, [333]. defendere, 335. ut adsint, [326]⁵. — 2. istius, 440. sim, 316. aliis, [269]². me, 485. Rosci, 67. reciperem, 325, [311]¹. fecisset, 327. — 3. dixero, [331]. concedi, 234. ignosci, [269]³. — 4. petitum sit, 316. ut dicerent, [325]⁷. ut arbitrarentur, 326, [311]. ei . . . qui, 440. debeam, [326]². causae, 269. ut ne, [325]². — 5. ereptum, [346]. — 6. rectum [esse] se pugnare, 38, 337. proscriberentur, [330]¹. — 7. isti, 440. quod sciam, [267]. — 8. judicatote, [315]⁸. — 9. Ameriam, 265. — 10. tris, [99]⁵. Tiberim, [99]¹. ne teneam, [325]⁶. — 12. despexerit, 333. ut moliantur, 325. quamvis felix sit, [321]². qui habeat, [326]². — 13. qui solvisset, [326]². eicit, [12] (c). qui fuisset, [326]². domum, 265. auferebat, [309]³. urbe tota, [299]. — 15. nobilis, [99]⁵. qui peterent, 325. vellem, 322. — 17. domo, [293]. — 18. ut pugnarent, [326]⁵. de parricidio [284]³. eum jugulandum, [349]². — 19. pater occisus, 347. ut optet, [326]⁵. qui dicat, 325. — 21. si postularet, 331, 312. auditum sit, 450. — 22. major, [296] (e). de luxuria, [284]³. — 30. venisses, [320]. — 32. tibi, 269. veniat, [325]⁵. — 33. poterat, 449. possis, 316. — 41. diem, 60. — 42. pernicii, [58]². — 43. ut componeretur, [326]⁵. retineretur, 316. — 45. verear, [328]. — 48. quod, quia, [328]. — 50. quasi nescias, [327]³. — 54. condemnaretis, [311]. — 55. an vero, 434. — 57. hominibus, 269.

IMPEACHMENT OF VERRES.

3. judicaveritis, [331]. — partim, [101], [248], [267]. devitaverim, 333. — 4. dictitat, [247]¹. — 5. cadit, [309]². — 10. constitueret, [326]⁵. — 14. commemorare, 335. — 24. agere, 335. — 29. expediat, [326]². — 31. Nonae, 496. — 44. fuisse desideraturos, 469. — 56. fuisse, 465.

PLUNDER OF SYRACUSE.

1. hanc, illo, 440. — **12.** eat, 321.

CRUCIFIXION OF A ROMAN CITIZEN.

1. dicam, [309]². quae sint, [326]². tenerem, [311]. — **2.** nescio qua, [323]⁴. — **6.** quemquam, 444. — **10.** induatur, 154, [267]². — **12.** quod velit, [326]².

THE MANILIAN LAW.

3. laetandum, 234, [235], end. mihi, 270. — **13.** commendetis, [326]³. — **19.** memoria, 299. amiserant, [330]. — **22.** dum conligunt, [309]¹. — **27.** haberetis, 320. superarit, [326]². — **38.** existimetis, 317. — **49.** quin conferatis, [326]¹. — **50.** erat diligendus, 455. — **53.** an, 434. — **57.** ne legaretur, 325. utrum . . . an, 432. — **59.** cum quaereret, [330]. quo . . . hoc, [298]². — **64.** parendum, 234, [235], end. — **66.** idoneus, etc., [326]³. quasi non videamus, [327]³. — **70.** putem, 322. — **71.** videar, 326.

CATILINE I.

2. oportebat, [309]². — **5.** fateatur, [326]². — **6.** recognoscas, [325]⁵. — **7.** in ante diem, [268]². sui conservandi, [348]². cum. dicebas, [330]¹. — **8.** quam te, 477. — **8.** ullo, 444. — **9.** gentium, [283]. — **10.** id temporis, [283]. desiderant, [309]². — **11.** videbam, [309]³. — **18.** mihi, [269]². — **22.** duint, [226]. est tanti, [274]. — **27.** mactari, 338. — **31.** nescio quo pacto, [323]⁴. — **33.** arcebis, [315]².

CATILINE II.

3. accuset, [326]². — **4.** videretis, 333. eduxisset, 320. mihi, 269. — **5.** mallem, 316. eduxisset, [325]⁵. — **7.** ejecerit, [331]. conceperit, [326]². tota Italia, [299]. — **9.** possitis, 325. — **11.** nescio quod, [323]⁴. — **13.** ei, [270]. — **14.** eiciebam, [309]³. velint, [326]². — **18.** sis, 317. — **19.** non vident, 430.

CATILINE III.

7. deferrem, [322]⁵. — **8.** ut uteretur, [325]⁷. — **9.** defuturas, 468. — **15.** occideret, [325]³. — **20.** conlocandum, [349]². — **22.** quo, [298]². si dicam, [331].

CATILINE IV.

6. jam pridem videbam, [309]². — **9.** mea, [291]. — **12.** huic, [269]. — **17.** futurum fuit, 449, 455.

ARCHIAS.

4. urbe, [254]². — **25.** civitate, 297. — **31.** quae comprobetur, [326]².

PARALLEL REFERENCES TO BLACKBURN'S "ESSENTIALS

OF LATIN GRAMMAR."

[The unbracketed references are to the head matter in coarse print. They should be carefully memorized, and the notes and illustrations to them should be carefully studied and mastered.

Bracketed references are to the notes. When only a part of the note is included in the reference, the paragraph is indicated by a small figure at the right. References in the foot-notes are indicated as there by *a*, *b*, *c*, etc.]

1. 254, 255, 257.
2. 262. Notes: *c*, adjectives are often used substantively as in English; *f*, "*inter se*"; *g*, "remaining Gauls"; *h*, 300; *i*, [308][5].
3. 426–434. Comp. [314]. Notes: *b*, 431; *c*, 429; *d*, 432; *a*, 273, 299.
4. 435–445, 256, [257][2]. Notes: *a*, "in which day"; *c*, [298][2]; *f, quod* to agree with "head."
8. 262, [268]. Notes: *a*, [116]; *b*, use prep. a; *g*, 254.
9. 269, 234.
10. 277, 280, 281, 289, 290, 291, [297][2]. Note: *a, capitis*, [289].
11. [285], [288], [290]. Notes: *c*, [288]; *e*, [285].
12. 271. For the dat. with adjs. a prep. is often used in the same sense.
13. 294, 296, 297, 298, [290], [300], [303]. Notes: *a*, [296] (*c*), the same is true of adverbs also; *b*, [296] (*e*).
14. 264, 267. Note: *g*, [267][2].
15. 269, 270, 272. Note: *a*, "to [you] entering."
16. 295, 297, 300, 303, 305, 306, [274]. Note: *b*, [300], [303].
17. 265, 266, 273, 284, 293, 299, 301, 487, [268]. Notes: *a*, [309][1]; *b*, [254][2]; *c*, 490; *i*, [273][1].
18. 213, 345, 348, 349. Note: *a*, 270.
19. 316, 317, 318–321, [315]. Note: *a*, [296], end.
20. 311, 312.
21. 327, 331, 448. Notes: *a*, 450; *d*, [332], 452.
22. 328, 330. Note: *a*, [309][1].
23. 325, 326, 351, [346]. Note: *e*, [309][5].
24. 337, 338. The tenses of the infinitives and participles denote time, present, past, or future, relative to the time of the verb on which they depend. Note: *b*, [340][2].

27. 323, 324, 469–472.

28. 323. Notes: *c*, 139; *e*, [311]^2.

29. [325]^7, [326]^5.

30. 281, 291.

31. [255]^5, [285].

33. 315, 318–321.

34. 346.

35. 270, 351, 352. Note: *a*, make the relative agree with *Argei*, [256].

37. [254].

38. 283, 284, 286, 288, [285]. Notes: *e*, [288]; *h*, [325]^7.

39. 277, 280, 281, 291.

40. [269]. Note: *f, coepi* takes the passive form when followed by a passive infinitive.

44. 274, 294, 296, 298, 303, [297]^2, [297]^3, [300].

45. 266, 301, 490–493.

46. 265, 266, 273, 284, 293, 299, [297]^4.

47. [255], [257]^2.

Adjs. are often used substantively, the masc. denoting persons; the neut., things.

Certain adjs. designate a part; *e.g.: summus mons* = top of the mountain; *media nox* = midnight.

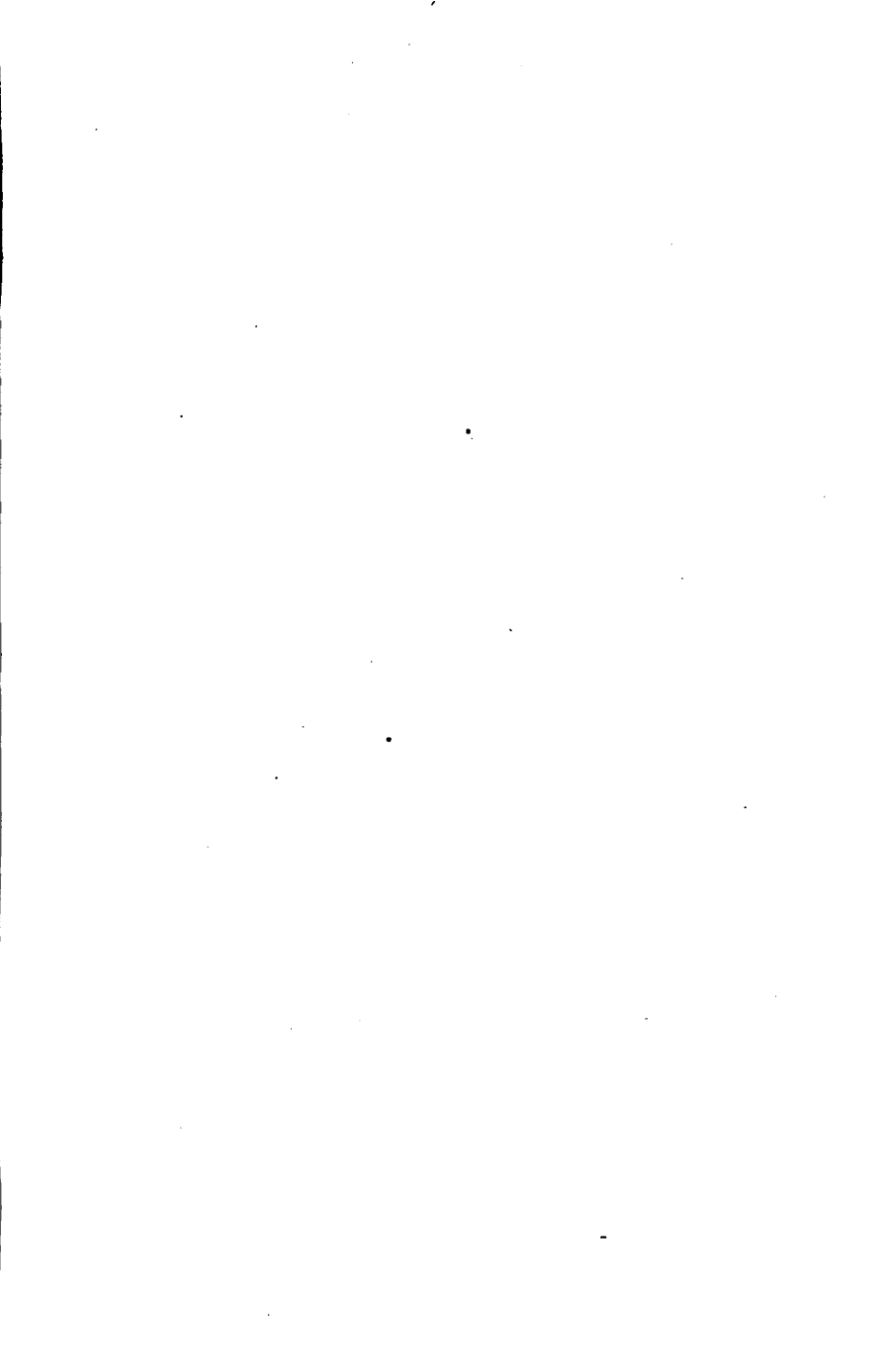An adj. limiting the subject often has the same force as an adv. limiting the verb.

alius . . . alium = one another; *alter . . . alterum* = each other.

49. 441, 442.

52. Note: *c*, [274].

54. 327, 449–452, [332]^2.

55. 346, [316], [321]^2.

56. 329, [321]^2, [327]^3, [330]^3.

57. [309], [330].

58. [329], [330].

60. 325.

61. [325]^3, [325]^4, [326].

62. [326]^2, [326]^3, [328]. A clause of characteristic or of result is found after *quam*, than; *e.g.: sollertior est quam qui* (or *ut*) *decip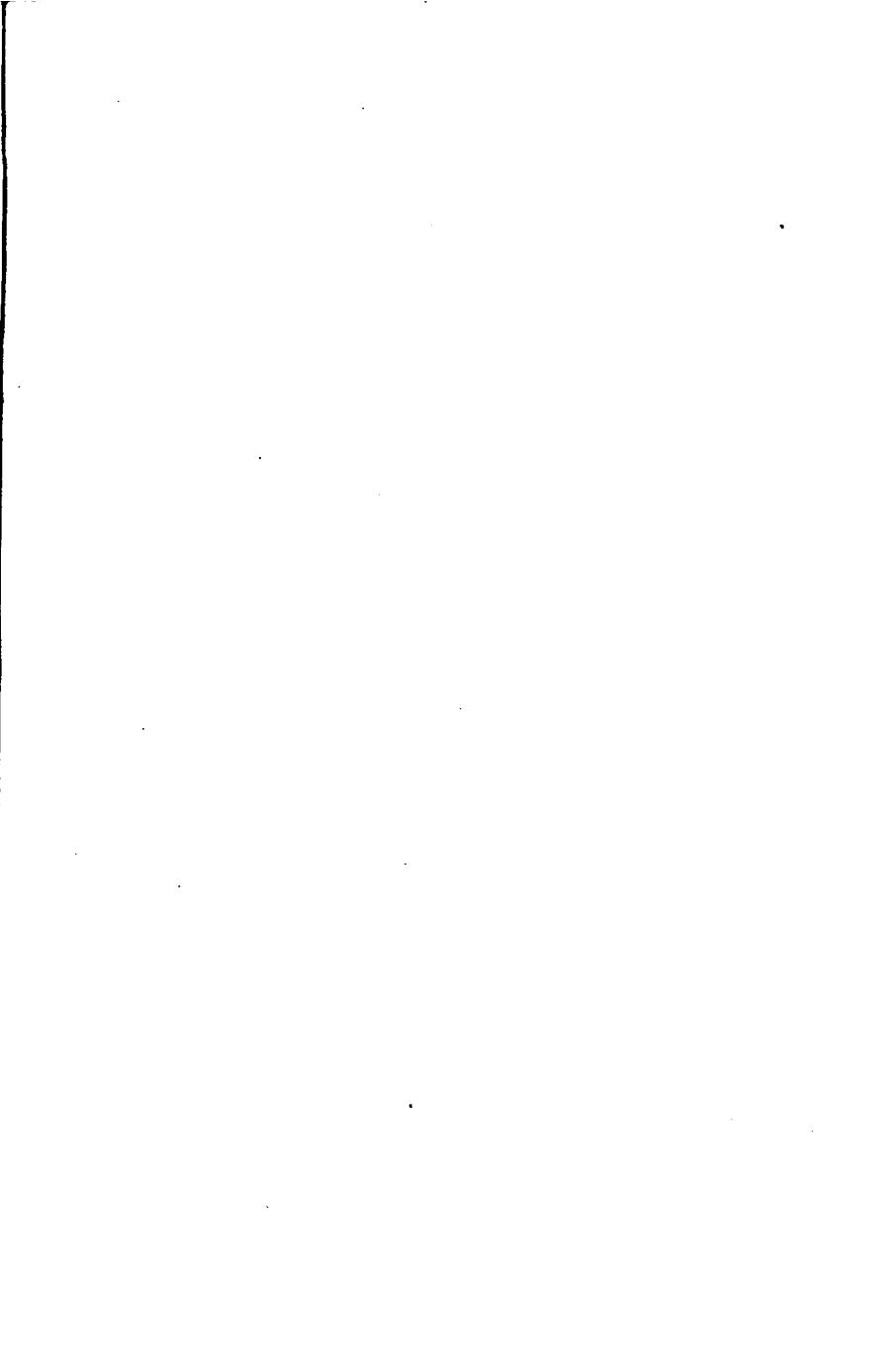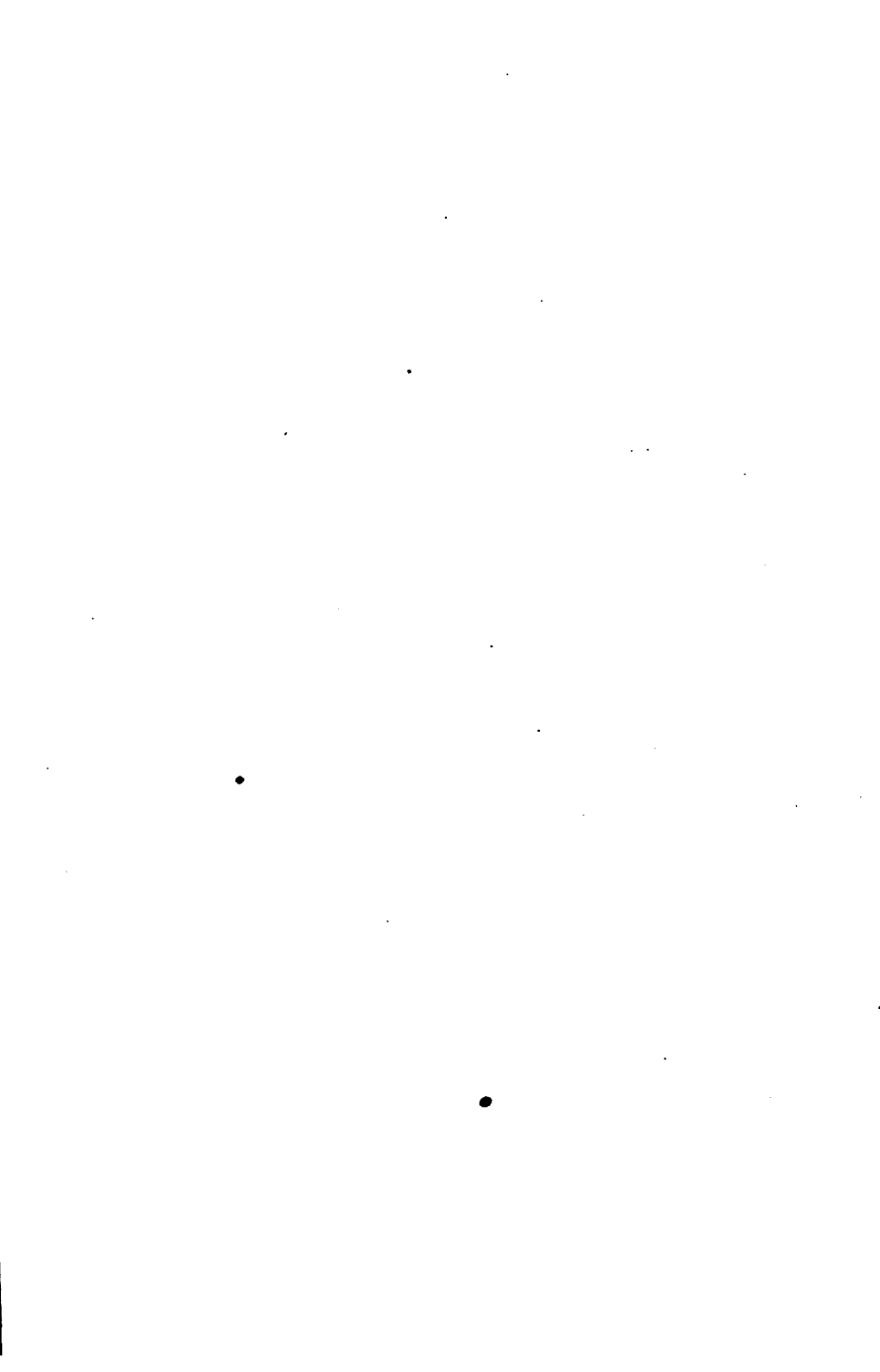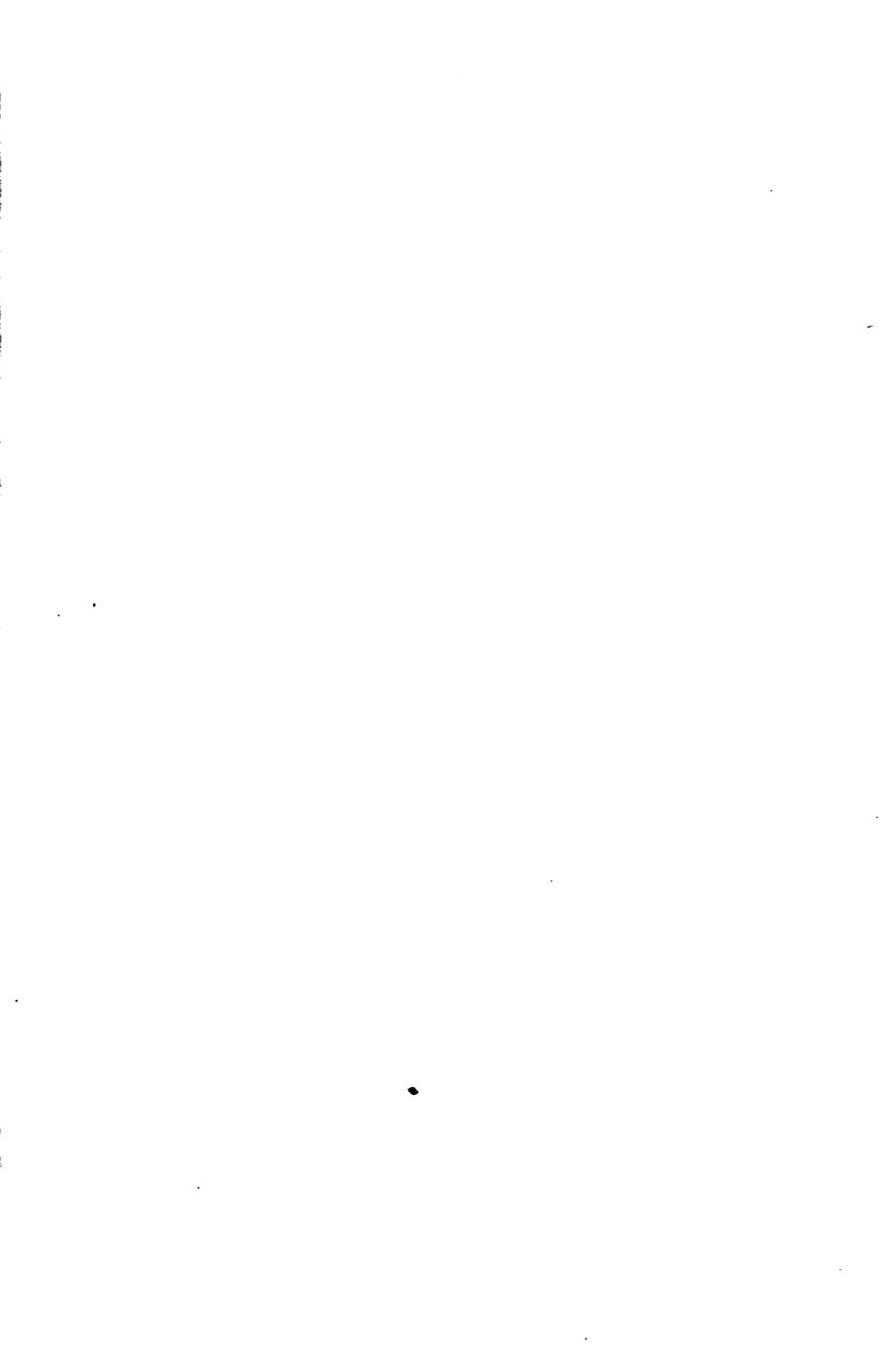i possit*, he is too shrewd to be tricked.